



**2015**

**CHASSIS CAB**

---

**OWNER'S MANUAL**

## **VEHICLES SOLD IN CANADA**

With respect to any Vehicles Sold in Canada, the name FCA US LLC shall be deemed to be deleted and the name FCA Canada Inc. used in substitution therefore.

## **DRIVING AND ALCOHOL**

Drunken driving is one of the most frequent causes of accidents.

Your driving ability can be seriously impaired with blood alcohol levels far below the legal minimum. If you are drinking, don't drive. Ride with a designated non-drinking driver, call a cab, a friend, or use public transportation.

### **WARNING!**

**Driving after drinking can lead to an accident. Your perceptions are less sharp, your reflexes are slower, and your judgment is impaired when you have been drinking. Never drink and then drive.**

This manual illustrates and describes the operation of features and equipment that are either standard or optional on this vehicle. This manual may also include a description of features and equipment that are no longer available or were not ordered on this vehicle. Please disregard any features and equipment described in this manual that are not on this vehicle.

FCA US LLC reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and/or make additions to or improvements to its products without imposing any obligation upon itself to install them on products previously manufactured.



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION		PAGE
1	INTRODUCTION .....	3
2	THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE .....	9
3	UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE .....	113
4	UNDERSTANDING YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL .....	197
5	STARTING AND OPERATING .....	331
6	WHAT TO DO IN EMERGENCIES .....	463
7	MAINTAINING YOUR VEHICLE .....	489
8	MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES .....	563
9	IF YOU NEED CONSUMER ASSISTANCE .....	571
10	INDEX .....	581

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10



# INTRODUCTION

## CONTENTS

---

■ INTRODUCTION . . . . .	4	■ VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER . . . . .	6
■ HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL . . . . .	4	■ VEHICLE MODIFICATIONS/ALTERATIONS . . . . .	7
■ WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS . . . . .	6		
■ VAN CONVERSIONS/CAMPERS . . . . .	6		

### INTRODUCTION

Congratulations on selecting your new FCA US LLC vehicle. Be assured that it represents precision workmanship, distinctive styling, and high quality - all essentials that are traditional to our vehicles.

This Owner's Manual has been prepared with the assistance of service and engineering specialists to acquaint you with the operation and maintenance of your vehicle. It is supplemented by Warranty Information, and various customer-oriented documents. Please take the time to read these publications carefully. Following the instructions and recommendations in this manual will help assure safe and enjoyable operation of your vehicle.

**NOTE: After reviewing the owner information, it should be stored in the vehicle for convenient referencing and remain with the vehicle when sold.**

When it comes to service, remember that your authorized dealer knows your vehicle best, has factory-trained technicians and genuine parts, and cares about your satisfaction.

























### HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

Consult the Table of Contents to determine which section contains the information you desire.

Since the specification of your vehicle depends on the items of equipment ordered, certain descriptions and illustrations may differ from your vehicle's equipment.

The detailed index at the back of this Owner's Manual contains a complete listing of all subjects.

Consult the following table for a description of the symbols that may be used on your vehicle or throughout this Owner's Manual:

 WATER IN FUEL	 REAR WINDOW WIPER	 WINDSHIELD WIPER INTERMITTENT	 EXTERIOR BULB FAILURE	 HIGH BEAM	 TURN SIGNALS	 UPPER AIR OUTLET	 HEATED SEAT LOW	 DOOR LOCK	 ADJUSTABLE PEDALS	 ELECTRONIC SPEED CONTROL	 ESP BAS ELECTRONIC STABILITY PROGRAM / BRAKE ASSIST SYSTEM
 FUEL	 REAR WINDOW WIPER	 WINDSHIELD WIPER	 MASTER LIGHTING SWITCH	 LOW BEAM	 KEY ACTIVATE (POWER OUTLET)	 UPPER AND LOWER AIR OUTLET	 HEATED SEAT HIGH	 WINDOW LIFT	 TIRES PRESSURE MONITOR	 HILL DESCENT CONTROL	 BRAKE SYSTEM WARNING PARKING BRAKE
 FUEL FILL SIDE	 REAR WINDOW WIPER	 WINDSHIELD WIPER FLUID LEVEL	 DOME LIGHT	 FRONT FOG LIGHT	 HOOD RELEASE	 LOWER AIR OUTLET	 RECIRCULATION	 CONVERTIBLE 4 WINDOW DOWN	 ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL	 AWD! ALL WHEEL DRIVE	 FAILURE OF ANTILOCK BRAKING SYSTEM
 ENGINE OIL	 REAR WINDOW DEFROST	 WINDSHIELD ELECTRICALLY HEATED	 PARK LIGHTS	 REAR FOG LAMP	 LIFTGATE RELEASE AND LIFTGATE OPEN	 DEFROST AND LOWER AIR OUTLET	 VENTILATING FAN	 WINDOW LOCK	 ELECTRONIC THROTTLE CONTROL	 4WD! FOUR WHEEL DRIVE	 BRAKE SYSTEM WARNING PARKING BRAKE
 BATTERY CHARGING	 HEATED MIRROR	 WINDSHIELD DEFROST	 INSTRUMENT PANEL ILLUMINATION	 SEAT BELT	 SLIDING DOOR	 TRUNK / DECK RELEASE	 AIR CONDITIONING	 CHILD SEAT TETHER ANCHOR	 VOICE RECOGNITION BUTTON	 WARNING	 TOW / HAUL TOW / HAUL
 SLOW PLUG	 POWER STEERING FLUID	 WINDSHIELD WIPER AND WASHER	 SIDE AIRBAG	 AIRBAG	 SLIDING DOOR	 EMERGENCY RELEASE HANDLE	 LIGHTER	 LOWER ANCHORS AND TETHERS FOR CHILDREN (LATCH)	 iCONNECT™ BUTTON	 HAZARD	 4 LOW FOUR WHEEL DRIVE LOW
 MALFUNCTION INDICATOR LIGHT	 TRANS OIL TEMP	 ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE	 SRS AIRBAG SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM	 PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF	 DOOR AJAR	 CONVERTIBLE TOP DOWN	 CONVERTIBLE TOP UP	 HORN	 SEE OWNER'S MANUAL (S)	 A/C PUSH OFF AIR CONDITIONER	 ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL OFF

01053317

## **WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS**

This Owner's Manual contains **WARNINGS** against operating procedures that could result in a collision or bodily injury. It also contains **CAUTIONS** against procedures that could result in damage to your vehicle. If you do not read this entire Owner's Manual, you may miss important information. Observe all Warnings and Cautions.

## **VAN CONVERSIONS/CAMPERS**

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not apply to body modifications or special equipment installed by van conversion/camper manufacturers/body builders. Refer to the Warranty Information book, Section 2.1.C. Such equipment includes video monitors, VCRs, heaters, stoves, refrigerators, etc. For warranty coverage and service on these items, contact the applicable manufacturer.

Operating instructions for the special equipment installed by the conversion/camper manufacturer should also be supplied with your vehicle. If these instructions are missing, please contact your authorized dealer for assistance in obtaining replacement documents from the applicable manufacturer.

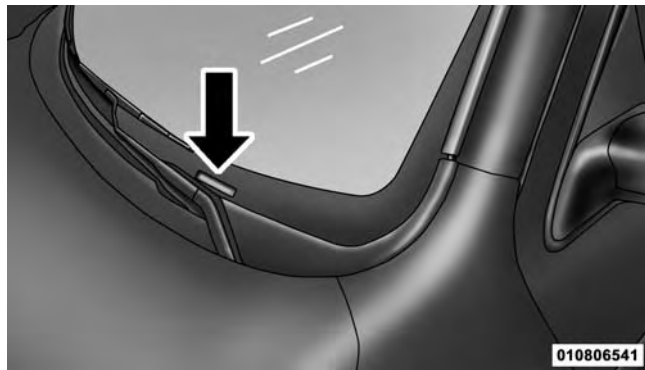
For information on the Body Builders Guide refer to: [www.rambodybuilder.com](http://www.rambodybuilder.com). This website contains dimensional and technical specifications for your vehicle. It is intended for Second Stage Manufacturer's technical support. For service issues, contact your authorized dealer.

## **VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER**

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is found on the left front corner of the instrument panel, visible through the windshield. This number also appears on the vehicle



frame and underbody as well as the Automobile Information Disclosure Label affixed to a window on your vehicle, the vehicle registration and title.



**Vehicle Identification Number**

**NOTE:** It is illegal to remove or alter the VIN.

## VEHICLE MODIFICATIONS/ALTERATIONS

### WARNING!

Any modifications or alterations to this vehicle could seriously affect its roadworthiness and safety and may lead to a collision resulting in serious injury or death.



# THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

## CONTENTS

---

■ A WORD ABOUT YOUR KEYS . . . . .	11	■ VEHICLE SECURITY ALARM . . . . .	21
□ Wireless Ignition Node (WIN). . . . .	11	□ Rearming Of The System . . . . .	21
□ Keyless Push Button Ignition— If Equipped. . . . .	12	□ To Arm The System. . . . .	21
□ Key Fob . . . . .	13	□ To Disarm The System. . . . .	22
□ Removing Key Fob From Ignition . . . . .	16	□ Security System Manual Override. . . . .	23
□ Key-In-Ignition Reminder . . . . .	18	■ ILLUMINATED APPROACH . . . . .	23
■ SENTRY KEY® . . . . .	18	■ REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY (RKE) — IF EQUIPPED . . . . .	24
□ Replacement Keys . . . . .	19	□ Remote Unlock The Doors . . . . .	26
□ Customer Key Programming . . . . .	20	□ To Lock The Doors . . . . .	27
□ General Information . . . . .	20	□ Using The Panic Alarm . . . . .	28

## 10 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

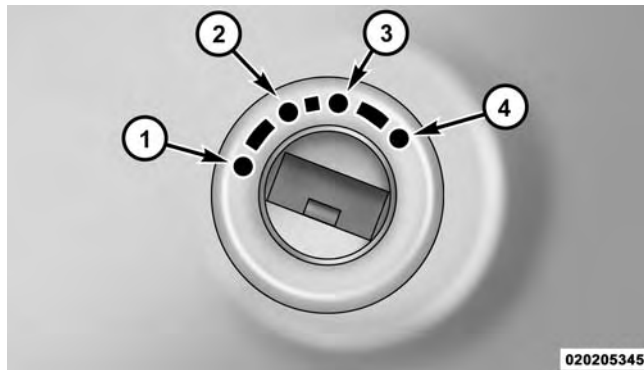
- Programming Additional Transmitters . . . . . 28
- Transmitter Battery Replacement . . . . . 28
- General Information . . . . . 31
- REMOTE STARTING SYSTEM — IF EQUIPPED . 32
  - How To Use Remote Start . . . . . 32
- DOOR LOCKS . . . . . 35
  - Manual Door Locks . . . . . 35
  - Power Door Locks — If Equipped . . . . . 37
  - Child-Protection Door Lock . . . . . 39
- KEYLESS ENTER-N-GO™ . . . . . 40
- WINDOWS . . . . . 44
  - Power Windows — If Equipped . . . . . 44
  - Wind Buffeting . . . . . 48
- OCCUPANT RESTRAINT SYSTEMS . . . . . 48
  - Important Safety Precautions . . . . . 48
  - Seat Belt Systems . . . . . 50
  - Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) . . . . . 65
  - Child Restraints . . . . . 75
  - Transporting Pets . . . . . 106
- ENGINE BREAK-IN RECOMMENDATIONS . . 106
  - Diesel Engine . . . . . 107
- SAFETY TIPS . . . . . 108
  - Transporting Passengers . . . . . 108
  - Exhaust Gas . . . . . 108
  - Safety Checks You Should Make Inside The Vehicle . . . . . 109
  - Periodic Safety Checks You Should Make Outside The Vehicle . . . . . 111

## A WORD ABOUT YOUR KEYS

Your vehicle uses either a key start ignition system or keyless ignition system. The key start ignition system consists of either a bladed key with an immobilizer chip in it, or a Key Fob with Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter and an Ignition Node Module (IGNM). The keyless ignition system consists of a Key Fob with Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter and a Keyless Push Button Ignition.

### Wireless Ignition Node (WIN)

The Wireless Ignition Node (WIN) operates similar to an ignition switch. It has four operating positions, three with detents and one that is spring-loaded. The detent positions are OFF, ACC, and ON/RUN. The START position is a spring-loaded momentary contact position. When released from the START position, the switch automatically returns to the ON/RUN position.



Wireless Ignition Node (WIN)

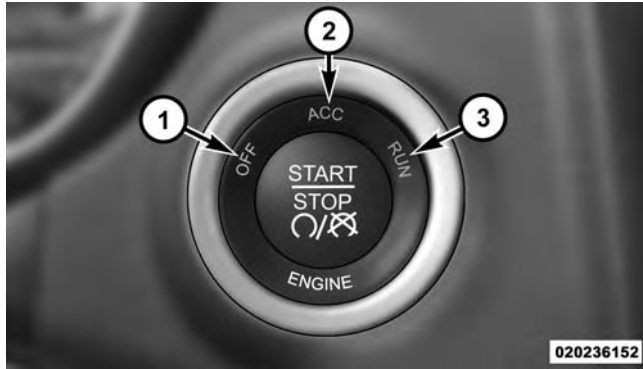
- 1 — OFF
- 2 — ACCESSORY (ACCESSORY)
- 3 — ON/RUN
- 4 — START

### **Keyless Push Button Ignition— If Equipped**

This feature allows the driver to operate the ignition switch with the push of a button as long as the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is in the passenger compartment.

The Keyless Push Button Ignition has four operating positions; three of which are labeled and will illuminate when in position. The three positions are OFF, ACC, and ON/RUN. The fourth position is START, during start RUN will illuminate.

**NOTE:** In case the ignition switch does not change with the push of a button, the RKE transmitter (Key Fob) may have a low or dead battery. In this situation, a back up method can be used to operate the ignition switch. Put the nose side (side opposite of the emergency key) of the Key Fob against the ENGINE START/STOP button and push to operate the ignition switch and with your foot applied on the brake pedal.



**Keyless Push Button Ignition**

- 1 — OFF
- 2 — ACC (ACCESSORY)
- 3 — ON/RUN

## Key Fob

### Key Fob — If Equipped

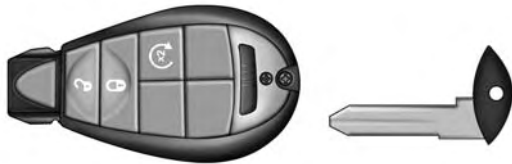
The Key Fob operates the ignition switch. Insert the square end of the key fob into the ignition switch located on the instrument panel and rotate to the desired position. It also contains the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter and an emergency key, which stores in the rear of the Key Fob.

The emergency key allows for entry into the vehicle should the battery in the vehicle or the RKE transmitter go dead. You can keep the emergency key with you when valet parking.

To remove the emergency key, slide the mechanical latch at the top of the Key Fob sideways with your thumb and then pull the key out with your other hand.

## 14 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

**NOTE:** When using the emergency key to gain access to your vehicle, be aware that the security alarm may be triggered. Insert the Key Fob into the ignition and place the ignition in the ON/RUN mode to disarm the security system.



020207762

### Emergency Key Removal

### Keyless Push Button Ignition Key Fob — If Equipped

This Keyless Push Button Ignition Key Fob allows the driver to operate the ignition switch with the push of a button, as long as the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is in the passenger compartment. The Keyless Push Button Ignition has four operating positions, three of which are labeled and will illuminate when in position. The three positions are OFF, ACC, and ON/RUN. The fourth position is START, during start RUN will illuminate. It also contains the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter and an emergency key, which stores in the rear of the Key Fob.

The emergency key allows for entry into the vehicle should the battery in the vehicle or the RKE transmitter go dead. You can keep the emergency key with you when valet parking.



To remove the emergency key, slide the mechanical latch on the backside of the Key Fob sideways with your thumb and then pull the key out with your other hand.

**NOTE:** When using the emergency key to gain access to your vehicle, be aware that the security alarm may be triggered. Insert the Key Fob into the ignition and place the ignition in the ON/RUN mode to disarm the security system.



2

0202006333

#### Emergency Key Removal Keyless Enter-N-Go™ Fob

**NOTE:** You can insert the double-sided emergency key into the door lock cylinder with either side up.

## Removing Key Fob From Ignition

Place the shift lever in PARK (if equipped with an automatic transmission). Turn the Key Fob to the OFF position and then remove the Key Fob.

### NOTE:

- The power window switches, radio, power sunroof (if equipped), and power outlets will remain active for up to 10 minutes after the ignition switch is turned to the OFF position. Opening either front door will cancel this feature. Refer to “Uconnect® Settings” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.
- For vehicles not equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to “Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/ Settings (Customer-Programmable Features)” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

- For vehicles equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to “Uconnect® Settings” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

### CAUTION!

- **If your vehicle battery becomes low or dead, your Key Fob will become locked in the ignition.**
- **Do not attempt to remove the Key Fob while in this condition, damage could occur to the Key Fob or ignition module. Only remove the emergency key for locking and unlocking the doors.**
- **Leave the Key Fob in the ignition and either:**
  - **Jump Start the vehicle.**
  - **Charge the battery.**

**WARNING!**

- Before exiting a vehicle, always apply the parking brake, shift the transmission into PARK, and push ignition button to place ignition in OFF mode. When leaving the vehicle, always lock your vehicle.
- Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle.
- Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.
- Do not leave the Key Fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children, and do not

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go™ in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.
- Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.

**CAUTION!**

An unlocked car is an invitation to thieves. Always remove the key from the ignition and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle unattended.

## Key-In-Ignition Reminder

Opening the driver's door when the Key Fob is in the ignition and the ignition switch position is OFF or ACC, a chime will sound to remind you to remove the Key Fob.

### NOTE:

- "Keyed" Ignition systems will chime in OFF or ACC when the driver door is open.
- "Keyless" Ignition systems will chime in ACC or RUN when the driver door is open.
- If equipped with Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID), the EVIC will display "Key In Ignition."

## SENTRY KEY®

The Sentry Key® Immobilizer System prevents unauthorized vehicle operation by disabling the engine. The system does not need to be armed or activated. Operation is automatic, regardless of whether the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

The system uses a Key Fob with a factory-mated Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter, an Ignition Node Module, Keyless Push Button Ignition and a RF receiver to prevent unauthorized vehicle operation. Therefore, only Key Fobs that are programmed to the vehicle can be used to start and operate the vehicle. The system will not allow the engine to crank if an invalid Key Fob is used to start and operate the vehicle. The system will shut the engine off in two seconds if an invalid Key Fob is used to start the engine.

**NOTE:** A Key Fob that has not been programmed is also considered an invalid key.

During normal operation, after turning on the ignition switch, the Vehicle Security Light will turn on for three seconds for a bulb check. If the light remains on after the bulb check, it indicates that there is a problem with the electronics. In addition, if the light begins to flash after the bulb check, it indicates that someone used an invalid Key Fob to try to start the engine. Either of these conditions will result in the engine being shut off after two seconds.

If the Vehicle Security Light turns on during normal vehicle operation (vehicle running for longer than 10 seconds), it indicates that there is a fault in the electronics. Should this occur, have the vehicle serviced as soon as possible by an authorized dealer.

### CAUTION!

**The Sentry Key® Immobilizer system is not compatible with some aftermarket remote starting systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and loss of security protection.**

All of the Key Fobs provided with your new vehicle have been programmed to the vehicle electronics.

### Replacement Keys

**NOTE:** Only Key Fobs that are programmed to the vehicle electronics can be used to start and operate the vehicle. Once a Key Fob is programmed to a vehicle, it cannot be programmed to any other vehicle.

**CAUTION!**

- Always remove the Key Fobs from the vehicle and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle unattended.
- For vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go™, always remember to place the ignition in the OFF position.

**NOTE:** Duplication of Key Fobs may be performed at an authorized dealer. This procedure consists of programming a blank Key Fob to the vehicle electronics. A blank Key Fob is one that has never been programmed.

When having the Sentry Key® Immobilizer System serviced, bring all vehicle keys with you to an authorized dealer.

**Customer Key Programming**

Programming Key Fobs or RKE transmitters may be performed at an authorized dealer.

**General Information**

The Sentry Key® system complies with FCC rules part 15 and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference that may be received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**NOTE:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## VEHICLE SECURITY ALARM

The Vehicle Security Alarm monitors the vehicle doors and ignition for unauthorized operation. When the Vehicle Security Alarm is activated, interior switches for door locks are disabled. The system provides both audible and visible signals for the first three minutes the horn will sound and the headlights will turn on, the park lamps and/or turn signals will flash and Vehicle Security Light will flash repeatedly. For an additional 15 minutes only, the headlights will turn on, the park lamps and/or turn signals, and Vehicle Security Light will flash.

### Rearming Of The System

The Vehicle Security Alarm will rearm itself after the 15 additional minutes of headlights and Vehicle Security Light flashing, if the system has not been disabled. If the condition which initiated the alarm is still present, the system will ignore that condition and monitor the remaining doors and ignition.

## To Arm The System

Follow these steps to arm the Vehicle Security Alarm:

1. Remove the key from the ignition system (refer to "Starting Procedures" in "Starting And Operating" for further information).
  - For vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go™, make sure the vehicle ignition system is "OFF."
  - For vehicles not equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go™, make sure the vehicle ignition system is "OFF" and the key is physically removed from the ignition.
2. Perform one of the following methods to lock the vehicle:
  - Push LOCK on the interior power door lock switch with the driver and/or passenger door open.

## 22 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

- Push the LOCK button on the exterior Passive Entry Door Handle with a valid Key Fob available in the same exterior zone (refer to "Keyless Enter-N-Go™" in "Things To Know Before Starting Your Vehicle" for further information).
  - Push the LOCK button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.
3. If any doors are open, close them.

The Vehicle Security Alarm will set when you use the power door locks, or use the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter to lock the doors. After all the doors are locked and closed, the Vehicle Security Light, in the instrument panel cluster, will flash rapidly for about 16 seconds to indicate that the alarm is being set. After the alarm is set, the Vehicle Security Light will flash at a slower rate to indicate that the system is armed.

### To Disarm The System

The Vehicle Security Alarm can be disarmed using any of the following methods:

1. Push the UNLOCK button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.
2. Grasp the Passive Entry Unlock Door Handle with a valid Key Fob within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the passive entry door handle (if equipped, refer to "Keyless Enter-N-Go™" in "Things To Know Before Starting Your Vehicle" for further information).
3. Cycle the vehicle ignition system out of the OFF position.
  - For vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go™, push the Keyless Enter-N-Go™ Start/ Stop button (requires at least one valid Key Fob in the vehicle).



- For vehicles not equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go™, insert a valid key into the ignition switch and turn the key to the ON position.

The Vehicle Security Alarm is designed to protect your vehicle. However, you can create conditions where the system will give you a false alarm. If one of the previously described arming sequences has occurred, the Vehicle Security Alarm will arm regardless of whether you are in the vehicle or not. If you remain in the vehicle and open a door, the alarm will sound. If this occurs, disarm the Vehicle Security Alarm.

If the Vehicle Security Alarm is armed and the battery becomes disconnected, the Vehicle Security Alarm will remain armed when the battery is reconnected; the exterior lights will flash, and the horn will sound. If this occurs, disarm the Vehicle Security Alarm.

## **Security System Manual Override**

The Vehicle Security Alarm will not arm if you lock the doors using the manual door lock plunger.

## **ILLUMINATED APPROACH**

The courtesy lights will turn on when you use the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter to unlock the doors or open any door.

This feature also turns on the approach lighting in the outside mirrors (if equipped). Refer to “Mirrors” in “Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle” for further information.

The lights will fade to off after approximately 30 seconds, or they will immediately fade to off once the ignition switch is turned to ON/RUN from the OFF position.

The front courtesy overhead console and door courtesy lights will not turn off if the dimmer control is in the “Dome ON” position (rotate horizontal thumb wheel on the bottom of the switch to the far right detent position).

The illuminated entry system will not operate if the dimmer control is in the “Dome OFF” position (rotate horizontal thumb wheel on the bottom of the switch to the far left detent position).

**NOTE:** If your vehicle is equipped with illuminated approach lights under the outside mirrors, they can be turned off by using the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID) controls (if NOT equipped with a touchscreen radio) or the Uconnect® radio (if equipped with a touchscreen radio). Refer to “Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC),” “Driver Information Display (DID),” or “Uconnect® Settings” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

## REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY (RKE) — IF EQUIPPED

The RKE system allows you to lock or unlock all doors, tailgate, and the RamBox® (if equipped) as well as activate the Panic Alarm from distances up to approximately 33 ft (10 m) using a hand-held radio transmitter with integrated key. The transmitter does not need to be pointed at the vehicle to activate the system. Push and release the LOCK button on the RKE transmitter to lock all doors, and the tailgate. The turn signal lights will flash and the horn will chirp to acknowledge the signal.

**NOTE:** Inserting the Key Fob with RKE transmitter into the ignition switch disables the system from responding to any button pushes from that RKE transmitter. Driving at speeds 5 mph (8 km/h) and above disables the system from responding to all RKE transmitter buttons for all RKE transmitters.



020207434

Key Fob With Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Transmitter



0202005004

Key Fob With Keyless Enter-N-Go™ Fob

## Remote Unlock The Doors

Push and release the UNLOCK button on the RKE transmitter once to unlock the driver's door (If EVIC is setup for driver door first, otherwise this will unlock all doors), or push the unlock button twice within five seconds to unlock all doors. The turn signal lights will flash to acknowledge the unlock signal. The illuminated entry system will also turn on.

### Remote Key Unlock, Driver Door/All Doors First

This feature lets you program the system to unlock either the driver's door or all doors on the first push of the UNLOCK button on the RKE transmitter. To change the current setting, proceed as follows:

- For vehicles not equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/ Settings (Customer-Programmable Features)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

- For vehicles equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to "Uconnect® Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

**NOTE:** Pushing the LOCK button on the RKE transmitter while you are inside the vehicle will activate the Vehicle Security Alarm System. Opening a door with the Vehicle Security Alarm System activated will cause the alarm to sound. Push the UNLOCK button to deactivate the Vehicle Security Alarm System.

### Flash Lamps With Remote Key Lock

This feature will cause the turn signal lights to flash when the doors are locked or unlocked with the RKE transmitter. This feature can be turned on or turned off. To change the current setting, proceed as follows:

- For vehicles not equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center

(EVIC)/Settings (Customer-Programmable Features)” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

- For vehicles equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to “Uconnect® Settings” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

### To Lock The Doors

Push and release the LOCK button on the RKE transmitter to lock all doors. The turn signal lights will flash and the horn will chirp to acknowledge the signal.

### Sound Horn With Remote Key Lock

This feature will cause the horn to chirp when the doors are locked with the RKE transmitter. This feature can be turned on or turned off. To change the current setting, proceed as follows:

- For vehicles not equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to “Electronic Vehicle Information Center

(EVIC)/Settings (Customer-Programmable Features)” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

- For vehicles equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to “Uconnect® Settings” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

**NOTE:** Pushing the LOCK button on the RKE transmitter while you are in the vehicle will activate the Vehicle Security Alarm System. Opening a door with the Vehicle Security Alarm System activated will cause the alarm to sound. Push the UNLOCK button to deactivate the Vehicle Security Alarm System.

## Using The Panic Alarm

To turn the Panic Alarm feature ON or OFF, push and hold the PANIC button on the RKE transmitter for at least one second and release. When the Panic Alarm is on, the headlights will turn on, the park lights will flash, the horn will pulse on and off, and the turn signal lights will flash.

The Panic Alarm will stay on for three minutes unless you turn it off by either pushing the PANIC button a second time or drive the vehicle at a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h) or greater.

### NOTE:

- The interior lights will turn off if you turn the ignition switch to the ACC or ON/RUN position while the Panic Alarm is activated. However, the exterior lights and horn will remain on.

- You may need to be less than 35 ft (11 m) from the vehicle when using the RKE transmitter to turn off the Panic Alarm due to the radio frequency noises emitted by the system.

## Programming Additional Transmitters

If you do not have a programmed RKE transmitter, contact your authorized dealer for details.

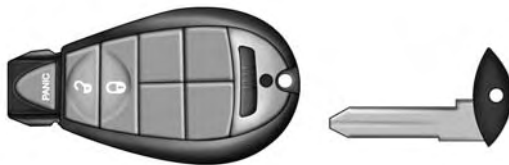
## Transmitter Battery Replacement

The recommended replacement battery is one CR2032 battery.

### NOTE:

- Perchlorate Material — special handling may apply. See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate)
- Do not touch the battery terminals that are on the back housing or the printed circuit board.

1. Remove the emergency key by sliding the mechanical latch on the back of the RKE transmitter sideways with your thumb and then pull the key out with your other hand.



020207436

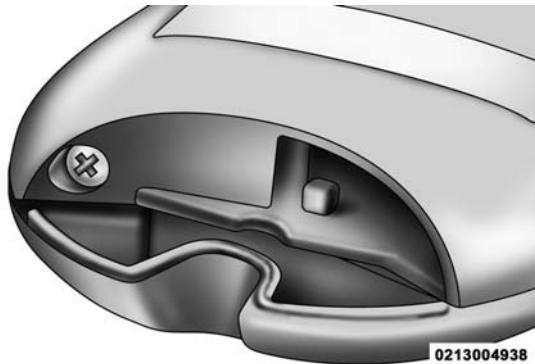
Emergency Key Removal



0202005021

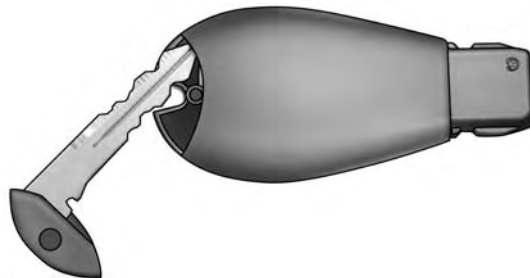
### Emergency Key Removal

2. Separating RKE halves requires screw removal – if equipped, and gently prying the two halves of the RKE transmitter apart. Make sure not to damage the seal during removal.



0213004938

Remove Screw From Transmitter Case



021334199

Separating Transmitter Case





0213004940

### Separating Transmitter Case

3. Remove the battery by turning the back cover over (battery facing downward) and tapping it lightly on a solid surface such as a table or similar, then replace the battery. When replacing the battery, match the + sign on the battery to the + sign on the inside of the battery clip, located on the back cover. Avoid touching the

new battery with your fingers. Skin oils may cause battery deterioration. If you touch a battery, clean it with rubbing alcohol.

4. To assemble the RKE transmitter case, snap the two halves together, reposition and secure the screw as shown in step #2 for removal.

### General Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules and RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**NOTE:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

If your RKE transmitter fails to operate from a normal distance, check for these two conditions:

1. A weak battery in the transmitter. The expected life of the battery is a minimum of three years.
2. Closeness to a radio transmitter such as a radio station tower, airport transmitter, and some mobile or CB radios.

### REMOTE STARTING SYSTEM — IF EQUIPPED



This system uses the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter to start the engine conveniently from outside the vehicle while still maintaining security. The system has a range of approximately 300 ft (91 m).

### NOTE:

- The vehicle must be equipped with an automatic transmission to be equipped with Remote Start.
- Obstructions between the vehicle and the RKE transmitter may reduce this range.

### How To Use Remote Start

All of the following conditions must be met before the engine will remote start:

- Shift lever in PARK
- Doors closed
- Hood closed
- HAZARD switch off
- BRAKE switch inactive (brake pedal not pushed)
- Ignition key removed from ignition switch

- Battery at an acceptable charge level
- RKE PANIC button not pushed
- Fuel meets minimum requirement
- System not disabled from previous remote start event
- Vehicle security alarm not active

### **WARNING!**

- **Do not start or run an engine in a closed garage or confined area. Exhaust gas contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which is odorless and colorless. Carbon Monoxide is poisonous and can cause serious injury or death when inhaled.**
- **Keep Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitters away from children. Operation of the Remote Start System, windows, door locks or other controls could cause serious injury or death.**

### **Remote Start Abort Message**

The following messages will display in the EVIC/DID if the vehicle fails to remote start or exits remote start prematurely:

- Remote Start Cancelled — Door Open
- Remote Start Cancelled — Hood Ajar
- Remote Start Cancelled — Fuel Low
- Remote Start Cancelled — System Fault
- Remote Start Disabled — Start Vehicle to Reset

The EVIC/DID message stays active until the ignition is turned to the ON/RUN position.

## To Enter Remote Start Mode



Push and release the REMOTE START button on the RKE transmitter twice within five seconds. The parking lights will flash, vehicle doors will lock, and the horn will chirp twice (if programmed). Once the vehicle has started, the engine will run for 15 minutes.

### NOTE:

- If your power door locks were unlocked, Remote Start will automatically lock the doors.
- If an engine fault is present or fuel level is low, the vehicle will start and then shut down in 10 seconds.
- The park lamps will turn on and remain on during Remote Start mode.

- For security, power window and power sunroof operation (if equipped) are disabled when the vehicle is in the Remote Start mode.
- The engine can be started two consecutive times (two 15-minute cycles) with the RKE transmitter. However, the ignition switch must be cycled to the ON/RUN position before you can repeat the start sequence for a third cycle.

## To Exit Remote Start Mode Without Driving The Vehicle

Push and release the REMOTE START button one time or allow the engine to run for the entire 15-minute cycle.

**NOTE:** To avoid unintentional shut downs, the system will disable the one time push of the REMOTE START button for two seconds after receiving a valid Remote Start request.

**To Exit Remote Start Mode And Drive The Vehicle**

Before the end of the 15-minute cycle, push and release the UNLOCK button on the RKE transmitter to unlock the doors and disarm the Vehicle Security Alarm System (if equipped). Then, prior to the end of the 15-minute cycle, cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position.

**Remote Start Comfort Systems — If Equipped**

When Remote Start is activated, the heated steering wheel and driver heated seat features will automatically turn on in cold weather. In warm weather, the driver vented seat feature will automatically turn on when the remote start is activated. These features will stay on through the duration of Remote Start or until the ignition switch is turned to the ON/RUN position.

The Remote Start Comfort System can be activated and deactivated through the Uconnect® System. Refer to “Customer Programmable Features” in “Uconnect® Settings” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information on Remote Start Comfort System operation.

**DOOR LOCKS****Manual Door Locks**

Front and rear doors may be locked by moving the lock knob down or unlocked by moving the lock knob up.



**Door Lock Knob**

Front doors may be opened with the inside door handle without lifting the lock knob.

Doors locked before closing will remain locked when closed.

The emergency key will unlock the driver door lock on your vehicle.

**WARNING!**

- Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.
- For personal security and safety in the event of an collision, lock the vehicle doors as you drive as well as when you park and leave the vehicle.
- Before exiting a vehicle, always turn the vehicle OFF, apply the parking brake, shift the automatic transmission into PARK or the manual transmission into REVERSE, and push ignition button to place ignition in OFF mode.
- Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle.

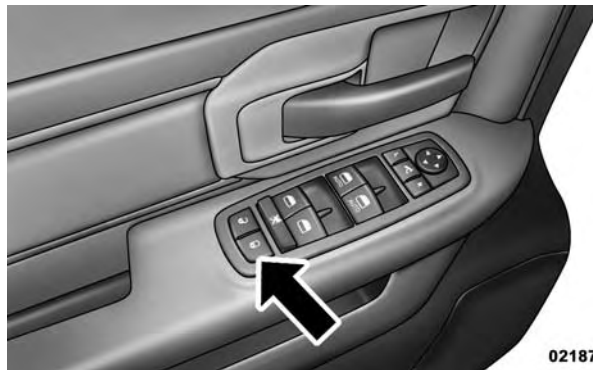
*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.
- Do not leave the Key Fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children, and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go™ in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

**Power Door Locks — If Equipped**

A power door LOCK switch is on each front door trim panel. Use this switch to lock or unlock the doors.



021870068

**Power Door Lock Switch Location**

If you push the power door LOCK switch while the Key Fob is in the ignition, and any front door is open, the power locks will not operate. This prevents you from accidentally locking your Key Fob in the vehicle. Removing the Key Fob or closing the door will allow the locks to

operate. A chime will sound if the Key Fob is in the ignition switch and a door is open, as a reminder to remove the Key Fob.

### **Automatic Door Locks — If Equipped**

The auto door lock feature default condition is enabled. When enabled, the door locks will lock automatically when the vehicle's speed exceeds 15 mph (24 km/h). The auto door lock feature can be enabled or disabled by your authorized dealer or through the Uconnect® Settings in your radio.

### **Automatic Doors Unlock — If Equipped**

This feature unlocks all of the doors of the vehicle when either front door is opened. This will occur only after the vehicle has been shifted into the PARK position after the vehicle has been driven (shifted out of PARK and all doors closed).

### **Automatic Doors Unlock Programming — If Equipped**

The Automatic Doors Unlock feature can be enabled or disabled as follows:

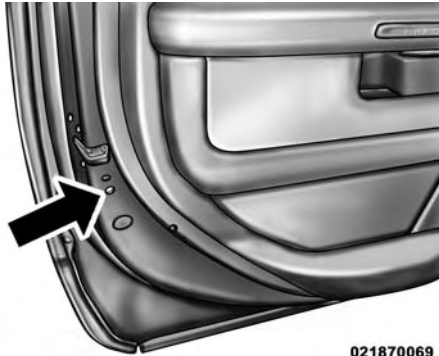
- For vehicles not equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to “Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Settings (Customer-Programmable Features)” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.
- For vehicles equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to “Uconnect® Settings” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

**NOTE:** Use the Auto Unlock Doors feature in accordance with local laws.



### Child-Protection Door Lock

To provide a safer environment for children riding in the rear seat, the rear doors (if equipped) of your vehicle have the Child-Protection Door Lock system.



Child-Protection Door Lock Location

To use the system, open each rear door, use a flat blade screwdriver (or emergency key) and rotate the dial to

engage and disengage the Child-Protection locks. When the system on a door is engaged, that door can only be opened by using the outside door handle even if the inside door lock is in the unlocked position.

2



Child Lock Control

**WARNING!**

**Avoid trapping anyone in a vehicle in a collision. Remember that the rear doors can only be opened from the outside when the Child-Protection locks are engaged.**

**NOTE:**

- After setting the Child-Protection Door Lock system, always test the door from the inside to make certain it is in the desired position.
- For emergency exit with the system engaged, move the door lock switch to the UNLOCK position, roll down the window and open the door with the outside door handle.

**KEYLESS ENTER-N-GO™**

The Passive Entry system is an enhancement to the vehicle's Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system and a feature of Keyless Enter-N-Go™. Refer to "Keyless Enter-N-Go™" in "Starting And Operating" for further information. This feature allows you to lock and unlock the vehicle's door(s) without having to push the RKE transmitter lock or unlock buttons.

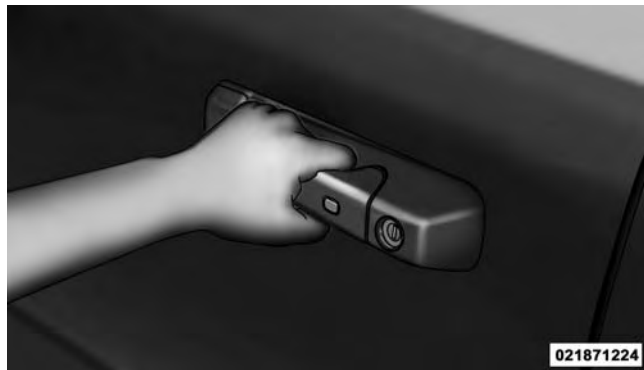
**NOTE:**

- Passive Entry may be programmed ON/OFF. Refer to "Uconnect® Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.
- If wearing gloves on your hands, or if it has been raining on the Passive Entry door handle, the unlock sensitivity can be affected, resulting in a slower response time.

- If the vehicle is unlocked by the Passive Entry Door Handle, and no door goes ajar within 60 seconds, the vehicle will re-lock and if equipped will arm the security alarm.
- The vehicles security alarm can be armed/disarmed by pushing the passive entry key fob lock/unlock buttons (if equipped).

#### To Unlock From The Driver's Side:

With a valid Passive Entry RKE transmitter within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the driver door handle, grab the front driver door handle to unlock the driver's door automatically. The interior door panel lock knob will raise when the door is unlocked.



#### Grab The Door Handle To Unlock

**NOTE:** If “Unlock All Doors 1st Press” is programmed, all doors will unlock when you grab hold of the front driver's door handle. To select between “Unlock Driver Door 1st Press” and “Unlock All Doors 1st Press,” refer to “Uconnect® Settings” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

To Unlock From The Passenger Side:

With a valid Passive Entry RKE transmitter within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the passenger door handle, grab the front passenger door handle to unlock all doors automatically. The interior door panel lock knob will raise when the door is unlocked.

**NOTE:** All doors will unlock when the front passenger door handle is grabbed regardless of the driver's door unlock preference setting ("Unlock Driver Door 1st Press" or "Unlock All Doors 1st Press").

Preventing Inadvertent Locking Of Passive Entry RKE Transmitter In Vehicle:

To minimize the possibility of unintentionally locking a Passive Entry RKE transmitter inside your vehicle, the Passive Entry system is equipped with an automatic door unlock feature which will function if the ignition switch is in the OFF position.

If one of the vehicle doors is open and the door panel switch is used to lock the vehicle, once all open doors have been closed the vehicle checks the inside and outside of the vehicle for any valid Passive Entry RKE transmitters. If one of the vehicle's Passive Entry RKE transmitters is detected inside the vehicle, and no other valid Passive Entry RKE transmitters are detected outside the vehicle, the Passive Entry System automatically unlocks all vehicle doors and chirps the horn three times (on the third attempt ALL doors will lock and the Passive Entry RKE transmitter can be locked in the vehicle).

To Lock The Vehicle's Doors:

With one of the vehicle's Passive Entry RKE transmitters within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the driver or passenger front door handles, push the door handle LOCK button to lock all doors.



Push The Door Handle Button To Lock

Do NOT grab the door handle when pushing the door handle lock button. This could unlock the door(s).



Do NOT Grab The Door Handle When Locking

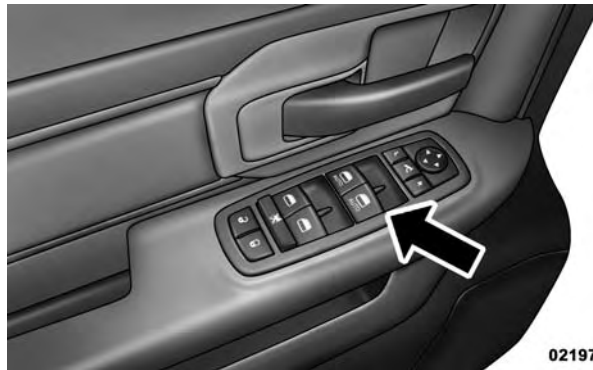
**NOTE:**

- After pushing the door handle LOCK button, you must wait two seconds before you can lock or unlock the doors, using either Passive Entry door handle. This is done to allow you to check if the vehicle is locked by pulling the door handle, without the vehicle reacting and unlocking.
- The Passive Entry system will not operate if the RKE transmitter battery is dead.

The vehicle doors can also be locked by using the RKE transmitter lock button or the lock button located on the vehicle's interior door panel.

**WINDOWS**

**Power Windows — If Equipped**



021970066

**Power Window Switches**

The control on the left front door panel has UP-DOWN switches that give you fingertip control of all power windows. There is a single opening and closing switch on

the front passenger door for passenger window control and on the rear doors of the Quad Cab and Crew Cab models. The windows will operate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON/RUN or ACC position, and for up to 10 minutes after the ignition is turned OFF or until a front door is opened.

**NOTE:** The Key Off Power Delay feature will allow the power windows to operate for up to 10 minutes after the ignition is turned OFF. This feature is cancelled when either front door is opened.

### **WARNING!**

**Never leave children unattended in a vehicle. Do not leave the Key Fob in or near the vehicle or in a location accessible to children, and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go™ in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. Occupants,**

*(Continued)*

### **WARNING! (Continued)**

**particularly unattended children, can become entrapped by the windows while operating the power window switches. Such entrapment may result in serious injury or death.**

### **Auto-Down**

Both the driver and front passenger window switch have an Auto-Down feature. Push the window switch past the first detent, release, and the window will go down automatically. To cancel the Auto-Down movement, operate the switch in either the up or down direction and release the switch.

To stop the window from going all the way down during the Auto-Down operation, pull up on the switch briefly.

To open the window part way, push to the first detent and release it when you want the window to stop.

### **Auto-Up Feature With Anti-Pinch Protection (4-Door Models Driver And Front Passenger Door Only) — If Equipped**

Lift the window switch fully upward to the second detent, release, and the window will go up automatically.

To stop the window from going all the way up during the Auto Up operation, push down on the switch briefly.

To close the window part way, lift the window switch to the first detent and release when you want the window to stop.

**NOTE:** If the window runs into any obstacle during the auto-closure, it will reverse direction and then go back down. Remove the obstacle and use the window switch again to close the window. Any impact due to rough road conditions may trigger the auto reverse function unexpectedly during auto closure. If this happens, pull the switch lightly to the first detent and hold to close the window manually.

#### **WARNING!**

**There is no anti-pinch protection when the window is almost closed. Be sure to clear all objects from the window before closing.**



## Reset Auto-Up

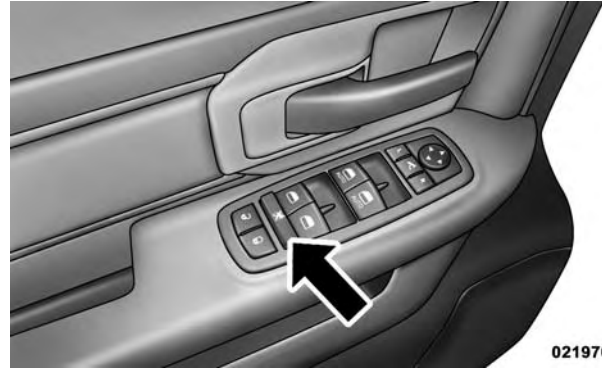
Should the Auto Up feature stop working, the window may need to be reset. To reset Auto Up:

1. Make sure the door is fully closed.
2. Pull the window switch up to close the window completely and continue to hold the switch up for an additional two seconds after the window is closed.
3. Push the window switch down firmly to the second detent to open the window completely and continue to hold the switch down for an additional two seconds after the window is fully open.

## Window LOCKOUT Switch (4-Door Models Only)

The window LOCKOUT switch on the driver's door allows you to disable the window control on the rear passenger doors. To disable the window controls on the rear passenger doors, push the window LOCK button into the latched or down position. To enable the window

controls, push the window LOCK button again and return the switch to the released or up position.



021970067

Window Lockout Switch

## Wind Buffeting

Wind buffeting can be described as the perception of pressure on the ears or a helicopter-type sound in the ears. Your vehicle may exhibit wind buffeting with the windows down, or the sunroof (if equipped) in certain open or partially open positions. This is a normal occurrence and can be minimized. If the buffeting occurs with the rear windows open, then open the front and rear windows together to minimize the buffeting. If the buffeting occurs with the sunroof open, adjust the sunroof opening to minimize the buffeting.

## OCCUPANT RESTRAINT SYSTEMS

Some of the most important safety features in your vehicle are the restraint systems:

- Seat Belt Systems
- Supplemental Restraint Systems (SRS) Air Bags
- Child Restraints

## Important Safety Precautions

Please pay close attention to the information in this section. It tells you how to use your restraint system properly, to keep you and your passengers as safe as possible.

Here are some simple steps you can take to minimize the risk of harm from a deploying air bag:

1. Children 12 years old and under should always ride buckled up in a vehicle with a rear seat.
2. If a child from 2 to 12 years old (not in a rear-facing child restraint) must ride in the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible and use the proper child restraint. (Refer to “Child Restraints”)

3. Children that are not big enough to wear the vehicle seat belt properly (Refer to "Child Restraints") should be secured in a vehicle with a rear seat in child restraints or belt-positioning booster seats. Older children who do not use child restraints or belt-positioning booster seats should ride properly buckled up in a vehicle with a rear seat.
4. Never allow children to slide the shoulder belt behind them or under their arm.
5. You should read the instructions provided with your child restraint to make sure that you are using it properly.
6. All occupants should always wear their lap and shoulder belts properly.
7. The driver and front passenger seats should be moved back as far as practical to allow the Advanced Front Air Bags room to inflate.
8. Do not lean against the door or window. If your vehicle has side air bags, and deployment occurs, the side air bags will inflate forcefully into the space between you and the door and you could be injured.
9. If the air bag system in this vehicle needs to be modified to accommodate a disabled person, contact the Customer Center. Phone numbers are provided under "If You Need Consumer Assistance."

**WARNING!**


- **Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger Advanced Front Air Bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.**
- **Only use a rear-facing child restraint in a vehicle with a rear seat.**

## Seat Belt Systems

Buckle up even though you are an excellent driver, even on short trips. Someone on the road may be a poor driver and could cause a collision that includes you. This can happen far away from home or on your own street.

Research has shown that seat belts save lives, and they can reduce the seriousness of injuries in a collision. Some of the worst injuries happen when people are thrown from the vehicle. Seat belts reduce the possibility of ejection and the risk of injury caused by striking the inside of the vehicle. Everyone in a motor vehicle should be belted at all times.

### Enhanced Seat Belt Use Reminder System (BeltAlert)

 BeltAlert is a feature intended to remind the driver and outboard front passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger BeltAlert) to buckle their seat belts. The feature is active whenever the ignition

switch is in the START or ON/RUN position. If the driver or outboard front seat passenger is unbelted, the Seat Belt Reminder Light will turn on and remain on until both outboard front seat belts are buckled.

The BeltAlert warning sequence begins after the vehicle speed is over 5 mph (8 km/h) by blinking the Seat Belt Reminder Light and sounding an intermittent chime. Once the sequence starts, it will continue for the entire duration or until the respective seat belts are buckled. After the sequence completes, the Seat Belt Reminder Light remains illuminated until the respective seat belts are buckled. The driver should instruct all other occupants to buckle their seat belts. If an outboard front seat belt is unbuckled while traveling at speeds greater than 5 mph (8 km/h), BeltAlert will provide both audio and visual notification.

The outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert is not active when the outboard front passenger seat is unoccupied.

BeltAlert may be triggered when an animal or heavy object is on the outboard front passenger seat or when the seat is folded flat (if equipped). It is recommended that pets be restrained in the rear seat (if equipped) in pet harnesses or pet carriers that are secured by seat belts, and cargo is properly stowed.

BeltAlert can be activated or deactivated by your authorized dealer. FCA US LLC does not recommend deactivating BeltAlert.

**NOTE:** If BeltAlert has been deactivated, the Seat Belt Reminder Light will continue to illuminate while the driver's or outboard front passenger's (if equipped with BeltAlert) seat belt remains unbuckled.

### Lap/Shoulder Belts

All seating positions except the Quad Cab®, Mega Cab® and Crew Cab front center seating position have combination lap/shoulder belts.

The seat belt webbing retractor will lock only during very sudden stops or collisions. This feature allows the shoulder part of the seat belt to move freely with you under normal conditions. However, in a collision the seat belt will lock and reduce your risk of striking the inside of the vehicle or being thrown out of the vehicle.

#### **WARNING!**

- **Relying on the air bags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The air bags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions, the air bags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belt even though you have air bags.**
- **In a collision, you and your passengers can suffer much greater injuries if you are not properly buckled up. You can strike the interior of your vehicle or**

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

other passengers, or you can be thrown out of the vehicle. Always be sure you and others in your vehicle are buckled up properly.

- It is dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.
- Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.
- Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.
- Wearing your seat belt incorrectly could make your injuries in a collision much worse. You might suffer internal injuries, or you could even slide out of the seat belt. Follow these instructions to wear

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

your seat belt safely and to keep your passengers safe, too.

- Two people should never be belted into a single seat belt. People belted together can crash into one another in a collision, hurting one another badly. Never use a lap/shoulder belt or a lap belt for more than one person, no matter what their size.
- A lap belt worn too high can increase the risk of injury in a collision. The seat belt forces won't be at the strong hip and pelvic bones, but across your abdomen. Always wear the lap part of your seat belt as low as possible and keep it snug.
- A twisted seat belt may not protect you properly. In a collision, it could even cut into you. Be sure the seat belt is flat against your body, without twists. If you can't straighten a seat belt in your vehicle, take

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

it to your authorized dealer immediately and have it fixed.

- A seat belt that is buckled into the wrong buckle will not protect you properly. The lap portion could ride too high on your body, possibly causing internal injuries. Always buckle your seat belt into the buckle nearest you.
- A seat belt that is too loose will not protect you properly. In a sudden stop, you could move too far forward, increasing the possibility of injury. Wear your seat belt snugly.
- A seat belt that is worn under your arm is dangerous. Your body could strike the inside surfaces of the vehicle in a collision, increasing head and neck injury. A seat belt worn under the arm can cause internal injuries. Ribs aren't as strong as shoulder

*(Continued)*

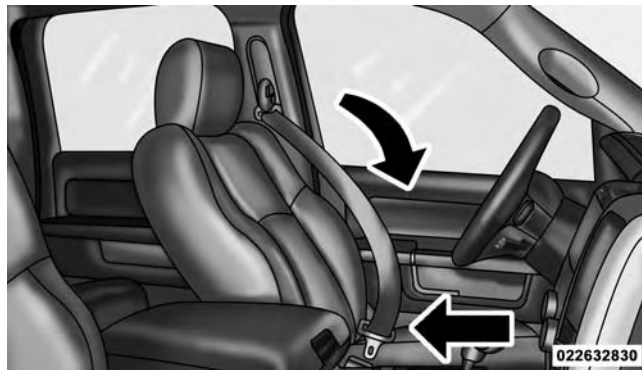
**WARNING! (Continued)**

bones. Wear the seat belt over your shoulder so that your strongest bones will take the force in a collision.

- A shoulder belt placed behind you will not protect you from injury during a collision. You are more likely to hit your head in a collision if you do not wear your shoulder belt. The lap and shoulder belt are meant to be used together.
- A frayed or torn seat belt could rip apart in a collision and leave you with no protection. Inspect the seat belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, or loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the seat belt system. Seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision.

### Lap/Shoulder Belt Operating Instructions

1. Enter the vehicle and close the door. Sit back and adjust the seat.
2. The seat belt latch plate is above the back of the front seat, and next to your arm in the rear seat (for vehicles equipped with a rear seat). Grasp the latch plate and pull out the seat belt. Slide the latch plate up the webbing as far as necessary to allow the seat belt to go around your lap.



**Pulling Out The Latch Plate**

3. When the seat belt is long enough to fit, insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click."





Inserting Latch Plate Into Buckle

4. Position the lap belt so that it is snug and lies low across your hips, below your abdomen. To remove slack in the lap belt portion, pull up on the shoulder belt. To loosen the lap belt if it is too tight, tilt the latch plate and pull on the lap belt. A snug seat belt reduces the risk of sliding under the seat belt in a collision.

2



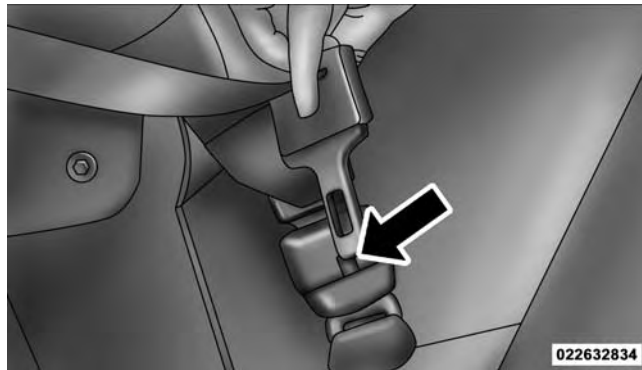
Positioning The Lap Belt

5. Position the shoulder belt across the shoulder and chest with minimal, if any slack so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the shoulder belt.
6. To release the seat belt, push the red button on the buckle. The seat belt will automatically retract to its stowed position. If necessary, slide the latch plate down the webbing to allow the seat belt to retract fully.

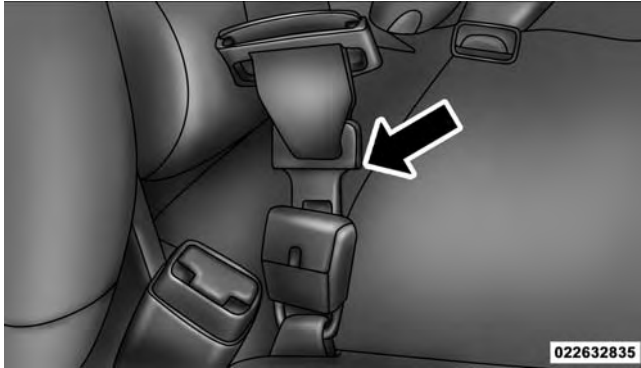
### First Row Center Seat Belt Operating Instructions (Regular Cab Only)

The first row center seat belt features a seat belt with a mini-latch and mini-buckle, which allows the seat belt to detach from the lower anchor when the seat is folded. The mini-buckle and seat belt can then be stored out of the way in the seat for added convenience.

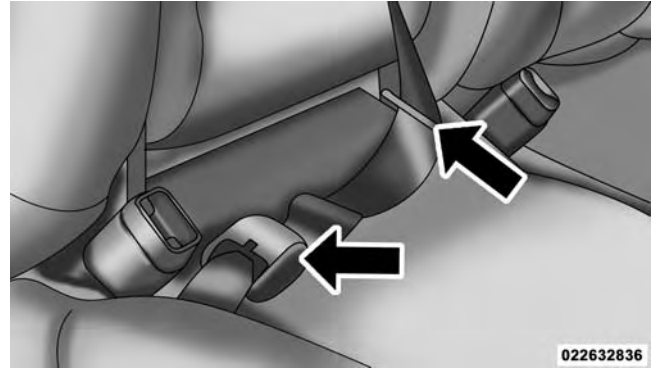
1. Remove the mini-latch and regular latch from its stowed position on the seat.



**Detaching Buckle With Seat Belt Tongue**



Inserting Latch Plate



In Use Position

2. Grasp the mini-latch plate and pull the seat belt over the seat.
3. Route the shoulder belt to the inside of the [right/ left] head restraint.

## 58 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

4. When the seat belt is long enough to fit, insert the mini-latch plate into the mini-buckle until you hear a “click.”
5. Sit back in seat. Slide the regular latch plate up the webbing as far as necessary to allow the seat belt to go around your lap.
6. When the seat belt is long enough to fit, insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a “click.”
7. Position the lap belt so that it is snug and lies low across your hips, below your abdomen. To remove slack in the lap belt portion, pull up on the shoulder belt. To loosen the lap belt if it is too tight, pull on the lap belt. A snug seat belt reduces the risk of sliding under the seat belt in a collision.
8. Position the shoulder belt on your chest so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the seat belt.
9. To release the seat belt, push the red button on the buckle.
10. To disengage the mini-latch from the mini-buckle for storage, insert the regular latch plate into the center red slot on the mini-buckle. The seat belt will automatically retract to its stowed position. If necessary, slide the latch plate down the webbing to allow the seat belt to retract fully. Insert the mini-latch plate and regular latch plate into its stowed position.

### WARNING!

- **If the mini-latch plate and mini-buckle are not properly connected when the seat belt is used by an occupant, the seat belt will not be able to provide proper restraint and will increase the risk of injury in a collision.**

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- When reattaching the mini-latch plate and mini-buckle, ensure the seat belt webbing is not twisted. If the webbing is twisted, follow the preceding procedure to detach the mini-latch plate and mini-buckle, untwist the webbing, and reattach the mini-latch plate and mini-buckle.

**Lap/Shoulder Belt Untwisting Procedure**

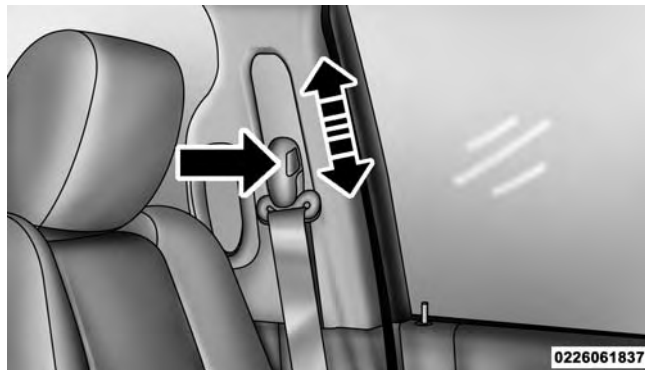
Use the following procedure to untwist a twisted lap/shoulder belt.

1. Position the latch plate as close as possible to the anchor point.
2. At about 6 to 12 inches (15 to 30 cm) above the latch plate, grasp and twist the seat belt webbing 180 degrees to create a fold that begins immediately above the latch plate.

3. Slide the latch plate upward over the folded webbing. The folded webbing must enter the slot at the top of the latch plate.
4. Continue to slide the latch plate up until it clears the folded webbing and the seat belt is no longer twisted.

**Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt Anchorage**

In the driver and front passenger seats, the top of the shoulder belt can be adjusted upward or downward to position the seat belt away from your neck. Push or squeeze the anchorage button to release the anchorage, and move it up or down to the position that serves you best.



### Adjustable Anchorage

As a guide, if you are shorter than average, you will prefer the shoulder belt anchorage in a lower position, and if you are taller than average, you will prefer the shoulder belt anchorage in a higher position. After you release the anchorage button, try to move it up or down to make sure that it is locked in position.

**NOTE:** The adjustable upper shoulder belt anchorage is equipped with an Easy Up feature. This feature allows the shoulder belt anchorage to be adjusted in the upward position without pushing or squeezing the release button. To verify the shoulder belt anchorage is latched, pull downward on the shoulder belt anchorage until it is locked into position.

### Seat Belt Extender

If a seat belt is not long enough to fit properly, even when the webbing is fully extended and the adjustable upper shoulder belt anchorage (if equipped) is in its lowest position, your authorized dealer can provide you with a Seat Belt Extender. The Seat Belt Extender should be used only if the existing seat belt is not long enough. When the Seat Belt Extender is not required for a different occupant, it must be removed.

**WARNING!**

- **ONLY** use a Seat Belt Extender if it is physically required in order to properly fit the original seat belt system. **DO NOT USE** the Seat Belt Extender if, when worn, the distance between the front edge of the Seat Belt Extender buckle and the center of the occupant's body is **LESS** than 6 inches.
- Using a Seat Belt Extender when not needed can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision. Only use the Seat Belt Extender when the lap belt is not long enough and only use in the recommended seating positions. Remove and store the Seat Belt Extender when not needed.

**Seat Belts And Pregnant Women**

We recommend that pregnant women use the seat belts throughout their pregnancy. Keeping the mother safe is the best way to keep the baby safe.

Pregnant women should wear the lap part of the seat belt across the thighs and as snug across the hips as possible. Keep the seat belt low so that it does not come across the abdomen. That way the strong bones of the hips will take the force if there is a collision.

**Seat Belt Pretensioner — If Equipped**

The front seat belt system may be equipped with pretensioning devices that are designed to remove slack from the seat belt in the event of a collision. These devices may improve the performance of the seat belt by removing slack from the seat belt early in a collision. Pretensioners work for all size occupants, including those in child restraints.

**NOTE:** These devices are not a substitute for proper seat belt placement by the occupant. The seat belt still must be worn snugly and positioned properly.

The pretensioners are triggered by the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC). Like the air bags, the pretensioners are single use items. A deployed pretensioner or a deployed air bag must be replaced immediately.

### **Energy Management Feature — If Equipped**

This vehicle has a seat belt system with an Energy Management feature in the front seating positions that may help further reduce the risk of injury in the event of a collision. This seat belt system has a retractor assembly that is designed to release webbing in a controlled manner.

### **Front Center Lap Belts**

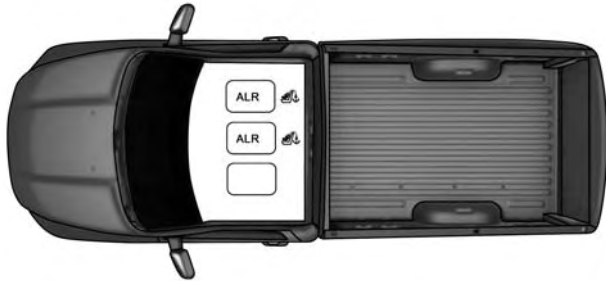
The front center seating position for the Quad Cab®, Mega Cab® and Crew Cab has a lap belt only. To buckle the lap belt, slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click." To lengthen the lap belt, tilt the latch plate and pull.

To remove slack, pull the loose end of the webbing. Wear the lap belt snug against the hips. Sit back and upright in the seat, then adjust the seat belt as tightly as is comfortable.

### **Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR) – If Equipped**

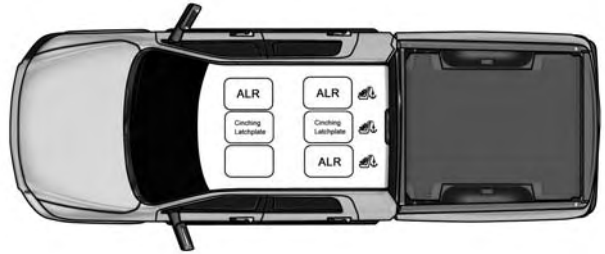
The seat belts in the passenger seating positions may be equipped with a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) which is used to secure a child restraint system. For additional information, refer to "Installing Child Restraints Using The Vehicle Seat Belt" under the "Child Restraints" section of this manual. The table below defines the type of feature for each seating position.





0226059225

Regular Cab



0226061828

Quad Cab®/Mega Cab®/Crew Cab

- ALR = Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor

If the passenger seating position is equipped with an ALR and is being used for normal usage, only pull the seat belt webbing out far enough to comfortably wrap around the occupant's mid-section so as to not activate the ALR. If the ALR is activated, you will hear a clicking sound as the seat belt retracts. Allow the webbing to retract completely in this case and then carefully pull out only the amount of webbing necessary to comfortably wrap around the occupant's mid-section. Slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click."

In Automatic Locking Mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The seat belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. Use the Automatic Locking Mode anytime a child restraint is installed in a seating position that has a seat belt with this feature. Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in a vehicle with a rear seat.

### WARNING!

- **Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying Passenger Advanced Front Air Bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.**
- **Only use a rear-facing child restraint in a vehicle with a rear seat.**

#### How To Engage The Automatic Locking Mode

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire seat belt is extracted.
3. Allow the seat belt to retract. As the seat belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seat belt is now in the Automatic Locking Mode.

## How To Disengage The Automatic Locking Mode

Unbuckle the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the Automatic Locking Mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

### WARNING!

- The seat belt assembly must be replaced if the switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) feature or any other seat belt function is not working properly when checked according to the procedures in the Service Manual.
- Failure to replace the seat belt assembly could increase the risk of injury in collisions.
- Do not use the Automatic Locking Mode to restrain occupants who are wearing the seat belt or children who are using booster seats. The locked mode is

*(Continued)*

### WARNING! *(Continued)*


**only used to install rear-facing or forward-facing child restraints that have a harness for restraining the child.**

2

## Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)

### Air Bag System Components

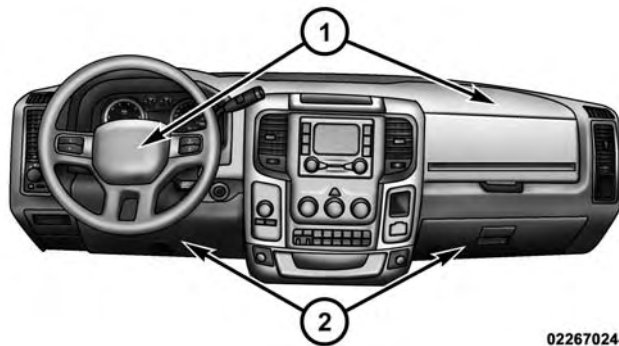
Your vehicle may be equipped with the following air bag system components:

- Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)
- Air Bag Warning Light 
- Steering Wheel and Column
- Instrument Panel
- Knee Impact Bolsters
- Advanced Front Air Bags

- Supplemental Side Air Bags
- Front And Side Impact Sensors — If Equipped
- Seat Belt Pretensioners
- Seat Belt Buckle Switch

### Advanced Front Air Bags

This vehicle has Advanced Front Air Bags for both the driver and front passenger as a supplement to the seat belt restraint systems. The driver's Advanced Front Air Bag is mounted in the center of the steering wheel. The passenger's Advanced Front Air Bag is mounted in the instrument panel, above the glove compartment. The words "SRS AIRBAG" or "AIRBAG" are embossed on the air bag covers.



022670244

### Advanced Front Air Bag And Knee Bolster Locations

- 1 — Driver And Passenger Advanced Front Air Bags
- 2 — Driver/Passenger Knee Impact Bolsters

**WARNING!**

- **Being too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel during Advanced Front Air Bag deployment could cause serious injury, including death. Air bags need room to inflate. Sit back, comfortably extending your arms to reach the steering wheel or instrument panel.**
- **Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying Passenger Advanced Front Air Bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.**
- **Only use a rear-facing child restraint in a vehicle with a rear seat.**

**Advanced Front Air Bag Features**

The Advanced Front Air Bag system has multistage driver and front passenger air bags. This system provides output appropriate to the severity and type of collision as determined by the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC), which may receive information from the front impact sensors (if equipped) or other system components.

The first stage inflator is triggered immediately during an impact that requires air bag deployment. A low energy output is used in less severe collisions. A higher energy output is used for more severe collisions.

This vehicle may be equipped with a driver and/or front passenger seat belt buckle switch that detects whether the driver or front passenger seat belt is buckled. The seat belt buckle switch may adjust the inflation rate of the Advanced Front Air Bags.

**WARNING!**

- No objects should be placed over or near the air bag on the instrument panel or steering wheel, because any such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a collision severe enough to cause the air bags to inflate.
- Do not put anything on or around the air bag covers or attempt to open them manually. You may damage the air bags and you could be injured because the air bags may no longer be functional. The protective covers for the air bag cushions are designed to open only when the air bags are inflating.
- Relying on the air bags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The air bags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

some collisions, air bags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belts even though you have air bags.

**Advanced Front Air Bag Operation**

Advanced Front Air Bags are designed to provide additional protection by supplementing the seat belts. Advanced Front Air Bags are not expected to reduce the risk of injury in rear, side, or rollover collisions. The Advanced Front Air Bags will not deploy in all frontal collisions, including some that may produce substantial vehicle damage — for example, some pole collisions, truck underrides, and angle offset collisions.

On the other hand, depending on the type and location of impact, Advanced Front Air Bags may deploy in crashes with little vehicle front-end damage but that produce a severe initial deceleration.

Because air bag sensors measure vehicle deceleration over time, vehicle speed and damage by themselves are not good indicators of whether or not an air bag should have deployed.

Seat belts are necessary for your protection in all collisions, and also are needed to help keep you in position, away from an inflating air bag.

When the ORC detects a collision requiring the Advanced Front Air Bags, it signals the inflator units. A large quantity of non-toxic gas is generated to inflate the Advanced Front Air Bags.

The steering wheel hub trim cover and the upper right side of the instrument panel separate and fold out of the way as the air bags inflate to their full size. The Advanced Front Air Bags fully inflate in less time than it takes to blink your eyes. The air bags then quickly deflate while helping to restrain the driver and front passenger.

## Knee Impact Bolsters

The Knee Impact Bolsters help protect the knees of the driver and front passenger, and position the front occupants for improved interaction with the Advanced Front Air Bags.

### WARNING!

- Do not drill, cut, or tamper with the knee impact bolsters in any way.
- Do not mount any accessories to the knee impact bolsters such as alarm lights, stereos, citizen band radios, etc.

## If A Deployment Occurs

The Advanced Front Air Bags are designed to deflate immediately after deployment.

## 70 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

**NOTE:** Front and/or side air bags will not deploy in all collisions. This does not mean something is wrong with the air bag system.

If you do have a collision which deploys the air bags, any or all of the following may occur:

- The air bag material may sometimes cause abrasions and/or skin reddening to the occupants as the air bags deploy and unfold. The abrasions are similar to friction rope burns or those you might get sliding along a carpet or gymnasium floor. They are not caused by contact with chemicals. They are not permanent and normally heal quickly. However, if you haven't healed significantly within a few days, or if you have any blistering, see your doctor immediately.
- As the air bags deflate, you may see some smoke-like particles. The particles are a normal by-product of the process that generates the non-toxic gas used for air bag inflation. These airborne particles may irritate the

skin, eyes, nose, or throat. If you have skin or eye irritation, rinse the area with cool water. For nose or throat irritation, move to fresh air. If the irritation continues, see your doctor. If these particles settle on your clothing, follow the garment manufacturer's instructions for cleaning.

Do not drive your vehicle after the air bags have deployed. If you are involved in another collision, the air bags will not be in place to protect you.

### **WARNING!**

**Deployed air bags and seat belt pretensioners cannot protect you in another collision. Have the air bags, seat belt pretensioners, and the seat belt retractor assemblies replaced by an authorized dealer immediately. Also, have the Occupant Restraint Controller System serviced as well.**



**NOTE:**

- Air bag covers may not be obvious in the interior trim, but they will open during air bag deployment.
- After any collision, the vehicle should be taken to an authorized dealer immediately.

**Enhanced Accident Response System**

In the event of an impact, if the communication network remains intact, and the power remains intact, depending on the nature of the event, the ORC will determine whether to have the Enhanced Accident Response System perform the following functions:

- Cut off fuel to the engine.
- Flash hazard lights as long as the battery has power or until the ignition switch is turned to the “OFF” position.

- Turn on the interior lights, which remain on as long as the battery has power or until the ignition switch is turned to the “OFF” position.
- Unlock the doors automatically.

**System Reset Procedure**

In order to reset the Enhanced Accident Response System functions after an event, the ignition switch must be changed from ignition START or ON/RUN to ignition OFF.

**Air Bag Warning Light **

The air bags must be ready to inflate for your protection in a collision. The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) monitors the internal circuits and interconnecting wiring associated with air bag system electrical components.

The ORC monitors the readiness of the electronic parts of the air bag system whenever the ignition switch is in the START or ON/RUN position. If the ignition switch is in the OFF position or in the ACC position, the air bag system is not on and the air bags will not inflate.

The ORC contains a backup power supply system that may deploy the air bags even if the battery loses power or it becomes disconnected prior to deployment.

The ORC turns on the Air Bag Warning Light in the instrument panel for approximately four to eight seconds for a self-check when the ignition switch is first turned to the ON/RUN position. After the self-check, the Air Bag Warning Light will turn off. If the ORC detects a malfunction in any part of the system, it turns on the Air Bag Warning Light, either momentarily or continuously. A single chime will sound to alert you if the light comes on again after initial startup.

The ORC also includes diagnostics that will illuminate the instrument panel Air Bag Warning Light if a malfunction is detected that could affect the air bag system. The diagnostics also record the nature of the malfunction. While the air bag system is designed to be maintenance free, if any of the following occurs, have an authorized dealer service the air bag system immediately.

- The Air Bag Warning Light does not come on during the four to eight seconds when the ignition switch is first turned to the ON/RUN position.
- The Air Bag Warning Light remains on after the four to eight-second interval.
- The Air Bag Warning Light comes on intermittently or remains on while driving.

**NOTE:** If the speedometer, tachometer, or any engine related gauges are not working, the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) may also be disabled. In this condition the air bags may not be ready to inflate for your protection. Have an authorized dealer service the air bag system immediately.

### **WARNING!**

Ignoring the Air Bag Warning Light in your instrument panel could mean you won't have the air bags to protect you in a collision. If the light does not come on as a bulb check when the ignition is first placed in the on position, and stays on after you start the vehicle, or if it comes on as you drive, have an authorized dealer service the air bag system immediately.

## Maintaining Your Air Bag System

### **WARNING!**

- **Modifications to any part of the air bag system could cause it to fail when you need it. You could be injured if the air bag system is not there to protect you. Do not modify the components or wiring, including adding any kind of badges or stickers to the steering wheel hub trim cover or the upper right side of the instrument panel. Do not modify the front bumper, vehicle body structure, or add aftermarket side steps or running boards.**
- **It is dangerous to try to repair any part of the air bag system yourself. Be sure to tell anyone who works on your vehicle that it has an air bag system.**
- **Do not attempt to modify any part of your air bag system. The air bag may inflate accidentally or may**

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

**not function properly if modifications are made. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer for any air bag system service. If your seat, including your trim cover and cushion, needs to be serviced in any way (including removal or loosening/tightening of seat attachment bolts), take the vehicle to your authorized dealer. Only manufacturer approved seat accessories may be used. If it is necessary to modify the air bag system for persons with disabilities, contact your authorized dealer.**

**Event Data Recorder (EDR)**

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will

assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal
- How fast the vehicle was traveling

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

**NOTE:** EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

## Child Restraints

Everyone in your vehicle needs to be buckled up at all times, including babies and children.

Every state in the United States, and every Canadian province, requires that small children ride in proper restraint systems. This is the law, and you can be prosecuted for ignoring it.

Children 12 years or younger should ride properly buckled up in a rear seat, if available. According to crash statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats rather than in the front.

### **WARNING!**

**In a collision, an unrestrained child can become a projectile inside the vehicle. The force required to hold even an infant on your lap could become so**

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

**great that you could not hold the child, no matter how strong you are. The child and others could be badly injured. Any child riding in your vehicle should be in a proper restraint for the child's size.**

There are different sizes and types of restraints for children from newborn size to the child almost large enough for an adult safety belt. Always check the child seat Owner's Manual to make sure you have the correct seat for your child. Carefully read and follow all the instructions and warnings in the child restraint Owner's Manual and on all the labels attached to the child restraint.

Before buying any restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets all applicable Safety Standards. You should also make sure that you can install it in the vehicle where you will use it.

**NOTE:**

- For additional information, refer to [www.seatcheck.org](http://www.seatcheck.org) or call 1-866-732-8243. Canadian residents should refer to Transport Canada's website for additional information:
- <http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/safedrivers-childsafety-index-53.htm>

## Summary Of Recommendations For Restraining Children In Vehicles

	<b>Child Size, Height, Weight Or Age</b>	<b>Recommended Type Of Child Restraint</b>
Infants and Toddlers	Children who are two years old or younger and who have not reached the height or weight limits of their child restraint	Either an Infant Carrier or a Convertible Child Restraint, facing rearward in the rear seat of the vehicle
Small Children	Children who are at least two years old or who have out-grown the height or weight limit of their rear-facing child restraint	Forward-Facing Child Restraint with a five-point Harness, facing forward in the rear seat of the vehicle
Larger Children	Children who have out-grown their forward-facing child restraint, but are too small to properly fit the vehicle's seat belt	Belt Positioning Booster Seat and the vehicle seat belt, seated in the rear seat of the vehicle
Children Too Large for Child Restraints	Children 12 years old or younger, who have out-grown the height or weight limit of their booster seat	Vehicle Seat Belt, seated in the rear seat of the vehicle

## Infants And Child Restraints

Safety experts recommend that children ride rear-facing in the vehicle until they are two years old or until they reach either the height or weight limit of their rear-facing child restraint. Two types of child restraints can be used rear-facing: infant carriers and convertible child seats.

The infant carrier is only used rear-facing in the vehicle. It is recommended for children from birth until they reach the weight or height limit of the infant carrier. Convertible child seats can be used either rear-facing or forward-facing in the vehicle. Convertible child seats often have a higher weight limit in the rear-facing direction than infant carriers do, so they can be used rear-facing by children who have outgrown their infant carrier but are still less than at least two years old. Children should remain rear-facing until they reach the highest weight or height allowed by their convertible child seat.

### WARNING!

- **Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger Advanced Front Air Bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.**
- **Only use a rear-facing child restraint in a vehicle with a rear seat.**

## Older Children And Child Restraints

Children who are two years old or who have outgrown their rear-facing convertible child seat can ride forward-facing in the vehicle. Forward-facing child seats and convertible child seats used in the forward-facing direction are for children who are over two years old or who have outgrown the rear-facing weight or height limit of their rear-facing convertible child seat. Children should



remain in a forward-facing child seat with a harness for as long as possible, up to the highest weight or height allowed by the child seat.

All children whose weight or height is above the forward-facing limit for the child seat should use a belt-positioning booster seat until the vehicle's seat belts fit properly. If the child cannot sit with knees bent over the vehicle's seat cushion while the child's back is against the seatback, they should use a belt-positioning booster seat. The child and belt-positioning booster seat are held in the vehicle by the seat belt.

**WARNING!**

- **Improper installation can lead to failure of an infant or child restraint. It could come loose in a collision. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's**

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

**directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.**

- **After a child restraint is installed in the vehicle, do not move the vehicle seat forward or rearward because it can loosen the child restraint attachments. Remove the child restraint before adjusting the vehicle seat position. When the vehicle seat has been adjusted, reinstall the child restraint.**
- **When your child restraint is not in use, secure it in the vehicle with the seat belt or LATCH anchorages, or remove it from the vehicle. Do not leave it loose in the vehicle. In a sudden stop or accident, it could strike the occupants or seatbacks and cause serious personal injury.**

### Children Too Large For Booster Seats

Children who are large enough to wear the shoulder belt comfortably, and whose legs are long enough to bend over the front of the seat when their back is against the seatback, should use the seat belt in a rear seat. Use this simple 5-step test to decide whether the child can use the vehicle's seat belt alone:

1. Can the child sit all the way back against the back of the vehicle seat?
2. Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the front of the vehicle seat – while they are still sitting all the way back?
3. Does the shoulder belt cross the child's shoulder between their neck and arm?
4. Is the lap part of the belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs and not their stomach?

5. Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If the answer to any of these questions was “no,” then the child still needs to use a booster seat in this vehicle. If the child is using the lap/shoulder belt, check seat belt fit periodically and make sure the seat belt buckle is latched. A child's squirming or slouching can move the belt out of position. If the shoulder belt contacts the face or neck, move the child closer to the center of the vehicle, or use a booster seat to position the seat belt on the child correctly.

#### **WARNING!**

**Never allow a child to put the shoulder belt under an arm or behind their back. In a crash, the shoulder belt will not protect a child properly, which may result in serious injury or death. A child must always wear both the lap and shoulder portions of the seat belt correctly.**

## Recommendations For Attaching Child Restraints

Restraint Type	Combined Weight of the Child + Child Restraint	Use any attachment method shown with an "X" Below			
		LATCH – Lower Anchors Only	Seat Belt Only	LATCH – Lower Anchors + Top Tether Anchor	Seat Belt + Top Tether Anchor
Rear-Facing Child Restraint	Up to 65 lbs (29.5 kg)	X	X		
Rear-Facing Child Restraint	More than 65 lbs (29.5 kg)		X		
Forward-Facing Child Restraint	Up to 65 lbs (29.5 kg)			X	X
Forward-Facing Child Restraint	More than 65 lbs (29.5 kg)				X

## Lower Anchors And Tethers For Children (LATCH) Restraint System

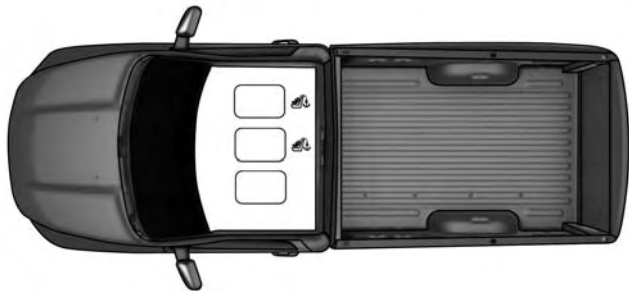


022668173



Your vehicle is equipped with the child restraint anchorage system called LATCH, which stands for Lower

Anchors and Tethers for CHildren. The LATCH system has three vehicle anchor points for installing LATCH-equipped child seats. There are two lower anchorages located at the back of the seat cushion where it meets the seatback and one top tether anchorage located behind the seating position. These anchorages are used to install LATCH-equipped child seats without using the vehicle's seat belts. Some seating positions may have a top tether anchorage but no lower anchorages. In these seating positions, the seat belt must be used with the top tether anchorage to install the child restraint. Please see the following table for more information.

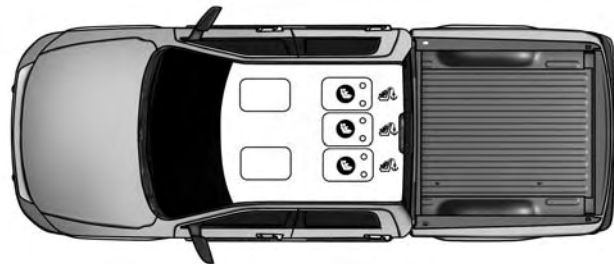
## LATCH Positions For Installing Child Restraints In This Vehicle



### Regular Cab

-  Lower Anchorage Symbol – 2 anchorages per seating position
-  Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

0226003585 •



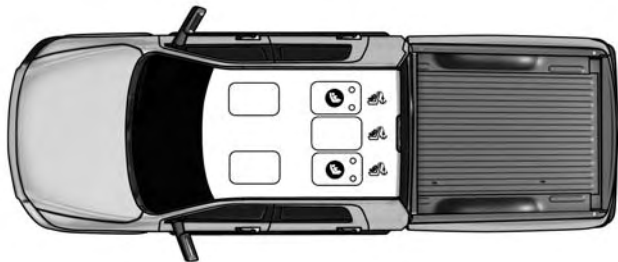
2

0226003588

### Quad Cab®/Crew Cab Split Bench



•  Lower Anchorage Symbol - 2 anchorages per seating position

•  Top Tether Anchorage Symbol



0226003587

### Quad Cab®/Mega Cab®/Crew Cab Full Bench

-  Lower Anchorage Symbol 2 anchorages per seating position
-  Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

<p>What is the weight limit (child's weight + weight of the child restraint) for using the LATCH anchorage system to attach the child restraint?</p>	<p>65 lbs (29.5 kg)</p>	<p>Use the LATCH anchorage system until the combined weight of the child and the child restraint is 65 lbs (29.5 kg). Use the seat belt and tether anchor instead of the LATCH system once the combined weight is more than 65 lbs (29.5 kg).</p>
<p>Can the LATCH anchorages and the seat belt be used together to attach a rear-facing or forward-facing child restraint?</p>	<p>No</p>	<p>Do not use the seat belt when you use the LATCH anchorage system to attach a rear-facing or forward-facing child restraint.</p>
<p>Can a child seat be installed in the center position using the inner LATCH lower anchorages?</p>	<p>No</p>	<p>Full bench rear seat only: Use the seat belt and tether anchor to install a child seat in the center seating position.</p>
<p>Can two child restraints be attached using a common lower</p>	<p>No</p>	<p>Never "share" a LATCH anchorage with two or more child restraints.</p>

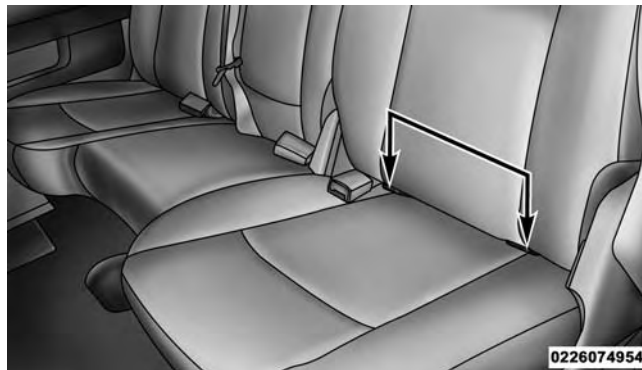
LATCH anchorage?		If the center position does not have dedicated LATCH lower anchorages, use the seat belt to install a child seat in the center position next to a child seat using the LATCH anchorages in an outboard position.
Can the rear-facing child restraint touch the back of the front passenger seat?	Yes	The child seat may touch the back of the front passenger seat if the child restraint manufacturer also allows contact. See your child restraint owner's manual for more information.
Can the head restraints be removed?	Yes	The head restraints can be removed in each seating position.



## Locating LATCH Anchorages



The lower anchorages are round bars that are found at the rear of the seat cushion where it meets the seatback. They are just visible when you lean into the rear seat to install the child restraint. You will easily feel them if you run your finger along the gap between the seatback and seat cushion.



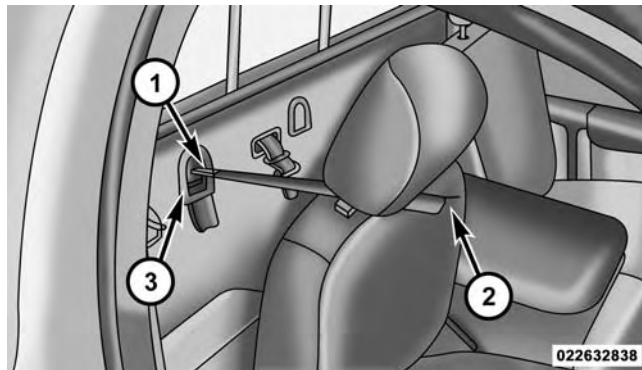
2

Quad Cab®/Mega Cab®/Crew Cab Rear Outboard Seats  
Driver Side

## Locating Tether Anchorages

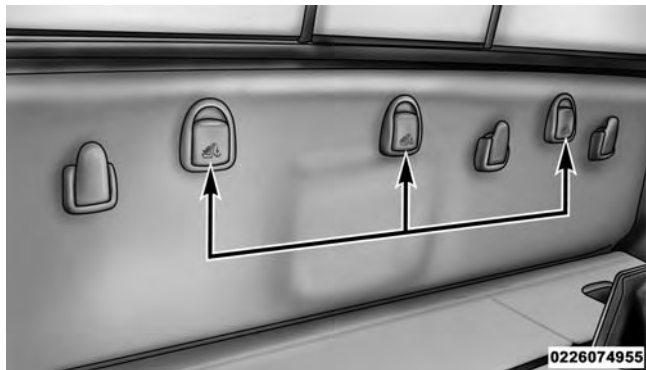


Regular Cab models have tether strap anchorages behind the front center and right seats. Quad Cab, Mega Cab and Crew Cab models have tether strap anchorages located behind each of the rear seats.



**Standard Cab Tether Anchorages**

- 1 — Tether Strap Hook
- 2 — Tether Strap To Child Restraint
- 3 — Tether Anchor



### Mega Cab® Tether Anchorages (Behind Covers)

LATCH-compatible child restraint systems will be equipped with a rigid bar or a flexible strap on each side. Each will have a hook or connector to attach to the lower anchorage and a way to tighten the connection to the anchorage. Forward-facing child restraints and some rear-facing child restraints will also be equipped with a

tether strap. The tether strap will have a hook at the end to attach to the top tether anchorage and a way to tighten the strap after it is attached to the anchorage.

### Center Seat LATCH — Regular Cab/Quad Cab®/Crew Cab Full Bench

#### WARNING!

- Do not install a child restraint in the center position using the LATCH system. This position is not approved for installing child seats using the LATCH attachments. You must use the seat belt and tether anchor to install a child seat in the center seating position.
- Never use the same lower anchorage to attach more than one child restraint. Please refer to “Installing The LATCH-Compatible Child Restraint System” for typical installation instructions.

### Center Seat LATCH — Quad Cab®/Mega Cab®/Crew Cab Split Bench

If a child restraint installed in the center position blocks the seat belt webbing or buckle for the outboard position, do not use that outboard position. If a child seat in the center position blocks the outboard LATCH anchors or seat belt, do not install a child seat in that outboard position.

#### **WARNING!**

**Never use the same lower anchorage to attach more than one child restraint. Please refer to “Installing The LATCH-Compatible Child Restraint System” for typical installation instructions.**

Always follow the directions of the child restraint manufacturer when installing your child restraint. Not all child restraint systems will be installed as described here.

### To Install A LATCH-Compatible Child Restraint

If the selected seating position has a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) seat belt, stow the seat belt, following the instructions below. See the section “Installing Child Restraints Using the Vehicle Seat Belt” to check what type of seat belt each seating position has.

1. Loosen the adjusters on the lower straps and on the tether strap of the child seat so that you can more easily attach the hooks or connectors to the vehicle anchorages.
2. Place the child seat between the lower anchorages for that seating position. For some second row seats, you may need to recline the seat and / or raise the head restraint to get a better fit. If the rear seat can be moved forward and rearward in the vehicle, you may wish to move it to its rear-most position to make room for the child seat. You may also move the front seat forward to allow more room for the child seat.

3. Attach the lower hooks or connectors of the child restraint to the lower anchorages in the selected seating position.
4. If the child restraint has a tether strap, connect it to the top tether anchorage. See the section “Installing Child Restraints Using the Top Tether Anchorage” for directions to attach a tether anchor.
5. Tighten all of the straps as you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the seat. Remove slack in the straps according to the child restraint manufacturer’s instructions.
6. Test that the child restraint is installed tightly by pulling back and forth on the child seat at the belt path. It should not move more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in any direction.

### **How To Stow An Unused ALR Seat Belt:**

When using the LATCH attaching system to install a child restraint, stow all ALR seat belts that are not being used by other occupants or being used to secure child restraints. An unused belt could injure a child if they play with it and accidentally lock the seat belt retractor. Before installing a child restraint using the LATCH system, buckle the seat belt behind the child restraint and out of the child’s reach. If the buckled seat belt interferes with the child restraint installation, instead of buckling it behind the child restraint, route the seat belt through the child restraint belt path and then buckle it. Do not lock the seat belt. Remind all children in the vehicle that the seat belts are not toys and that they should not play with them.

**WARNING!**

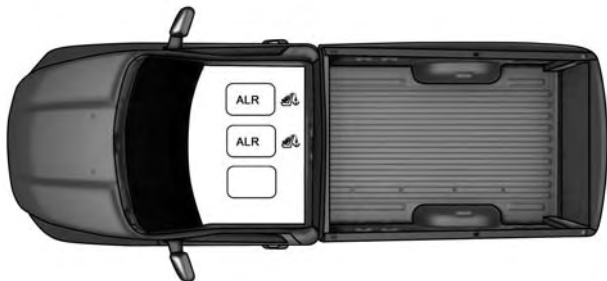
- **Improper installation of a child restraint to the LATCH anchorages can lead to failure of the restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.**
- **Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly-fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.**

**Installing Child Restraints Using The Vehicle Seat Belt**

The seat belts in the passenger seating positions are equipped with either a Switchable Automatic Locking


Retractor (ALR) or a cinching latch plate or both. Both types of seat belts are designed to keep the lap portion of the seat belt tight around the child restraint so that it is not necessary to use a locking clip. The ALR retractor can be "switched" into a locked mode by pulling all of the webbing out of the retractor and then letting the webbing retract back into the retractor. If it is locked, the ALR will make a clicking noise while the webbing is pulled back into the retractor. Refer to the "Automatic Locking Mode" description under "Occupant Restraints" for additional information on ALR. The cinching latch plate is designed to hold the lap portion of the seat belt tight when webbing is pulled tight and straight through a child restraint's belt path.

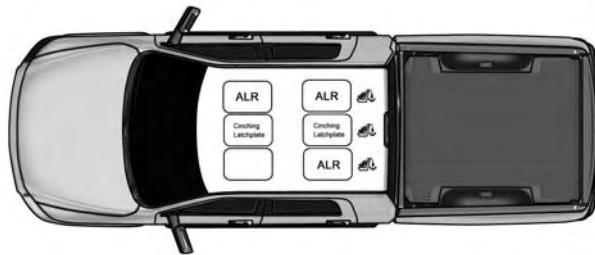
## Lap/Shoulder Belt Systems For Installing Child Restraints In This Vehicle



0226059225


### Regular Cab

- ALR = Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor
- Cinch = Cinching Latch Plate
-  Top Tether Anchorage Symbol



0226061828

### Quad Cab/Mega Cab/Crew Cab

- ALR = Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor
- Cinch = Cinching Latch Plate
-  Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

## Lap/Shoulder Belt Systems

Frequently Asked Questions About Installing Child Restraints With Seat Belts		
What is the weight limit (child's weight + weight of the child restraint) for using the Tether Anchor with the seat belt to attach a forward facing child restraint?	Weight limit of the Child Restraint	Always use the tether anchor when using the seat belt to install a forward facing child restraint, up to the recommended weight limit of the child restraint.
Can the rear-facing child restraint touch the back of the front passenger seat?	Yes	Contact between the front passenger seat and the child restraint is allowed, if the child restraint manufacturer also allows contact.
Can the head restraints be removed?	Yes	The head restraints can be removed in each seating position.
Can the buckle stalk be twisted to tighten the seat belt against the belt path of the child restraint?	Yes	In positions with cinching latch plates (CINCH), the buckle stalk may be twisted up to 3 full turns. Do not twist the buckle stalk in a seating position with an ALR retractor.



**WARNING!**

Always make sure the head restraint is in its upright position when the seat is to be used by an occupant who is not in a child restraint. Sitting in a seat with the head restraint in its lowered position could result in serious injury or death in a collision.

**Installing A Child Restraint With A Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR)**

1. Place the child seat in the center of the seating position. For some second row seats, you may need to recline the seat and/or raise the head restraint to get a better fit. If the rear seat can be moved forward and rearward in the vehicle, you may wish to move it to its rear-most position to make room for the child seat. You may also move the front seat forward to allow more room for the child seat.
2. Pull enough of the seat belt webbing from the retractor to pass it through the belt path of the child restraint. Do not twist the belt webbing in the belt path.
3. Slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click."
4. Pull on the webbing to make the lap portion tight against the child seat.
5. To lock the seat belt, pull down on the shoulder part of the belt until you have pulled all the seat belt webbing out of the retractor. Then, allow the webbing to retract back into the retractor. As the webbing retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This means the seat belt is now in the Automatic Locking mode.
6. Try to pull the webbing out of the retractor. If it is locked, you should not be able to pull out any webbing. If the retractor is not locked, repeat step 5.

7. Finally, pull up on any excess webbing to tighten the lap portion around the child restraint while you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the vehicle seat.
8. If the child restraint has a top tether strap and the seating position has a top tether anchorage, connect the tether strap to the anchorage and tighten the tether strap. See the section “Installing Child Restraints Using the Top Tether Anchorage” for directions to attach a tether anchor.
9. Test that the child restraint is installed tightly by pulling back and forth on the child seat at the belt path. It should not move more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in any direction.

Any seat belt system will loosen with time, so check the belt occasionally, and pull it tight if necessary.

### **Installing A Child Restraint With A Cinching Latch Plate (CINCH) — If Equipped:**

1. Place the child seat in the center of the seating position. For some second row seats, you may need to recline the seat and / or raise the head restraint to get a better fit. If the rear seat can be moved forward and rearward in the vehicle, you may wish to move it to its rear-most position to make room for the child seat. You may also move the front seat forward to allow more room for the child seat.
2. Next, pull enough of the seat belt webbing from the retractor to pass it through the belt path of the child restraint. Do not twist the belt webbing in the belt path.
3. Slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a “click.”

4. Finally, pull up on any excess webbing to tighten the lap portion around the child restraint while you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the vehicle seat.
5. If the child restraint has a top tether strap and the seating position has a top tether anchorage, connect the tether strap to the anchorage and tighten the tether strap. See the section “Installing Child Restraints Using the Top Tether Anchorage” for directions to attach a tether anchor.
6. Test that the child restraint is installed tightly by pulling back and forth on the child seat at the belt path. It should not move more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in any direction.

Any seat belt system will loosen with time, so check the belt occasionally, and pull it tight if necessary.

If the buckle or the cinching latch plate is too close to the belt path opening of the child restraint, you may have trouble tightening the seat belt. If this happens, disconnect the latch plate from the buckle and twist the short buckle-end belt up to three full turns to shorten it. Insert the latch plate into the buckle with the release button facing out, away from the child restraint. Repeat steps 4 to 6, above, to complete the installation of the child restraint.

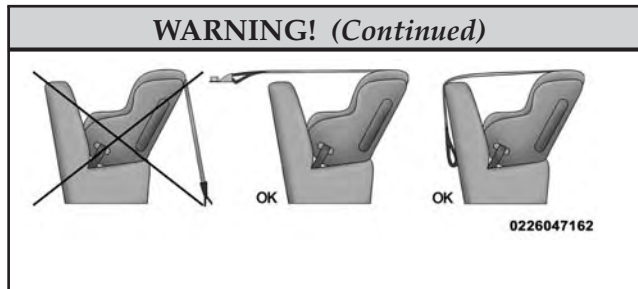
If the belt still cannot be tightened after you shorten the buckle, disconnect the latch plate from the buckle, turn the buckle around one half turn, and insert the latch plate into the buckle again. If you still cannot make the child restraint installation tight, try a different seating position.

## Installing Child Restraints Using The Top Tether Anchorage

### WARNING!

Do not attach a tether strap for a rear-facing car seat to any location in front of the car seat, including the seat frame or a tether anchorage. Only attach the tether strap of a rear-facing car seat to the tether anchorage that is approved for that seating position, located behind the top of the vehicle seat. See the section "Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) Restraint System" for the location of approved tether anchorages in your vehicle.

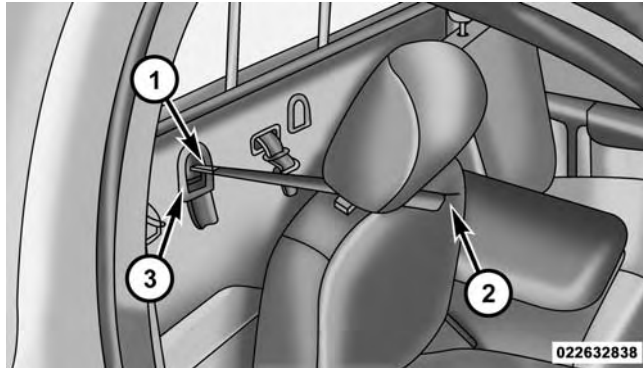
*(Continued)*



Regular and Mega Cab® Trucks:

In the regular cab truck, the top tether anchorages are located behind the center and right passenger seats. In the mega cab truck, the top tether anchorages are located behind each rear seating position. There is a plastic cover over each anchorage. To attach the tether strap of the child restraint:

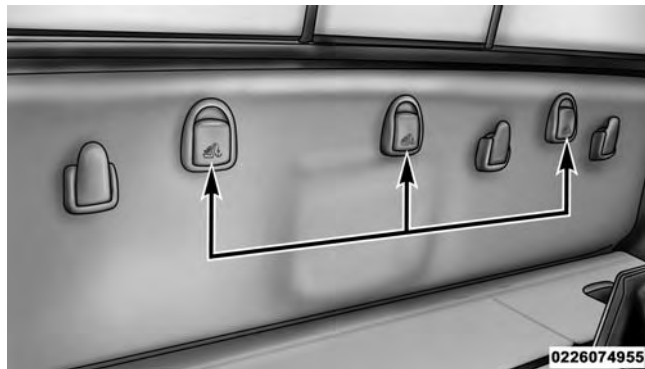
1. Place the child restraint on the seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach over the seat back, under the head restraint and to the tether anchor directly behind the seat.



Regular Cab Tether Anchorages

- 1 — Tether Strap Hook
- 2 — Tether Strap to Child Restraint
- 3 — Tether Anchor

2. Route the tether strap to provide the most direct path between the anchorage and the child seat. The tether strap should go between the head restraint posts underneath the head restraint. You may need to adjust the head restraint to the upward position to pass the tether strap underneath the head restraint and between its posts.
3. Lift the cover (if so equipped), and attach the hook to the square opening in the sheet metal. Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.



Mega Cab® Tether Anchorages

**WARNING!**

Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying Passenger Advanced Front Air Bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12

*(Continued)***WARNING! (Continued)**

years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.

Quad Cab® or Crew Cab Trucks:

The top tether anchorages in this vehicle are tether strap loops located between the rear glass and the back of the rear seat. There is a tether strap loop located behind each seating position. Follow the steps below to attach the tether strap of the child restraint.

Right or Left Outboard Seats:

1. Raise the head restraint and reach between the rear seat and rear glass to access the tether strap loop.



**Head Restraint In Raised Position**

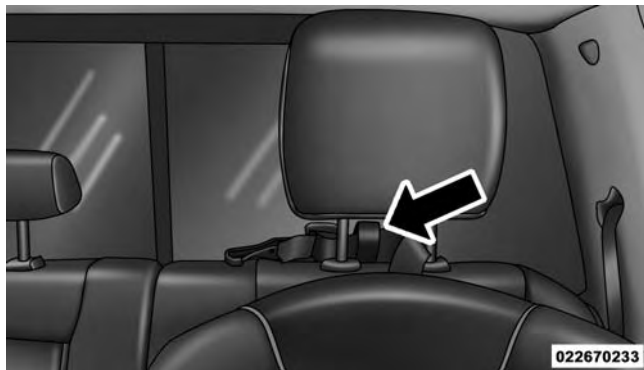


**Tether Strap Loop With Center Head Restraint In Raised Position**

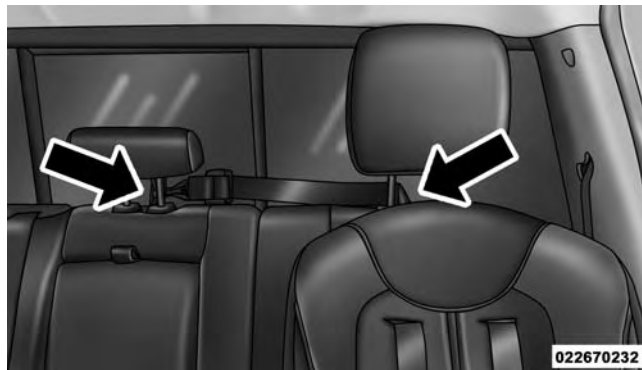
2. Place a child restraint on the seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach over the seat back, under the head restraint, through the tether strap loop behind the seat and over to the tether strap loop behind the center seat.

## 102 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

3. Pass the tether strap hook under the head restraint behind the child seat, though the tether strap loop behind the seat and over to the center tether strap loop.
4. Attach the hook to the center tether strap loop (see diagram). Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.



Tether Strap Through Outboard Tether Strap Loop



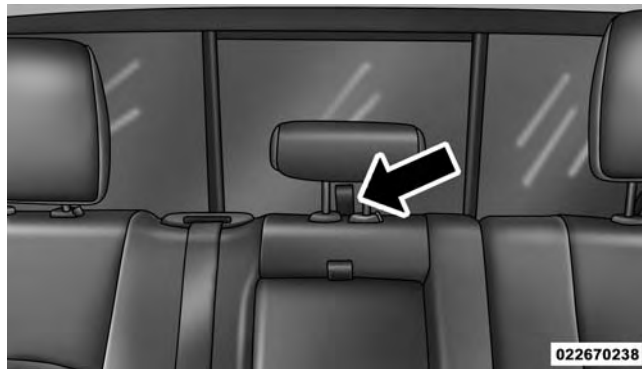
Tether Strap Through Outboard Tether Strap Loop And Attached To Center Tether Strap Loop



**NOTE:** If there are child seats in both of the outboard (left and right) seating positions, the tether strap hooks of both child seats should be connected to the center tether strap loop. This is the correct way to tether two outboard child seats.

Center Seat:

1. Raise the head restraint and reach between the rear seat and rear glass to access the tether strap loop.



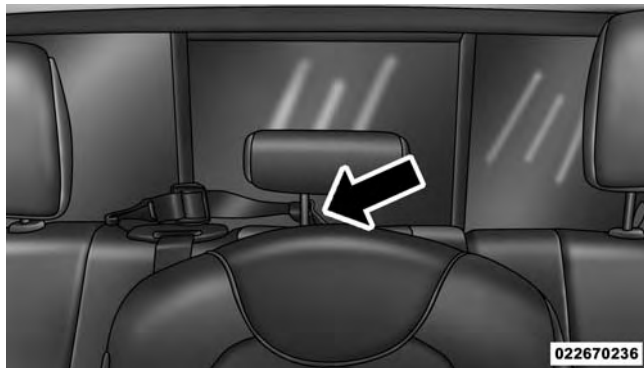
2

#### Tether Strap Loop With Head Restraint In Raised Position

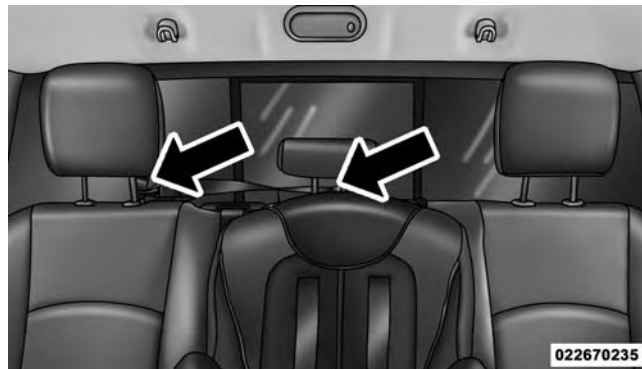
2. Place a child restraint on the seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach over the seat back, under the head restraint, through the tether strap loop behind the seat and over to the tether strap loop behind either the right or left outboard seat.

#### 104 THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

3. Pass the tether strap hook under the head restraint behind the child seat, though the tether strap loop behind the seat and over to the right or left outboard tether strap loop.
4. Attach the hook to the outboard tether strap loop (see diagram). Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.



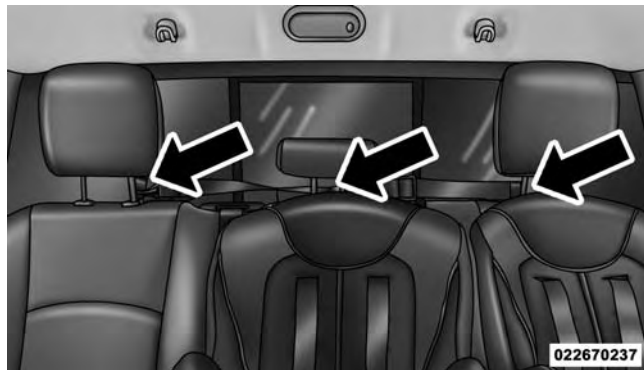
Tether Strap Through Center Tether Strap Loop



Tether Strap Through Center Tether Strap Loop And Attached To Outboard Tether Strap Loop

### Installing Three Child Restraints:

1. Place a child restraint on each outboard rear seat. Route the tether straps following the directions for right and left seating positions, above.
2. Attach both hooks to the center tether strap loop, but do not tighten the straps yet.
3. Place a child restraint on the center rear seat. Route the tether strap following the directions for the center seating position, above.
4. Attach the hook to the outboard tether strap loop.
5. Tighten the tether straps according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions, tightening the right and left tether straps before the center tether strap.



2

Left Outboard And Center Seating Position Shown

#### **WARNING!**

- An incorrectly anchored tether strap could lead to increased head motion and possible injury to the child. Use only the anchorage position directly

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

behind the child seat to secure a child restraint top tether strap.

- If your vehicle is equipped with a split rear seat, make sure the tether strap does not slip into the opening between the seatbacks as you remove slack in the strap.

**Transporting Pets**

Air Bags deploying in the front seat could harm your pet. An unrestrained pet will be thrown about and possibly injured, or injure a passenger during panic braking or in a collision.

Pets should be restrained in the rear seat in pet harnesses or pet carriers that are secured by seat belts.

**ENGINE BREAK-IN RECOMMENDATIONS**

A long break-in period is not required for the engine and drivetrain (transmission and axle) in your vehicle.

Drive moderately during the first 300 miles (500 km). After the initial 60 miles (100 km), speeds up to 50 or 55 mph (80 or 90 km/h) are desirable.

While cruising, brief full-throttle acceleration within the limits of local traffic laws contributes to a good break-in. Wide-open throttle acceleration in low gear can be detrimental and should be avoided.

The engine oil installed in the engine at the factory is a high-quality energy conserving type lubricant. Oil changes should be consistent with anticipated climate conditions under which vehicle operations will occur. For the recommended viscosity and quality grades, refer to "Maintenance Procedures" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle."

**CAUTION!**

**Never use Non-Detergent Oil or Straight Mineral Oil in the engine or damage may result.**

**NOTE:** A new engine may consume some oil during its first few thousand miles (kilometers) of operation. This should be considered a normal part of the break-in and not interpreted as a problem.

**Diesel Engine**

The Cummins® turbocharged diesel engine does not require a break-in period due to its construction. Normal operation is allowed, providing the following recommendations are followed:

- Warm up the engine before placing it under load.
- Do not operate the engine at idle for prolonged periods.

- Use the appropriate transmission gear to prevent engine lugging.
- Observe vehicle oil pressure and temperature indicators.
- Check the coolant and oil levels frequently.
- Vary throttle position at highway speeds when carrying or towing significant weight.

**NOTE:** Light duty operation such as light trailer towing or no load operation will extend the time before the engine is at full efficiency. Reduced fuel economy and power may be seen at this time.

For additional vehicle break-in requirements, refer to “Trailer Towing” in “Starting and Operating” of the Owner’s Manual.

Because of the construction of the Cummins® turbocharged diesel engine, engine run-in is enhanced by

loaded operating conditions which allow the engine parts to achieve final finish and fit during the first 6,000 miles (10 000 km).

## SAFETY TIPS

### Transporting Passengers

NEVER TRANSPORT PASSENGERS IN THE CARGO AREA.

#### WARNING!

- Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.
- It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.

*(Continued)*

#### WARNING! *(Continued)*

- Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.
- Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.

### Exhaust Gas

#### WARNING!

- Exhaust gases can injure or kill. They contain carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Breathing it can make you unconscious and can eventually poison you. To avoid breathing (CO), follow these safety tips:
- Do not run the engine in a closed garage or in confined areas any longer than needed to move your vehicle in or out of the area.

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- If you are required to drive with the trunk/liftgate/rear doors open, make sure that all windows are closed and the climate control BLOWER switch is set at high speed. DO NOT use the recirculation mode.
- If it is necessary to sit in a parked vehicle with the engine running, adjust your heating or cooling controls to force outside air into the vehicle. Set the blower at high speed.

The best protection against carbon monoxide entry into the vehicle body is a properly maintained engine exhaust system.

Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system, when exhaust fumes can be detected inside the vehicle, or when the underside or rear of the vehicle is damaged, have a competent mechanic inspect the complete exhaust system and adjacent body areas for broken,

damaged, deteriorated, or mispositioned parts. Open seams or loose connections could permit exhaust fumes to seep into the passenger compartment. In addition, inspect the exhaust system each time the vehicle is raised for lubrication or oil change. Replace as required.

### Safety Checks You Should Make Inside The Vehicle

#### Seat Belts

Inspect the seat belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, and loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the system.

Front seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision. Rear seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision if they have been damaged (i.e., bent retractor, torn webbing, etc.). If there is any question regarding seat belt or retractor condition, replace the seat belt.

## Air Bag Warning Light



The light should come on and remain on for four to eight seconds as a bulb check when the ignition switch is first turned ON. If the light is not lit during starting, see your authorized dealer. If the light stays on, flickers, or comes on while driving, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

## Defroster

Check operation by selecting the defrost mode and place the blower control on high speed. You should be able to feel the air directed against the windshield. See your authorized dealer for service if your defroster is inoperable.

## Floor Mat Safety Information

Always use floor mats designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle. Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and that are firmly secured so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

### **WARNING!**

**Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.**

- **Always make sure that floor mats are properly attached to the floor mat fasteners.**
- **Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings in the vehicle that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.**

*(Continued)*



**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Never put floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats. Additional floor mats and other coverings will reduce the size of the pedal area and interfere with the pedals.
- Check mounting of mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning.
- Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under the brake pedal and accelerator pedal causing a loss of vehicle control.
- If required, mounting posts must be properly installed, if not equipped from the factory.

Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or mounting can cause interference with the brake pedal and accelerator pedal operation causing loss of control of the vehicle.

**Periodic Safety Checks You Should Make Outside The Vehicle****Tires**

Examine tires for excessive tread wear and uneven wear patterns. Check for stones, nails, glass, or other objects lodged in the tread or sidewall. Inspect the tread for cuts and cracks. Inspect sidewalls for cuts, cracks, and bulges. Check the wheel bolts for tightness. Check the tires (including spare) for proper cold inflation pressure.

**Lights**

Have someone observe the operation of brake lights and exterior lights while you work the controls. Check turn signal and high beam indicator lights on the instrument panel.

**Door Latches**

Check for proper closing, latching, and locking.

### **Fluid Leaks**

Check area under vehicle after overnight parking for fuel, engine coolant, oil, or other fluid leaks. Also, if gasoline fumes are detected or if fuel, power steering fluid (if equipped), or brake fluid leaks are suspected. The cause should be located and corrected immediately.

# UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

## CONTENTS

■ MIRRORS . . . . .	.117	□ “Slide-On-Rod” Features Of Sun Visor — If Equipped . . . . .	.128
□ Inside Day/Night Mirror — If Equipped . . . . .	.117	□ Trailer Towing Mirrors — If Equipped . . . . .	.129
□ Automatic Dimming Mirror — If Equipped . . . . .	.118	■ SEATS . . . . .	.130
□ Automatic Dimming Mirror With Rear View Camera Display — If Equipped . . . . .	.124	□ Driver’s Power Seat — If Equipped . . . . .	.130
□ Outside Mirrors . . . . .	.124	□ Passenger’s Power Seat — If Equipped . . . . .	.133
□ Outside Mirrors Folding Feature . . . . .	.125	□ Power Lumbar — If Equipped . . . . .	.134
□ Power Mirrors — If Equipped . . . . .	.126	□ Heated Seats — If Equipped . . . . .	.134
□ Heated Mirrors — If Equipped . . . . .	.127	□ Ventilated Seats — If Equipped . . . . .	.137
□ Illuminated Vanity Mirror — If Equipped . . . . .	.128	□ Manual Seat Adjuster — If Equipped . . . . .	.138

## 114 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

- 40-20-40 Front Bench Seat — If Equipped . . . .139
- Head Restraints . . . . .140
- DRIVER MEMORY SEAT — IF EQUIPPED . . . .144
  - Programming The Memory Feature . . . . .144
  - Linking And Unlinking The Remote Keyless Entry Transmitter To Memory . . . . .145
  - Memory Position Recall . . . . .146
  - Easy Entry/Exit Seat . . . . .147
- TO OPEN AND CLOSE THE HOOD . . . . .148
- LIGHTS . . . . .150
  - Headlights . . . . .151
  - Automatic Headlights — If Equipped . . . . .151
  - Headlights On With Wipers (Available With Automatic Headlights Only). . . . .152
  - Daytime Running Lights (DRL) — If Equipped . . . . .153
  - Headlight Delay . . . . .153
  - Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control — If Equipped . . . . .154
  - Parking Lights And Panel Lights. . . . .156
  - Fog Lights — If Equipped . . . . .156
  - Lights-On Reminder . . . . .157
  - Battery Saver. . . . .157
  - Interior Lights . . . . .157
  - Cargo Light . . . . .160
  - Multifunction Lever . . . . .161
  - Turn Signals . . . . .161
  - Lane Change Assist . . . . .162

	<b>UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE</b>	<b>115</b>
□ Flash-To-Pass . . . . .	■ ELECTRONIC SPEED CONTROL . . . . .	162
□ High/Low Beam Switch . . . . .	□ To Activate . . . . .	162
■ WINDSHIELD WIPERS AND WASHERS . . . . .	□ To Set A Desired Speed . . . . .	162
□ Windshield Wipers . . . . .	□ To Deactivate . . . . .	162
□ Windshield Wiper Operation . . . . .	□ To Resume Speed . . . . .	163
□ Intermittent Wiper System . . . . .	□ To Vary The Speed Setting . . . . .	163
□ Windshield Washers . . . . .	□ To Accelerate For Passing . . . . .	163
□ Mist Feature . . . . .	■ OVERHEAD CONSOLE — IF EQUIPPED . . . . .	164
□ Rain Sensing Wipers — If Equipped . . . . .	□ Courtesy/Reading Lights . . . . .	165
■ TILT STEERING COLUMN . . . . .	■ ELECTRICAL POWER OUTLETS . . . . .	166
■ DRIVER ADJUSTABLE PEDALS — IF EQUIPPED . . . . .	■ AUXILIARY SWITCHES — IF EQUIPPED . . . . .	167
■ HEATED STEERING WHEEL — IF EQUIPPED . . . . .	■ CIGAR LIGHTER AND ASH RECEIVER — IF EQUIPPED . . . . .	169
		170
		171
		172
		172
		172
		172
		174
		175
		175
		177
		182
		182

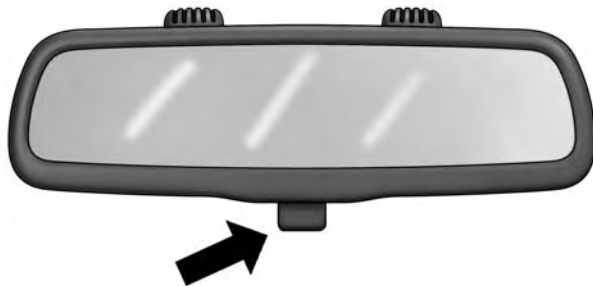
- POWER INVERTER — IF EQUIPPED . . . . .183
- CUPHOLDERS . . . . .184
  - Front Seat Cupholders (40–20–40 Seats) . . . . .184
  - Front Instrument Panel Cupholders — Floor Storage Bin . . . . .185
  - Rear Cupholders — If Equipped . . . . .185
- STORAGE . . . . .186
  - Glove Compartment . . . . .186
  - Door Storage . . . . .188
  - Center Storage Compartment — If Equipped . .189
  - Seatback Storage . . . . .191
  - Storage (Regular Cab) . . . . .192
  - Storage and Seats (Crew Cab) . . . . .192
  - Plastic Grocery Bag Retainers (Regular Cab Models) . . . . .193
- REAR WINDOW FEATURES . . . . .194
  - Rear Window Defroster . . . . .194
  - Power Sliding Rear Window — If Equipped . .195
  - Manual Sliding Rear Window — If Equipped .195

## MIRRORS

### Inside Day/Night Mirror — If Equipped

A single ball joint mirror is provided in the vehicle. It is a twist on mirror that has a fixed position at the windshield. The mirror installs on the windshield button with a counterclockwise rotation and requires no tools for mounting. The mirror head can be adjusted up, down, left, and right for various drivers. The mirror should be adjusted to center on the view through the rear window.

Headlight glare from vehicles behind you can be reduced by moving the small control under the mirror to the night position (toward the rear of the vehicle). The mirror should be adjusted while the small control under the mirror is set in the day position (toward the windshield).



3

0304049206

Adjusting Rearview Mirror

### Automatic Dimming Mirror — If Equipped

A single ball joint mirror is provided in the vehicle. It is a twist on mirror that has a fixed position at the windshield. The mirror installs on the windshield with a counterclockwise rotation and requires no tools for mounting. The mirror head can be adjusted up, down, left, and right for various drivers. The mirror should be adjusted to center on the view through the rear window.

This mirror automatically adjusts for headlight glare from vehicles behind you.

**NOTE:** The Automatic Dimming Mirror feature is disabled when the vehicle is in reverse gear to improve rear view viewing.

The Automatic Dimming Mirror feature can be turned On or Off through the touchscreen.

- Push the Mirror Dimmer button once to turn the feature On.

- Push the Mirror Dimmer button a second time to turn the feature Off.



0304049205

#### Automatic Dimming Mirror

If equipped, the rearview mirror contains an ASSIST and a 9-1-1 button.



**NOTE:** The ASSIST and 9-1-1 features operate through the Uconnect® Access service. These buttons will only operate as long as your Uconnect® Access service is active. Refer to your “Uconnect® System supplement manual” for further information.

### ASSIST Call

The ASSIST Button is used to automatically connect you to any one of the following support centers:

- Roadside Assistance – If you get a flat tire, or need a tow, just push the Assist button and you’ll be connected to someone who can help. Roadside Assistance will know what vehicle you’re driving and its location. Additional fees may apply for roadside Assistance.
- Uconnect® Access Customer Care – In-vehicle support for Uconnect® Access and Uconnect® Access Via Mobile features.

- Vehicle Customer Care – Total support for all other vehicle issues.

### 9-1-1 Call

1. Push the 9-1-1 Call button on the Rearview Mirror.

**NOTE:** In case the 9-1-1 Call button is pushed in error, there will be a 10 second delay before the 9-1-1 Call system initiates a call to a 9-1-1 operator. To cancel the 9-1-1 Call connection, push the 9-1-1 Call button on the Rearview Mirror or press the cancellation button on the Phone Screen. Termination of the 9-1-1 Call will turn off the green LED light on the Rearview Mirror.

2. The LED light located between the Assist and 9-1-1 buttons on the Rearview Mirror will turn green once a connection to a 9-1-1 operator has been made.

3. Once a connection between the vehicle and a 9-1-1 operator is made, the 9-1-1 Call system may transmit the following important vehicle information to a 9-1-1 operator:
  - Indication that the occupant placed a 9-1-1 Call.
  - The vehicle brand.
  - The last known GPS coordinates of the vehicle.
4. You should be able to speak with the 9-1-1 operator through the vehicle audio system to determine if additional help is needed.

**NOTE:** Once a connection is made between the vehicle's 9-1-1 Call system and the 9-1-1 operator, the 9-1-1 operator may be able to open a voice connection with the vehicle to determine if additional help is needed. Once the 9-1-1 operator opens a voice connection with the vehicle's 9-1-1 Call system, the operator should be able to speak with you or other vehicle occupants and hear sounds occurring in the vehicle. The vehicle's 9-1-1 Call system will attempt to remain connected with the 9-1-1 operator until the 9-1-1 operator terminates the connection.

5. The 9-1-1 operator may attempt to contact appropriate emergency responders and provide them with important vehicle information and GPS coordinates.

**WARNING!**

- If anyone in the vehicle could be in danger (e.g., fire or smoke is visible, dangerous road conditions or location), do not wait for voice contact from a 9-1-1 operator. All occupants should exit the vehicle immediately and move to a safe location.
- The 9-1-1 Call system is embedded into the vehicle's electrical system. Do not add aftermarket electrical equipment to the vehicle's electrical system. This may prevent your vehicle from sending a signal to initiate an emergency call. To avoid interference that can cause the 9-1-1 Call system to fail, never add aftermarket equipment (e.g., two-way mobile radio, CB radio, data recorder, etc.) to your vehicle's electrical system or modify the antennas

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- on your vehicle. **IF YOUR VEHICLE LOSES BATTERY POWER FOR ANY REASON (INCLUDING DURING OR AFTER AN ACCIDENT), THE UCONNECT FEATURES, APPS AND SERVICES, AMONG OTHERS, WILL NOT OPERATE.**
- Modifications to any part of the 9-1-1 Call system could cause the air bag system to fail when you need it. You could be injured if the air bag system is not there to help protect you.

**9-1-1 Call System Limitations**

Vehicles sold in Canada and Mexico **DO NOT** have 9-1-1 Call system capabilities.

9-1-1 or other emergency line operators in Canada and Mexico may not answer or respond to 9-1-1 system calls.

If the 9-1-1 Call system detects a malfunction, any of the following may occur at the time the malfunction is detected, and at the beginning of each ignition cycle:

- The Rearview Mirror light located between the Assist and 9-1-1 buttons will continuously be illuminated red.
- The Phone Screen will display the following message “Vehicle phone requires service. Please contact your dealer.”
- An In-Vehicle Audio message will state “Vehicle phone requires service. Please contact your dealer.”

### **WARNING!**

- **Ignoring the Rearview Mirror light could mean you will not have 9-1-1 Call services. If the Rearview Mirror light is illuminated, have an authorized dealer service the 9-1-1 Call system immediately.**

*(Continued)*

### **WARNING! (Continued)**

- **The Occupant Restraint Control module turns on the Air Bag Warning Light on the instrument panel if a malfunction in any part of the system is detected. If the Air Bag Warning Light is illuminated, the air bag system may not be working properly and the 9-1-1 system may not be able to send a signal to a 9-1-1 operator. If the Air Bag Warning Light is illuminated, have an authorized dealer service the ORC system immediately.**

Even if the 9-1-1 Call system is fully functional, factors beyond FCA US LLC’s control may prevent or stop the 9-1-1 Call system operation. These include, but are not limited to, the following factors:

- Delayed accessories mode is active.
- The ignition is in the OFF position.

- The vehicle's electrical systems are not intact.
- The 9-1-1 Call system software and/or hardware are damaged during a crash.
- The vehicle battery loses power or becomes disconnected during a vehicle crash.
- Wireless and/or Global Positioning Satellite signals are unavailable or obstructed.
- Equipment malfunction at the 9-1-1 operator facility.
- Operator error by the 9-1-1 operator.
- Wireless network congestion.
- Weather.
- Buildings, structures, geographic terrain, or tunnels.

**NOTE:** Never place anything on or near the vehicle's wireless and GPS antennas. You could prevent wireless and GPS signal reception, which can prevent your vehicle from placing an emergency call. Wireless and GPS signal reception is required for the 9-1-1 Call system to function properly.

### General Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**NOTE:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**CAUTION!**

To avoid damage to the mirror during cleaning, never spray any cleaning solution directly onto the mirror. Apply the solution onto a clean cloth and wipe the mirror clean.

**Automatic Dimming Mirror With Rear View Camera Display — If Equipped**

A single ball joint mirror is provided in the vehicle. It is a twist on mirror that has a fixed position at the windshield. The mirror installs on the windshield button with a counterclockwise rotation and requires no tools for mounting. The mirror head can be adjusted up, down, left, and right for various drivers. The mirror should be adjusted to center on the view through the rear window.

This mirror automatically adjusts for headlight glare from vehicles behind you.

When the vehicle is placed into reverse gear a video display illuminates to display the image generated by the rear view camera. The auto dimming feature is also disabled to improve rear view viewing.

**Outside Mirrors**

To receive maximum benefit, adjust the outside mirrors to center on the adjacent lane of traffic with a slight overlap of the view obtained on the inside mirror.

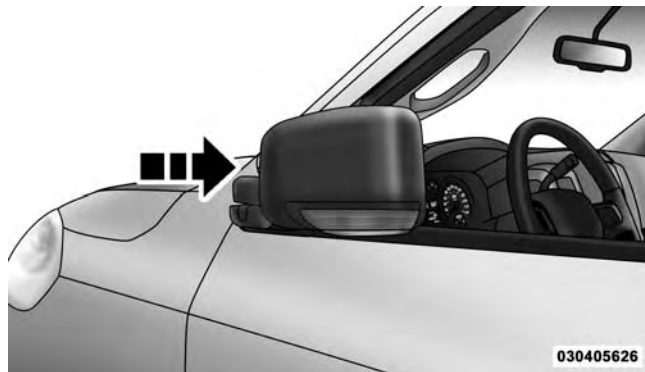
**NOTE:** If your vehicle is equipped with illuminated approach lights under the outside mirrors they can be turned off through the instrument cluster or the Uconnect® radio. For further information refer to “EVIC” or “DID” and “Uconnect® Settings” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel”.

**WARNING!**

Vehicles and other objects seen in the passenger side convex mirror will look smaller and farther away than they really are. Relying too much on your passenger side convex mirror could cause you to collide with another vehicle or other object. Use your inside mirror when judging the size or distance of a vehicle seen in the passenger side convex mirror. Some vehicles will not have a convex passenger side mirror.

**Outside Mirrors Folding Feature**

All outside mirrors are designed to be able to be manually folded both forward and rearward to prevent damage.



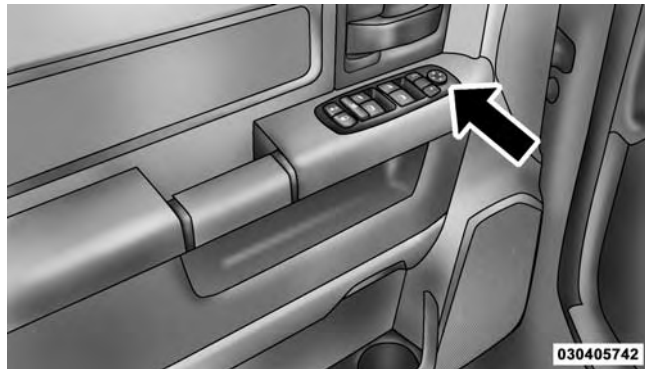
Folding Mirror

**CAUTION!**

It is recommended to fold the mirrors into the full rearward position to resist damage when entering a car wash or a narrow location.

## Power Mirrors — If Equipped

The controls for the power mirrors are located on the driver's door trim panel.



**Power Mirror Controls Location**

The power mirror controls consist of mirror select buttons and a four-way mirror control switch.



**Power Mirror Controls**

- 1 — Mirror Select Buttons
- 2 — Four-Way Mirror Control Switch



To adjust a mirror, push either the L (left) or R (right) button to select the mirror that you want to adjust.

Using the mirror control switch, push on any of the four arrows for the direction that you want the mirror to move.



Power Mirror Movement

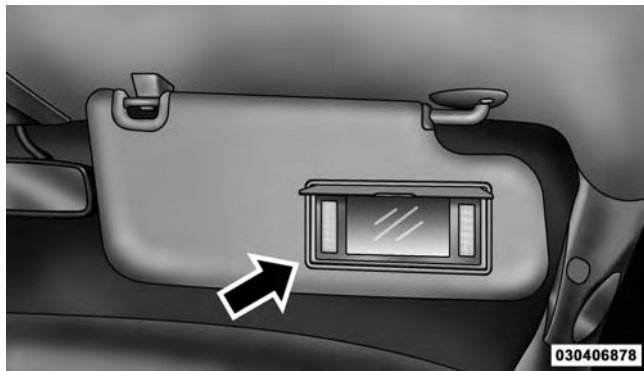
### Heated Mirrors — If Equipped



These mirrors are heated to melt frost or ice. This feature can be activated whenever you turn on the rear window defroster (if equipped). Refer to “Rear Window Features” in “Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle” for further information.

### Illuminated Vanity Mirror — If Equipped

Illuminated vanity mirrors are located on each sun visor. To use the mirror, rotate the sun visor down and swing the mirror cover upward. The lights will turn on automatically. Closing the mirror cover turns off the light.

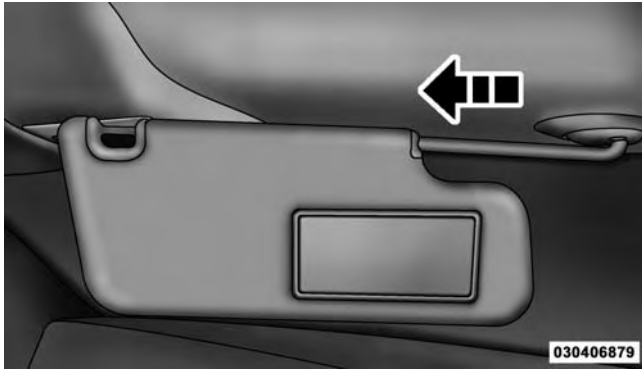


Illuminated Vanity Mirror

### “Slide-On-Rod” Features Of Sun Visor — If Equipped

The sun visor “Slide-On-Rod” feature allows for additional flexibility in positioning the visor to block out the sun.

To use the “Slide-On-Rod” feature, rotate the sun visor downward and unclip it. Pull the sun visor along the “Slide-On-Rod” until the sun visor is in the desired position.



*“Slide-On-Rod” Extender*

**Trailer Towing Mirrors — If Equipped**

These mirrors are designed with an adjustable mirror head to provide a greater vision range when towing extra-wide loads. To change position inboard or outboard, the mirror head should be rotated (flipped in or out).



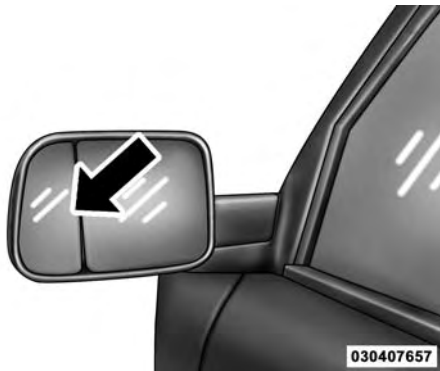
3

**Trailer Towing Position**

**NOTE:** Fold the trailer towing mirrors rearward prior to entering an automated car wash.

## 130 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

A small blindspot mirror is located next to main mirror and can be adjusted separately.



Blindspot Mirror

### SEATS

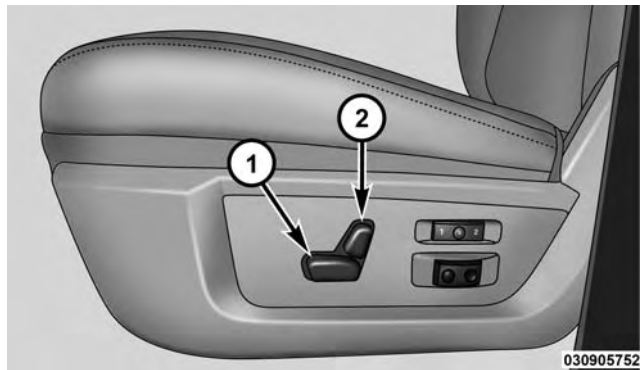
Seats are a part of the Occupant Restraint System of the vehicle.

### WARNING!

- It is dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.
- Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.
- Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.

### Driver's Power Seat — If Equipped

Some models may be equipped with an eight-way power driver's seat. The power seat switches are located on the outboard side of the driver's seat cushion. There are two power seat switches that are used to control the movement of the seat cushion and the seatback.



Power Seat Switches

- 1 — Power Seat Switch  
2 — Power Seatback Switch

### Adjusting The Seat Forward Or Rearward

The seat can be adjusted both forward and rearward. Push the seat switch forward or rearward. The seat will move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when the desired position has been reached.

### Adjusting The Seat Up Or Down

The height of the seats can be adjusted up or down. Pull upward or push downward on the seat switch. The seat will move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when the desired position is reached.

### Reclining The Seatback

The angle of the seatback can be adjusted forward or rearward. Push the seatback switch forward or rearward, the seat will move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when the desired position is reached.

**WARNING!**

- **Adjusting a seat while driving may be dangerous. Moving a seat while driving could result in loss of control which could cause a collision and serious injury or death.**
- **Seats should be adjusted before fastening the seat belts and while the vehicle is parked. Serious injury or death could result from a poorly adjusted seat belt.**
- **Do not ride with the seatback reclined so that the shoulder belt is no longer resting against your chest. In a collision you could slide under the seat belt, which could result in serious injury or death.**

**CAUTION!**

**Do not place any article under a power seat or impede its ability to move as it may cause damage to the seat controls. Seat travel may become limited if movement is stopped by an obstruction in the seat's path.**

**Tilting The Seat Up Or Down**

The angle of the seat cushion can be adjusted in four directions. Pull upward or push downward on the front or rear of the seat switch, the front or rear of the seat cushion will move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when the desired position is reached.

### **Passenger's Power Seat — If Equipped**

Some models are equipped with a six-way power passenger seat. The power seat switch is located on the outboard side of the seat. The switch is used to control the movement of the seat and seat cushion.

#### **Adjusting The Seat Forward Or Rearward**

The seat can be adjusted both forward and rearward. Push the seat switch forward or rearward. The seat will move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when the desired position has been reached.

#### **Adjusting The Seat Up Or Down**

The height of the seats can be adjusted up or down. Pull upward or push downward on the seat switch. The seat

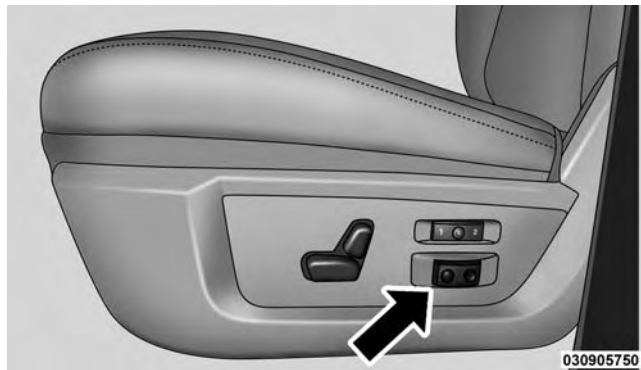
will move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when the desired position is reached.

#### **Tilting The Seat Up Or Down**

The angle of the seat cushion can be adjusted up or down. Pull upward or push downward on the front of the seat switch, the front of the seat cushion will move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when you have reached the desired position.

### Power Lumbar — If Equipped

Vehicles equipped with power driver or passenger seats may be also be equipped with power lumbar. The power lumbar switch is located on the outboard side of the power seat. Push the switch forward to increase the lumbar support. Push the switch rearward to decrease the lumbar support.



Lumbar Control Switch

### Heated Seats — If Equipped

On some models, the front and rear seats may be equipped with heaters located in the seat cushions and seat backs.






**WARNING!**

- Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical condition must exercise care when using the seat heater. It may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time.
- Do not place anything on the seat or seatback that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. Sitting in a seat that has been overheated could cause serious burns due to the increased surface temperature of the seat.

**Front Heated Seats**

The front heated seats control buttons are located within the climate or controls screen of the touchscreen.

- Press the heated seat button  once to turn the High setting On.
- Press the heated seat button  a second time to turn the Low setting On.
- Press the heated seat button  a third time to turn the heating elements Off.

If the HI-level setting is selected, the system will automatically switch to LO-level after approximately 60 minutes of continuous operation. At that time, the display will change from HI to LO, indicating the change. The LO-level setting will turn OFF automatically after approximately 45 minutes.

**NOTE:** The engine must be running for the heated seats to operate.

### Vehicles Equipped With Remote Start

On models that are equipped with remote start, the heated seats can be programmed to come on during a remote start.

If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Uconnect® system. Refer to “Uconnect® Settings” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

### Rear Heated Seats

On some models, the two outboard seats are equipped with heated seats. The heated seat switches for these seats are located on the rear of the center console.

There are two heated seat switches that allow the rear passengers to operate the seats independently. You can choose from HI, LO or OFF heat settings. Amber indicator lights in each switch indicate the level of heat in use. Two indicator lights will illuminate for HI, one for LO and none for OFF.



Push the switch once to select HI-level heating. Push the switch a second time to select LO-level heating. Push the switch a third time to shut the heating elements OFF.

#### NOTE:




- Once a heat setting is selected, heat will be felt within two to five minutes.
- The engine must be running for the heated seats to operate.

When the HI-level setting is selected, the heater will provide a boosted heat level during the first four minutes of operation. Then, the heat output will drop to the normal HI-level. If the HI-level setting is selected, the system will automatically switch to LO-level after approximately 60 minutes of continuous operation. At that time, the number of illuminated LEDs changes from two to one, indicating the change. The LO-level setting will turn OFF automatically after approximately 45 minutes.

### Ventilated Seats — If Equipped

Located in the seat cushion are small fans that draw the air from the passenger compartment and pull air through fine perforations in the seat cover to help keep the driver and front passenger cooler in higher ambient temperatures. The fans operate at two speeds, HIGH and LOW.

The front ventilated seats control buttons are located within the climate or controls screen of the touchscreen.

- Press the ventilated seat button  once to choose HIGH.
- Press the ventilated seat button  a second time to choose LOW.
- Press the ventilated seat button  a third time to turn the ventilated seat OFF.

**NOTE:** The engine must be running for the ventilated seats to operate.

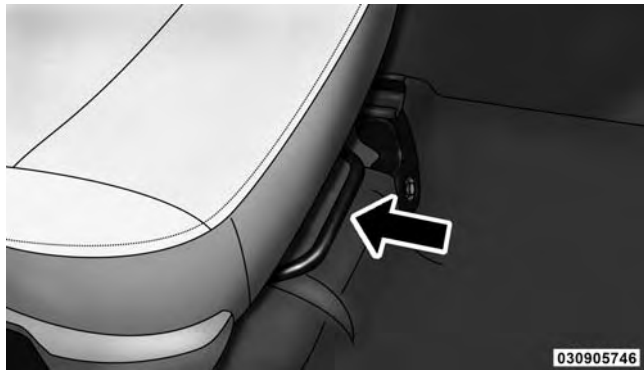
### Vehicles Equipped With Remote Start

On models that are equipped with remote start, the ventilated seats can be programmed to come on during a remote start.

If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Uconnect® system. Refer to “Uconnect® Settings” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

### Manual Seat Adjuster — If Equipped

Both front seats are adjustable forward or rearward. The manual seat adjustment handle is located under the seat cushion at the front edge of each seat.



Manual Seat Adjuster

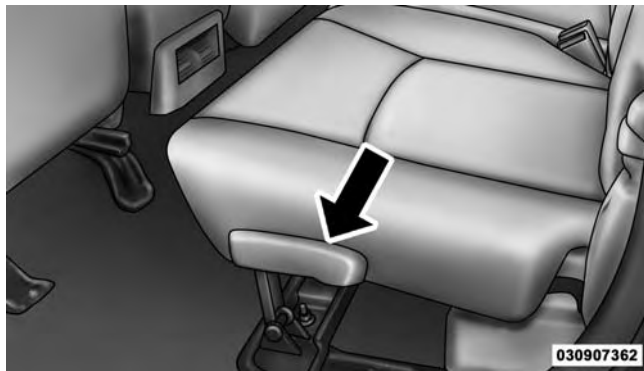
While sitting in the seat, pull up on the handle and slide the seat forward or backward. Release the bar once you have reached the desired position. Then, using body pressure, move forward and rearward on the seat to be sure that the seat adjusters have latched.

#### WARNING!

- Adjusting a seat while driving may be dangerous. Moving a seat while driving could result in loss of control which could cause a collision and serious injury or death.
- Seats should be adjusted before fastening the seat belts and while the vehicle is parked. Serious injury or death could result from a poorly adjusted seat belt.

## Reclining Rear Seats — If Equipped

The recliner handle is located on the outside of the seat cushion. To adjust the seatback, lift upward on the handle, lean back on the seatback and when you reach the desired position, release the handle.



Rear Seat Recliner Handle

### WARNING!

**Do not ride with the seatback reclined so that the shoulder belt is no longer resting against your chest. In a collision you could slide under the seat belt, which could result in serious injury or death.**

3

## 40-20-40 Front Bench Seat — If Equipped

The seat is divided into three segments. The outboard seat portions are each 40% of the total width of the seat. On some models the back of the center portion (20%) easily folds down to provide an armrest/center storage compartment.

## Head Restraints

Head restraints are designed to reduce the risk of injury by restricting head movement in the event of a rear impact. Head restraints should be adjusted so that the top of the head restraint is located above the top of your ear.

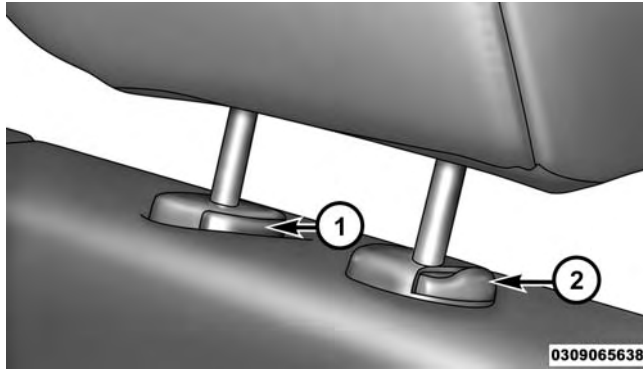
### **WARNING!**

**The head restraints for all occupants must be properly installed and adjusted prior to operating the vehicle or occupying a seat. Head restraints should never be adjusted while the vehicle is in motion. Driving a vehicle with the head restraints improperly adjusted or removed could cause serious injury or death in the event of a collision.**

## Front Head Restraints

To raise the head restraint pull upward on the head restraint. To lower the head restraint, push the adjustment button located on the base of the head restraint and push downward on the head restraint.

To remove the head restraint, raise it up as far as it can go then push the adjustment button and the release button at the base of each post while pulling the head restraint up. To reinstall the head restraint, put the head restraint posts into the holes then adjust it to the appropriate height.



Adjustment Buttons

- 1 — Release Button  
2 — Adjustment Button

### WARNING!

- A loose head restraint thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could cause serious injury or death to occupants of the vehicle. Always securely stow removed head restraints in a location outside the occupant compartment.
- ALL the head restraints **MUST** be reinstalled in the vehicle to properly protect the occupants. Follow the re-installation instructions above prior to operating the vehicle or occupying a seat.

**NOTE:** Do not reposition the head restraint 180 degrees to the incorrect position in an attempt to gain additional clearance to the back of the head.

## Rear Head Restraints

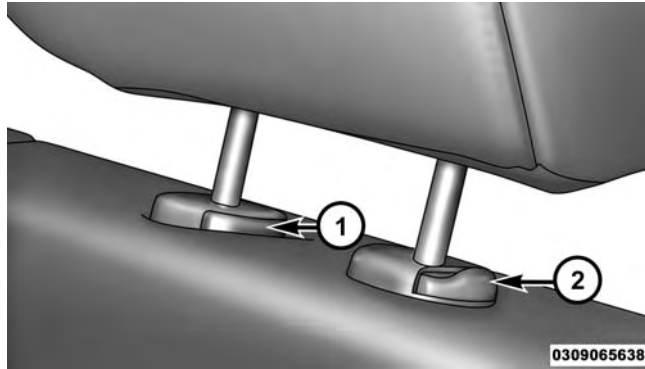
The rear seats are equipped with adjustable and removable head restraints. To raise the head restraint, pull upward on the head restraint. To lower the head restraint, push the adjustment button located on the base of the head restraint and push downward on the head restraint. To remove the head restraint, push the adjustment button and the release button while pulling upward on the whole assembly. To reinstall the head restraint, put the head restraint posts into the holes and adjust it to the appropriate height.

**NOTE:** To remove outboard restraints, the rear seat bottom must be folded up.

### WARNING!

**A loose head restraint thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could cause serious injury or death to occupants of the vehicle. Always securely stow removed head restraints in a location outside the occupant compartment.**





Release/Adjustment Buttons

- 1 — Release Button  
2 — Adjustment Button

**NOTE:**

- The rear center head restraint (Crew Cab and Quad Cab) has only one adjustment position that is used to aid in the routing of a tether. Refer to “Occupant Restraints” in “Things to Know Before Starting Your Vehicle” for further information.
- Do not reposition the head restraint 180 degrees to the incorrect position in an attempt to gain additional clearance to the back of the head.

**WARNING!**

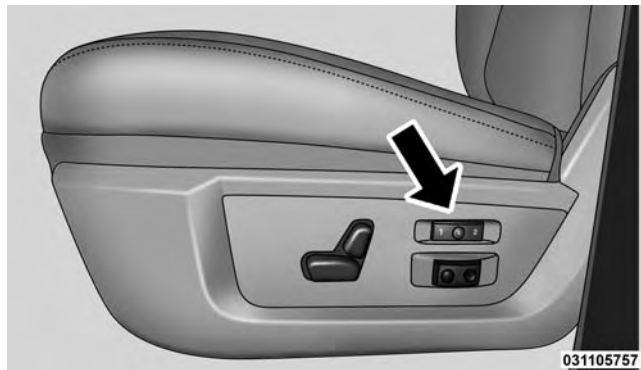
**ALL the head restraints MUST be reinstalled in the vehicle to properly protect the occupants. Follow the re-installation instructions above prior to operating the vehicle or occupying a seat.**

## DRIVER MEMORY SEAT — IF EQUIPPED

This feature allows the driver to store up to two different memory profiles for easy recall through a memory switch. Each memory profile contains desired position settings for the driver seat, side mirrors, adjustable pedals (if equipped) and a set of desired radio station presets. Your Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter can also be programmed to recall the same positions when the UNLOCK button is pushed.

**NOTE:** Your vehicle is equipped with two RKE transmitters, one RKE transmitter can be linked to memory position 1 and the other transmitter can be linked to memory position 2.

The memory seat buttons are located on the outboard side of the drivers seat cushion.



Memory Seat Buttons

### Programming The Memory Feature

**NOTE:** To create a new memory profile, perform the following:

1. Cycle the vehicles ignition to the ON/RUN position (do not start the engine).

2. Adjust all memory profile settings to desired preferences (seat, side mirrors, adjustable pedals and radio station presets).
3. Push and release the S (Set) button on the memory switch.
4. Within five seconds, push and release either of the memory buttons (1) or (2). The Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID) will display which memory position has been set.

**NOTE:**

- Memory profiles can be set without the vehicle in PARK, but the vehicle must be in PARK to recall a memory profile.
- To set a memory profile to your RKE transmitter, refer to “Linking And Unlinking The Remote Keyless Entry Transmitter To Memory” in this section.

**Linking And Unlinking The Remote Keyless Entry Transmitter To Memory**

Your RKE transmitters can be programmed to recall one of two pre-programmed memory profiles by pushing the UNLOCK button on the RKE transmitter.

**NOTE:** Before programming your RKE transmitters to memory the feature has to be selected.

- If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, you must select the “Memory To FOB” feature through the Uconnect® system. Refer to “Uconnect® Settings ” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.
- If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen, you must select the “Key Fob Linked To Memory” feature through the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to “Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)” or

“Driver Information Display (DID)” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

To program your RKE transmitters, perform the following:

1. Cycle the vehicles ignition to the Off position.
2. Select desired memory profile (1) or (2).

**NOTE:** If a memory profile has not already been set, refer to “Programming The Memory Feature” for instructions on how to set a memory profile.

3. Once the profile has been recalled, push and release the SET (S) button on the memory switch, then push and release button (1) or (2) accordingly. “Memory Profile Set” (1 or 2) will display in the instrument cluster on vehicles equipped with the EVIC/DID.
4. Push and release the LOCK button on the RKE transmitter within 10 seconds.

**NOTE:** Your RKE transmitters can be unlinked to your memory settings by pushing the SET (S) button, and within 10 seconds, followed by pushing the UNLOCK button on the RKE transmitter.

### Memory Position Recall

**NOTE:** For vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission, the vehicle must be in PARK to recall memory positions. If a recall is attempted when the vehicle is not in PARK, a message will be displayed in the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID).

For vehicles equipped with a manual transmission, the vehicle speed must be at 0 mph (0 km/h) to recall memory positions. If a recall is attempted with the vehicle speed above 0 mph (0 km/h), a message will display in the EVIC/DID.

### *Driver One Memory Position Recall*

- To recall the memory settings for driver one using the memory switch, push MEMORY button number 1 on the memory switch.
- To recall the memory settings for driver one using the RKE transmitter, push the UNLOCK button on the RKE transmitter linked to memory position 1.

### *Driver Two Memory Position Recall*

- To recall the memory setting for driver two using the memory switch, push MEMORY button number 2 on the memory switch.
- To recall the memory settings for driver two using the RKE transmitter, push the UNLOCK button on the RKE transmitter linked to memory position 2.

A recall can be cancelled by pushing any of the MEMORY buttons during a recall (S, 1, or 2). When a recall is cancelled, the driver's seat, and the power pedals (if equipped) stop moving. A delay of one second will occur before another recall can be selected.

### **Easy Entry/Exit Seat**

This feature provides automatic driver seat positioning to enhance driver mobility when entering and exiting the vehicle.

The distance the driver seat moves depends on where you have the driver seat positioned when you remove the Key Fob from the ignition (or change the ignition to OFF, for vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go™).

- When you remove the Key Fob from the ignition (or change the ignition to OFF, for vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go™), the driver seat will move about 2.4 in (60 mm) rearward if the driver seat position is greater than or equal to 2.7 in (67.7 mm)

forward of the rear stop. The seat will return to its previously set position when you place the ignition into the ACC or RUN position.

- When you remove the Key Fob from the ignition (or change the ignition to OFF, for vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go™), the driver seat will move to a position 0.3 in (7.7 mm) forward of the rear stop if the driver seat position is between 0.9 in and 2.7 in (22.7 mm and 67.7 mm) forward of the rear stop. The seat will return to its previously set position when you place the ignition to the ACC or RUN position.
- The Easy Entry/Easy Exit feature is disabled when the driver seat position is less than 0.9 in (22.7 mm) forward of the rear stop. At this position, there is no benefit to the driver by moving the seat for Easy Exit or Easy Entry.

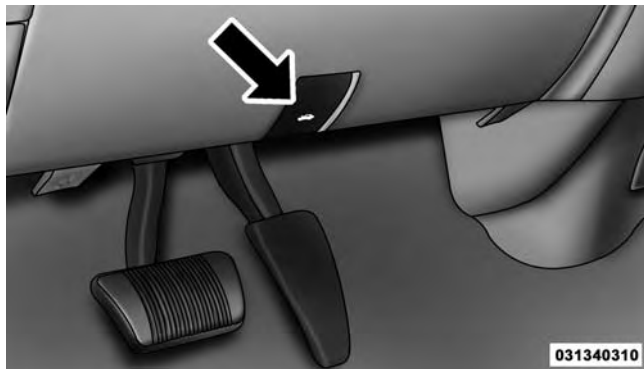
Each stored memory setting will have an associated Easy Entry and Easy Exit position.

**NOTE:** The Easy Entry/Exit feature is not enabled when the vehicle is delivered from the factory. The Easy Entry/Exit feature is enabled (or later disabled) through the programmable features in the Uconnect® system. Refer to “Uconnect® Settings/Customer Programmable Features” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

## **TO OPEN AND CLOSE THE HOOD**

To open the hood, two latches must be released.

1. Pull the hood release lever located below the steering wheel at the base of the instrument panel.



### Hood Release

2. Reach into the opening beneath the center of the hood and push the safety latch lever to the left to release it, before raising the hood.



### Safety Latch Location (1500 Series Shown)

#### **CAUTION!**

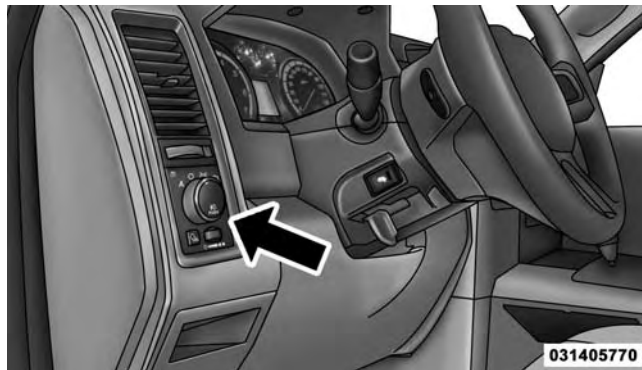
To prevent possible damage, do not slam the hood to close it. Use a firm downward push at the front center of the hood to ensure that both latches engage.

**WARNING!**

Be sure the hood is fully latched before driving your vehicle. If the hood is not fully latched, it could open when the vehicle is in motion and block your vision. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious injury or death.

**LIGHTS**

The headlight switch is located on the left side of the instrument panel, next to the steering wheel. The headlight switch controls the operation of the headlights, parking lights, instrument panel lights, cargo lights and fog lights (if equipped).

**Headlight Switch Location**

Your vehicle is equipped with plastic headlight and fog light (if equipped) lenses that are lighter and less susceptible to stone breakage than glass lights. Plastic is not as scratch resistant as glass and therefore different lens cleaning procedures must be followed.



To minimize the possibility of scratching the lenses and reducing light output, avoid wiping with a dry cloth. To remove road dirt, wash with a mild soap solution followed by rinsing.

**NOTE:** If your vehicle is equipped with illuminated approach lights under the outside mirrors they can be turned off through the instrument cluster or the Uconnect® radio. For further information refer to “EVIC” or “DID” and “Uconnect® Settings” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel”.

### CAUTION!

**Do not use abrasive cleaning components, solvents, steel wool or other abrasive materials to clean the lenses.**

## Headlights



To turn on the headlights, rotate the headlight switch clockwise to the headlight position. When the headlight switch is on, the parking lights, taillights, license plate light and instrument panel lights are also turned on. To turn off the headlights, rotate the headlight switch back to the O (Off) position.

### Automatic Headlights — If Equipped

This system automatically turns the headlights on or off according to ambient light levels. To turn the system on, rotate the headlight switch to the AUTO position.



### Automatic Headlight Position

When the system is on, the Headlight Delay feature is also on. This means the headlights will stay on for up to 90 seconds after you turn the ignition switch to the OFF position. To turn the automatic headlights off, turn the headlight switch out of the AUTO position.

031464204

**NOTE:** The engine must be running before the headlights will turn on in the Automatic Mode.

### Headlights On With Wipers (Available With Automatic Headlights Only)

When this feature is active, the headlights will turn on approximately 10 seconds after the wipers are turned on if the headlight switch is placed in the AUTO position. In addition, the headlights will turn off when the wipers are turned off, if they were turned on by this feature.

**NOTE:** If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Uconnect® system. Refer to “Uconnect® Settings” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to “Electronic Vehicle Information

Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

### **Daytime Running Lights (DRL) — If Equipped**

The headlights on your vehicle will illuminate when the engine is started and the transmission is in any gear except PARK. This provides a constant "Lights ON" condition until the ignition is turned OFF. The lights illuminate at less than 50% of normal intensity. If the parking brake is applied, the Daytime Running Lights (DRL) will turn OFF. Also, if a turn signal is activated, the DRL lamp on the same side of the vehicle may turn off for the duration of the turn signal activation. Once the turn signal is no longer active, the DRL lamp will illuminate.

### **Headlight Delay**

To aid in your exit, your vehicle is equipped with a headlight delay that will leave the headlights on for approximately up to 90 seconds. This delay is initiated

when the ignition is turned OFF while the headlight switch is on, and then the headlight switch is cycled off. Headlight delay can be cancelled by either turning the headlight switch on then off, or by turning the ignition ON.

**NOTE:** If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Uconnect® system. Refer to "Uconnect® Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

## Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control — If Equipped

The Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control system provides increased forward lighting at night by automating high beam control through the use of a digital camera mounted on the inside rearview mirror. This camera detects vehicle specific light and automatically switches from high beams to low beams until the approaching vehicle is out of view.

### NOTE:

- If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen the Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control can be turned on or off using the Uconnect® System. Refer to “Uconnect® Settings” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.
- If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen the Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control can be

turned on or off using the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to “Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)” or “Driver Information Display (DID)” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

- Broken, muddy, or obstructed headlights and taillights of vehicles in the field of view will cause headlights to remain on longer (closer to the vehicle). Also, dirt, film, and other obstructions on the windshield or camera lens will cause the system to function improperly.
- To opt out of the Advanced Auto High-Beam Sensitivity Control (default) and enter Reduced High-Beam Sensitivity Control (not recommended), toggle high-beam lever 6 full on/off cycles within 10 seconds of ignition ON. System will return to default setting upon ignition off.

If the windshield or Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control mirror is replaced, the mirror must be re-aimed to ensure proper performance. See your local authorized dealer.

### To Activate

1. If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, the Automatic High Beams are enabled through the Uconnect® system. Refer to “Uconnect® Settings” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen, the Automatic High Beams are enabled through the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to “Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)” or “Driver Information Display (DID)” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.


2. Turn the headlight switch to the AUTO headlight position.
3. Push the multifunction lever away from you (toward front of vehicle) to engage the high beam mode.

**NOTE:** This system will not activate until the vehicle is at or above 20 mph (32 km/h).

### To Deactivate

1. Pull the multifunction lever toward you (or rearward in car) to manually deactivate the system (normal operation of low beams).
2. Push back on the multifunction lever to reactivate the system.

## Parking Lights And Panel Lights

 To turn on the parking lights and instrument panel lights, rotate the headlight switch clockwise. To turn off the parking lights, rotate the headlight switch back to the O (Off) position.

## Fog Lights — If Equipped

The fog lights are turned on by rotating the headlight switch to the parking light or headlight position and pushing in the headlight rotary control.



031464205

### Fog Light Switch

The fog lights will operate only when the parking lights are on or when the vehicle headlights are on low beam. An indicator light located in the instrument cluster will illuminate when the fog lights are on. The fog lights will

turn off when the switch is pushed a second time, when the headlight switch is rotated to the off position, or the high beam is selected.

### Lights-On Reminder

If the headlights, parking lights, or cargo lights are left on after the ignition is turned OFF, a chime will sound when the driver's door is opened.

### Battery Saver

To protect the life of your vehicle's battery, load shedding is provided for both the interior and exterior lights.

If the ignition is OFF and any door is left ajar for 10 minutes or the dimmer control is rotated all the way up to the dome ON position for 10 minutes, the interior lights will automatically turn off.

**NOTE:** Battery saver mode is cancelled if the ignition is ON.

If the headlights remain on while the ignition is cycled OFF, the exterior lights will automatically turn off after eight minutes. If the headlights are turned on and left on for eight minutes while the ignition is OFF, the exterior lights will automatically turn off.

### Interior Lights

Courtesy and dome lights are turned on when the front doors are opened, when the dimmer control (rotating wheel on the bottom of the switch) is rotated to the far right detent position. If your vehicle is equipped with Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) and the UNLOCK button is pushed on the RKE transmitter the courtesy and dome lights will turn on. When a door is open and the interior lights are on, rotating the dimmer control all the way left, to the OFF detent, will cause all the interior lights to go out. This is also known as the "Party" mode because it allows the doors to stay open for extended periods of time without discharging the vehicle's battery.

The brightness of the instrument panel as well as the ambient lighting can be regulated by rotating the dimmer control right (brighter) or left (dimmer). When the headlights are on you can supplement the brightness of the odometer, trip odometer, radio and overhead console by rotating the control to the right until you hear a click. This feature is termed the “Parade” mode and is useful when headlights are required during the day.

**NOTE:** If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, the dimming of the touchscreen is programmable through the Uconnect® system. Refer to “Uconnect® Settings” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further details.



031464206

### Dimmer Control

#### Courtesy/Reading Lights

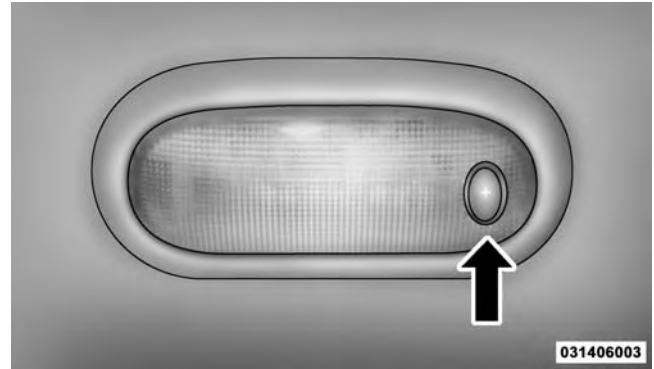
Both lights in the overhead console and rear passenger compartment will illuminate as courtesy lights when a door is opened, when the dimmer control is rotated to the courtesy light position (full right position), or when the UNLOCK button is pushed on the Remote Keyless Entry



(RKE) transmitter, if equipped. These lights are also operated individually as reading lights by pushing on the corresponding lens.



**Front Courtesy/Reading Lights**



**Rear Passenger Courtesy/Reading Light**

**NOTE:** The courtesy/reading lights will remain on until the switch is pushed a second time, so be sure they have been turned off before leaving the vehicle. If the interior lights are left on after the ignition is turned OFF, they will automatically turn off after 15 minutes.

## Ambient Light

The overhead console is equipped with an ambient light feature. This light casts illumination for improved visibility of the floor console area.



Ambient Light

## Cargo Light

The cargo lights are turned on by pushing on the cargo button.



Cargo Light Switch

The cargo lights will also turn on for approximately 30 seconds when a RKE transmitter UNLOCK button is pushed, as part of the Illuminated Entry feature.

## Multifunction Lever

The multifunction lever is located on the left side of the steering column.

## Turn Signals

Move the multifunction lever up or down and the arrows on each side of the instrument cluster flash to show proper operation of the front and rear turn signal lights.



## Turn Signal Lever

**NOTE:** If either light remains on and does not flash, or there is a very fast flash rate, check for a defective outside light bulb. If an indicator fails to light when the lever is moved, it would suggest that the indicator bulb is defective.

### Lane Change Assist

Tap the lever up or down once, without moving beyond the detent, and the turn signal (right or left) will flash three times then automatically turn off.

### Flash-To-Pass

You can signal another vehicle with your headlights by partially pulling the multifunction lever toward the steering wheel. This will cause the high beam headlights to turn on until the lever is released.

### High/Low Beam Switch

Push the multifunction lever toward the instrument panel to switch the headlights to high beam. Pulling the multifunction lever back toward the steering wheel will turn the low beams back on, or shut the high beams off.

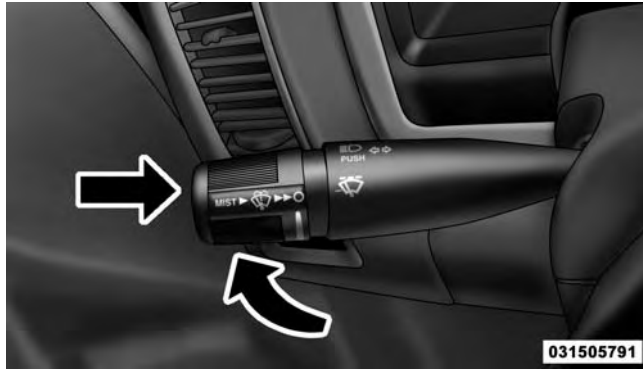


High/Low Beam Switch

## WINDSHIELD WIPERS AND WASHERS

### Windshield Wipers

The wipers and washers are operated by a switch in the multifunction lever. Turn the end of the handle to select the desired wiper speed.



Windshield Wiper/Washer Switch

### Windshield Wiper Operation

Rotate the end of the lever upward, to the first detent past the intermittent settings for low-speed wiper operation. Rotate the end of the lever upward to the second detent past the intermittent settings for high-speed wiper operation.

### Intermittent Wiper System

The intermittent feature of this system was designed for use when weather conditions make a single wiping cycle, with a variable pause between cycles, desirable. For maximum delay between cycles, rotate the control knob into the upper end of the delay range.

The delay interval decreases as you rotate the knob until it enters the low continual speed position. The delay can be regulated from a maximum of about 18 seconds between cycles, to a cycle every one second. The delay intervals will double in duration when the vehicle speed is 10 mph (16 km/h) or less.

### Windshield Washers

To use the windshield washer, push the washer knob, located on the end of the multifunction lever, inward to the second detent. Washer fluid will be sprayed and the wiper will operate for two to three cycles after the washer knob is released from this position.

If the washer knob is depressed while in the delay range, the wiper will operate for several seconds after the washer knob is released. It will then resume the intermittent interval previously selected. If the washer knob is pushed while in the off position, the wiper will turn on and cycle approximately three times after the wash knob is released.

To prevent freeze-up of your windshield washer system in cold weather, select a solution or mixture that meets or exceeds the temperature range of your climate. This rating information can be found on most washer fluid containers.

**WARNING!**

**Sudden loss of visibility through the windshield could lead to a collision. You might not see other vehicles or other obstacles. To avoid sudden icing of**

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

**the windshield during freezing weather, warm the windshield with the defroster before and during windshield washer use.**

**Mist Feature**

When a single wipe to clear off road mist or spray from a passing vehicle is needed, push the washer knob, located on the end of the multifunction lever, inward to the first detent and release. The wipers will cycle one time and automatically shut off.

**NOTE:** The mist feature does not activate the washer pump; therefore, no washer fluid will be sprayed on the windshield. The wash function must be used in order to spray the windshield with washer fluid.

## Rain Sensing Wipers — If Equipped

This feature senses moisture on the windshield and automatically activates the wipers for the driver. The feature is especially useful for road splash or overspray from the windshield washers of the vehicle ahead. Rotate the end of the multifunction lever to one of five settings to activate this feature.

**NOTE:** If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Uconnect® system. Refer to “Uconnect® Settings” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to “Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)” or “Driver Information Display (DID)” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

The sensitivity of the system can be adjusted with the multifunction lever. Wiper delay position 1 is the least sensitive, and wiper delay position 5 is the most sensitive. Setting 3 should be used for normal rain conditions. Settings 1 and 2 can be used if the driver desires less wiper sensitivity. Setting 4 and 5 can be used if the driver desires more sensitivity. Place the wiper switch in the OFF position when not using the system.

### NOTE:

- The Rain Sensing feature will not operate when the wiper switch is in the low or high-speed position.
- The Rain Sensing feature may not function properly when ice, or dried salt water is present on the windshield.
- Use of Rain-X® or products containing wax or silicone may reduce Rain Sensing performance.

The Rain Sensing system has protection features for the wiper blades and arms, and will not operate under the following conditions:

- **Low Ambient Temperature** — When the ignition is first turned ON, the Rain Sensing system will not operate until the wiper switch is moved, vehicle speed is greater than 0 mph (0 km/h), or the outside temperature is greater than 32°F (0°C).
- **Transmission In NEUTRAL Position** — When the ignition is ON, and the transmission is in the NEUTRAL position, the Rain Sensing system will not operate until the wiper switch is moved, vehicle speed is greater than 5 mph (8 km/h), or the shift lever is moved out of the NEUTRAL position.

**Remote Start Mode Inhibit** — On vehicles equipped with Remote Starting system, Rain Sensing wipers are not operational when the vehicle is in the remote start mode. Once the operator is in the vehicle and has placed

the ignition switch in the RUN position, rain sensing wiper operation can resume, if it has been selected, and no other inhibit conditions (mentioned previously) exist.

## TILT STEERING COLUMN

This feature allows you to tilt the steering column upward or downward. The tilt lever is located on the steering column, below the multifunction lever.

Pull the lever toward the steering wheel to unlock the steering column. With one hand firmly on the steering wheel, move the steering column up or down, as desired. Release the lever to lock the steering column firmly in place.





Tilt Steering Lever

**WARNING!**

Do not adjust the steering column while driving. Adjusting the steering column while driving or driving with the steering column unlocked, could cause

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

the driver to lose control of the vehicle. Failure to follow this warning may result in serious injury or death.

3

**DRIVER ADJUSTABLE PEDALS — IF EQUIPPED**

The adjustable pedals system is designed to allow a greater range of driver comfort for steering wheel tilt and seat position. This feature allows the brake, accelerator, and clutch pedals (if equipped) to move toward or away from the driver to provide improved position with the steering wheel.

The adjustable pedal switch is located to the left side of the steering column.



#### Adjustable Pedals Switch

- The pedals can be adjusted with the ignition OFF.
- The pedals **cannot** be adjusted when the vehicle is in REVERSE or when the Electronic Speed Control System is on. The following messages will be displayed on

vehicles equipped with the Electronic Vehicle Information System (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID) if the pedals are attempted to be adjusted when the system is locked out (“Adjustable Pedal Disabled — Cruise Control Engaged” or “Adjustable Pedal Disabled — Vehicle In Reverse”).

#### NOTE:

- Always adjust the pedals to a position that allows full pedal travel.
- Further small adjustments may be necessary to find the best possible seat/pedal position.
- For vehicles equipped with Driver Memory Seat, you can use your Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter or the memory switch on the driver’s door trim panel to return the adjustable pedals to pre-programmed

positions. Refer to “Driver Memory Seat” in “Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle” for further information.

### CAUTION!

**Do not place any article under the adjustable pedals or impede its ability to move as it may cause damage to the pedal controls. Pedal travel may become limited if movement is stopped by an obstruction in the adjustable pedal’s path.**



### WARNING!

**Do not adjust the pedals while the vehicle is moving. You could lose control and have an accident. Always adjust the pedals while the vehicle is parked.**

## HEATED STEERING WHEEL — IF EQUIPPED

The steering wheel contains a heating element that helps warm your hands in cold weather. The heated steering wheel has only one temperature setting. Once the heated steering wheel has been turned on it will operate for up to 80 minutes before automatically shutting off. The heated steering wheel can shut off early or may not turn on when the steering wheel is already warm.

The heated steering wheel control button is located within the Uconnect® system. You can gain access to the control button through the climate screen or the controls screen.

- Press the heated steering wheel button  once to turn the heating element ON.
- Press the heated steering wheel button  a second time to turn the heating element OFF.

**NOTE:** The engine must be running for the heated steering wheel to operate.

### Vehicles Equipped With Remote Start

On models that are equipped with remote start, the heated steering wheel can be programmed to come on during a remote start through the Uconnect® system. Refer to “Uconnect® Settings” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

#### **WARNING!**

- **Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions must exercise care when using the steering wheel heater. It may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods.**

*(Continued)*

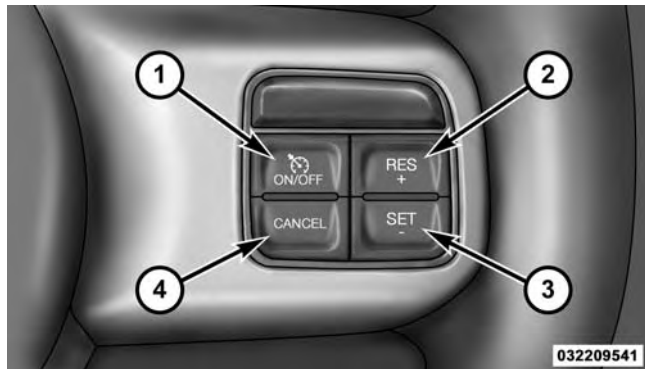
#### **WARNING! (Continued)**

- **Do not place anything on the steering wheel that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or steering wheel covers of any type and material. This may cause the steering wheel heater to overheat.**

### **ELECTRONIC SPEED CONTROL**

When engaged, the Electronic Speed Control takes over accelerator operations at speeds greater than 25 mph (40 km/h).

The Electronic Speed Control buttons are located on the right side of the steering wheel.



Electronic Speed Control Switches

1 — ON/OFF

2 — RES +

3 — SET -

4 — CANCEL

3

**NOTE:** In order to ensure proper operation, the Electronic Speed Control System has been designed to shut down if multiple Speed Control functions are operated at the same time. If this occurs, the Electronic Speed Control System can be reactivated by pushing the Electronic Speed Control ON/OFF button and resetting the desired vehicle set speed.

### To Activate

Push the ON/OFF button. The Cruise Indicator Light in the instrument cluster will illuminate. To turn the system off, push the ON/OFF button a second time. The Cruise Indicator Light will turn off. The system should be turned off when not in use.

**WARNING!**

Leaving the Electronic Speed Control system on when not in use is dangerous. You could accidentally set the system or cause it to go faster than you want. You could lose control and have an accident. Always leave the system OFF when you are not using it.

**To Set A Desired Speed**

Turn the Electronic Speed Control ON. When the vehicle has reached the desired speed, push the SET (-) button and release. Release the accelerator and the vehicle will operate at the selected speed.

**NOTE:** The vehicle should be traveling at a steady speed and on level ground before pushing the SET (-) button.

**To Deactivate**

A soft tap on the brake pedal, pushing the CANCEL button, or normal brake pressure while slowing the vehicle will deactivate the Electronic Speed Control without erasing the set speed from memory.

Pushing the ON/OFF button or turning the ignition switch OFF erases the set speed from memory.

**To Resume Speed**

To resume a previously set speed, push the RES (+) button and release. Resume can be used at any speed above 20 mph (32 km/h).

**To Vary The Speed Setting****To Increase Speed**

When the Electronic Speed Control is set, you can increase speed by pushing the RES (+) button.

The drivers preferred units can be selected through the instrument panel settings if equipped. Refer to “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for more information. The speed increment shown is dependant on the chosen speed unit of U.S. (mph) or Metric (km/h):

#### *U.S. Speed (mph)*

- Pushing the RES (+) button once will result in a 1 mph increase in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in an increase of 1 mph.
- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to increase until the button is released, then the new set speed will be established.

#### *Metric Speed (km/h)*

- Pushing the RES (+) button once will result in a 1 km/h increase in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in an increase of 1 km/h.

- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to increase until the button is released, then the new set speed will be established.

#### **To Decrease Speed**

When the Electronic Speed Control is set, you can decrease speed by pushing the SET (-) button.

The drivers preferred units can be selected through the instrument panel settings if equipped. Refer to “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for more information. The speed decrement shown is dependant on the chosen speed unit of U.S. (mph) or Metric (km/h):

#### *U.S. Speed (mph)*

- Pushing the SET (-) button once will result in a 1 mph decrease in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in a decrease of 1 mph.

- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to decrease until the button is released, then the new set speed will be established.

### *Metric Speed (km/h)*

- Pushing the SET (-) button once will result in a 1 km/h decrease in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in a decrease of 1 km/h.
- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to decrease until the button is released, then the new set speed will be established.

### **To Accelerate For Passing**

Push the accelerator as you would normally. When the pedal is released, the vehicle will return to the set speed.

### **Using Electronic Speed Control On Hills**

The transmission may downshift on hills to maintain the vehicle set speed.

**NOTE:** The Electronic Speed Control system maintains speed up and down hills. A slight speed change on moderate hills is normal.

On steep hills, a greater speed loss or gain may occur so it may be preferable to drive without Electronic Speed Control.

### **WARNING!**

**Electronic Speed Control can be dangerous where the system cannot maintain a constant speed. Your vehicle could go too fast for the conditions, and you could lose control and have an accident. Do not use Electronic Speed Control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, icy, snow-covered or slippery.**



## OVERHEAD CONSOLE — IF EQUIPPED

The overhead console is located on the headliner above the rearview mirror. The overhead console contains the following features:

- Courtesy/Reading Lights
- Power Sliding Rear Window Switch — If Equipped



Overhead Console

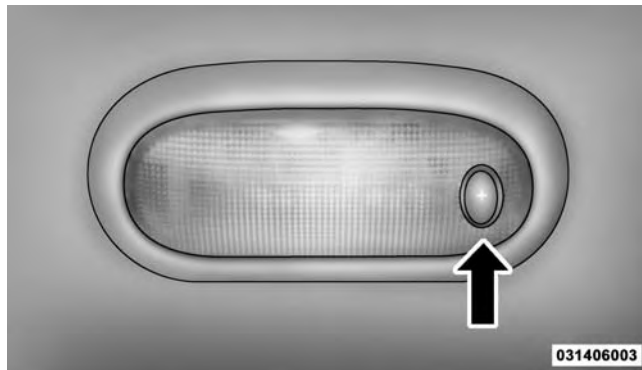
### Courtesy/Reading Lights

Both lights in the overhead console and rear passenger compartment will illuminate as courtesy lights when a door is opened, when the dimmer control is rotated to the courtesy light position (full right position), or when the UNLOCK button is pushed on the Remote Keyless Entry

(RKE) transmitter, if equipped. These lights are also operated individually as reading lights by pushing on the corresponding lens.



Front Courtesy/Reading Lights



Rear Passenger Courtesy/Reading Light

**NOTE:** The courtesy/reading lights will remain on until the switch is pushed a second time, so be sure they have been turned off before leaving the vehicle. If the interior lights are left on after the ignition is turned OFF, they will automatically turn off after 15 minutes.

## ELECTRICAL POWER OUTLETS

The auxiliary 12 Volt (13 Amp) power outlets can provide power for in-cab accessories designed for use with the standard “cigar lighter” plug. The 12 Volt power outlets have a cap attached to the outlet indicating “12V DC,” together with either a key symbol or a battery symbol.

A key symbol indicates that the key must be in the ON/RUN or ACC positions for the outlet to provide power. The battery symbol indicates that the outlet is connected to the battery, and can provide power at all times.

**NOTE:** To ensure proper operation, a MOPAR® knob and element must be used.

The auxiliary power outlets can be found in the following locations:

### CAUTION!

- **Do not exceed the maximum power of 160 Watts (13 Amps) at 12 Volts. If the 160 Watts (13 Amps) power rating is exceeded, the fuse protecting the system will need to be replaced.**
- **Power outlets are designed for accessory plugs only. Do not insert any other object in the power outlets as this will damage the outlet and blow the fuse. Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.**

## 178 UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

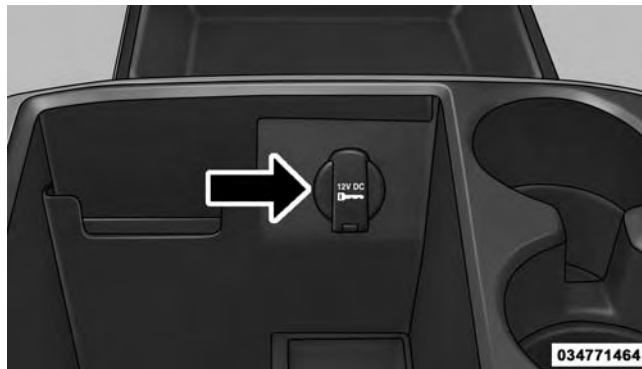
- Lower left and lower right of the center stack when equipped with a bench seat.



Power Outlets — Center Stack

- 1 — Power Outlet
- 2 — USB Port (Charge Only)

- Center console when equipped with bucket seats.

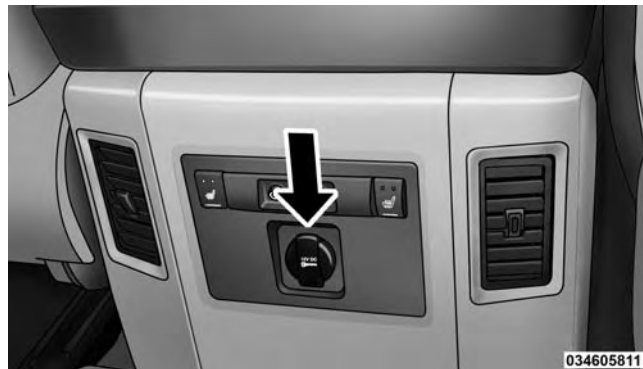


Power Outlet — Center Console

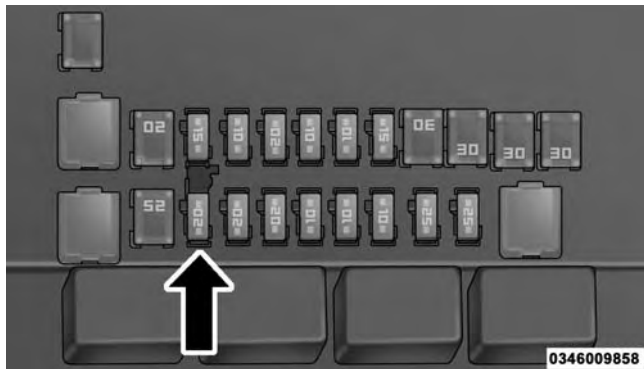
- Inside the upper lid of the center storage compartment — if equipped.
- Rear of the center console storage compartment — Quad Cab® or Crew Cab.



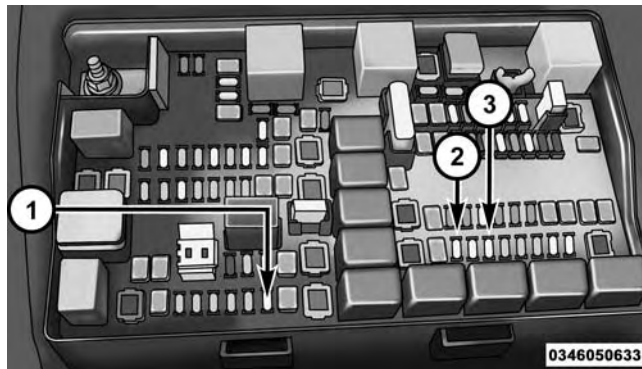
Power Outlet — Upper Lid



Power Outlet — Rear Center Console



Power Outlet — Rear Center Console Fuse



Power Outlet Fuse Locations

- 1 — F104 Fuse 20 A Yellow Power Outlet Console Bin
- 2 — F90–F91 Fuse 20 A Yellow Power Outlet Rear Center Console
- 3 — F93 Fuse 20 A Yellow Cigar Lighter Instrument Panel

The key symbol indicates that this outlet can supply power when the key is in the ON/RUN or ACC positions.

All accessories connected to the outlet(s) should be removed or turned off when the vehicle is not in use to protect the battery against discharge.

### **WARNING!**

To avoid serious injury or death:

- Only devices designed for use in this type of outlet should be inserted into any 12 Volt outlet.
- Do not touch with wet hands.
- Close the lid when not in use and while driving the vehicle.
- If this outlet is mishandled, it may cause an electric shock and failure.

### **CAUTION!**

- Many accessories that can be plugged in draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e., cellular phones, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent the engine from starting.
- Accessories that draw higher power (i.e., coolers, vacuum cleaners, lights, etc.), will discharge the battery even more quickly. Only use these intermittently and with greater caution.
- After the use of high power draw accessories, or long periods of the vehicle not being started (with accessories still plugged in), the vehicle must be driven a sufficient length of time to allow the generator to recharge the vehicle's battery.

## **AUXILIARY SWITCHES — IF EQUIPPED**

There can be up to five auxiliary switches located in the lower switch bank of the instrument panel which can be used to power various electronic devices and PTO (Power Take Off) – If Equipped. Connections to the switches are found under the hood in the connectors attached to the auxiliary Power Distribution Center.

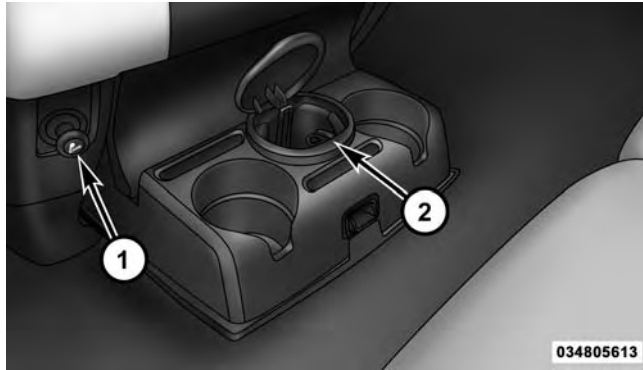
You have the ability to configure the functionality of the auxiliary switches via the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). All switches can now be configured for ignition or battery power, saving or not saving state across a key cycle, and momentary or latching switch operation.

For further information on using the auxiliary switches, please refer to the Ram Body Builders Guide by accessing [www.rambodybuilder.com](http://www.rambodybuilder.com) and choosing the appropriate links.

## **CIGAR LIGHTER AND ASH RECEIVER — IF EQUIPPED**

A removable ash receiver and cigar lighter are available. For vehicles with a bench seat the cupholder tray can be used to hold the ash receiver.





**Cigar Lighter And Ash Receiver (Bench Seat)**

- 1 — Cigar Lighter
- 2 — Ash Receiver

For vehicles equipped with a floor console, the cupholders may be used.

## **POWER INVERTER — IF EQUIPPED**

A 115 Volt (150 Watts Maximum) outlet is located on the center stack of the instrument panel, to the right of the radio. This outlet can power cellular phones, electronics and other low power devices requiring power up to 150 Watts. Certain high-end video games, such as Playstation3 and Xbox360 will exceed this power limit, as will most power tools.

The power inverter is designed with built-in overload protection. If the power rating of 150 Watts is exceeded, the power inverter will automatically shut down. Once the electrical device has been removed from the outlet the inverter should automatically reset.



### Power Inverter Outlet

To turn on the power outlet, simply plug in the device. The outlet automatically turns off when the device is unplugged.

**NOTE:** Due to built-in overload protection, the power inverter will shut down if the power rating is exceeded.

## WARNING!

To avoid serious injury or death:

- Do not insert any objects into the receptacles.
- Do not touch with wet hands.
- Close the lid when not in use.
- If this outlet is mishandled, it may cause an electric shock and failure.

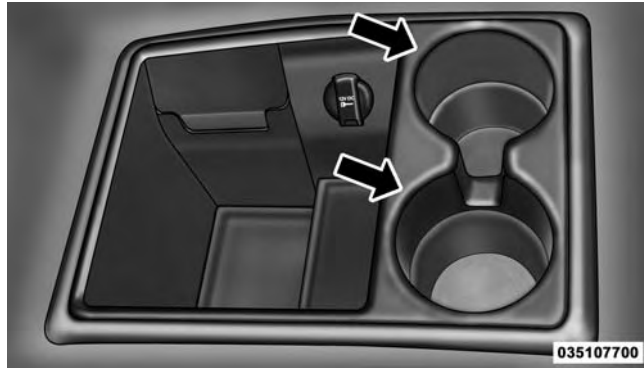
## CUPHOLDERS

### Front Seat Cupholders (40–20–40 Seats)

The cupholders are located on the backside of the center portion of the front seat (20). Fold down the center section of the front seat to gain access to the cupholders.

## Front Instrument Panel Cupholders — Floor Storage Bin

For vehicles equipped with bucket seats two cupholders are located in the floor storage bin.



Front Cupholders For Bucket Seats

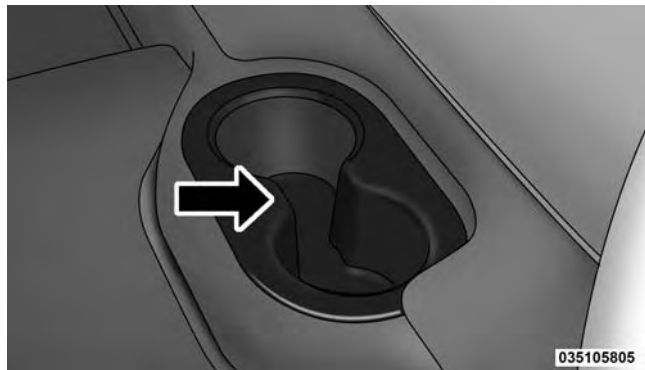
## Rear Cupholders — If Equipped

Some vehicles are equipped with rear cupholders located in the center armrest.



Rear Armrest Cupholder

Some vehicles may be equipped with a rear cupholder that consists of two cup wells for rear passenger convenience.

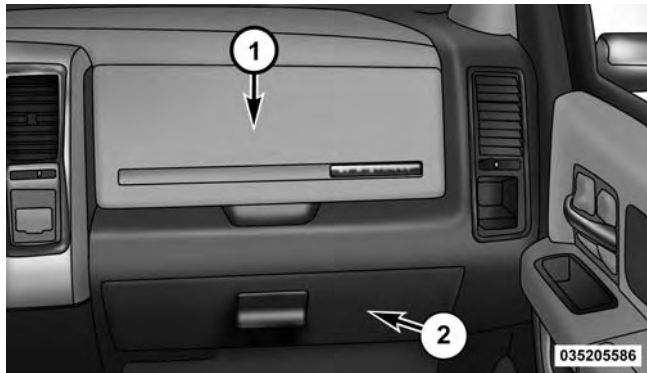


Rear Cup Wells

## STORAGE

### Glove Compartment

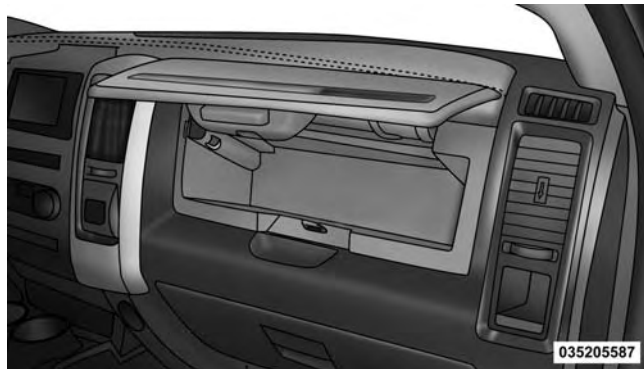
The glove compartment is located on the passenger side of the instrument panel and features both an upper and lower storage area.



Glove Compartment

- 1 — Upper Glove Compartment
- 2 — Lower Glove Compartment

To open the upper glove compartment push upward on the handle release. The glove compartment door will automatically open.



Upper Glove Compartment

To open the lower glove compartment, pull on the handle to release the latch and lower the glove compartment door.



Lower Glove Compartment

## Door Storage

### Front Door Storage — If Equipped

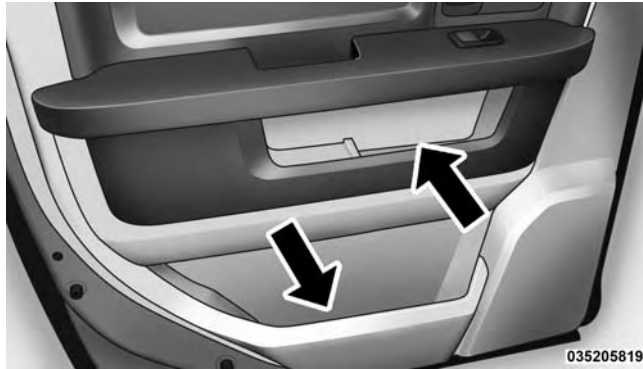
Storage areas and bottle holders (drivers side only) are located in the door trim panels.



Front Door Storage

### Rear Door Storage — If Equipped

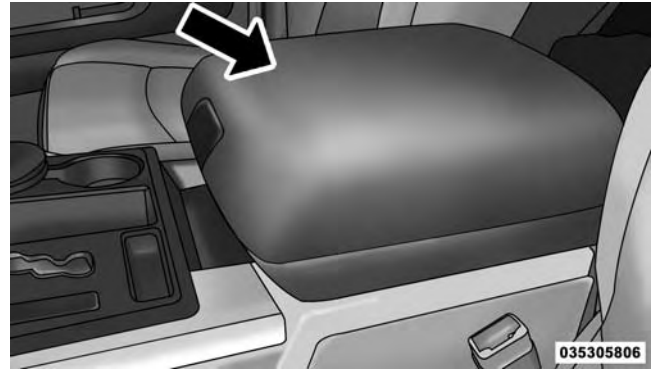
Storage compartments are located in both the driver and passenger rear door trim panels.



Rear Door Storage

### Center Storage Compartment — If Equipped

The center storage compartment is located between the driver and passenger seats. The storage compartment provides an armrest and contains both an upper and lower storage area.



Center Storage Compartment

**WARNING!**

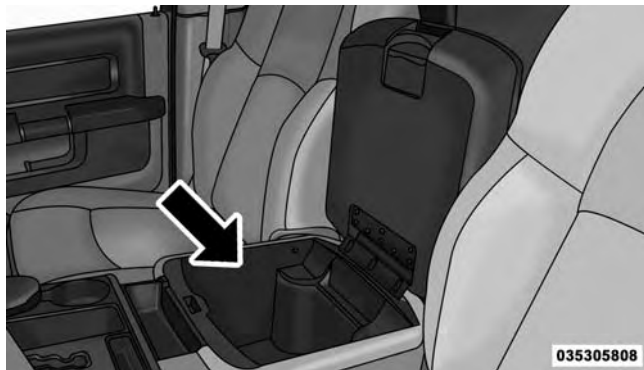
- This armrest is not a seat. Anyone seated on the armrest could be seriously injured during vehicle operation, or a collision. Only use the center seating position when the armrest is fully upright.
- In a collision, the latch may open if the total weight of the items stored exceeds about 10 lbs (4.5 kg). These items could be thrown about endangering occupants of the vehicle. Items stored should not exceed a total of 10 lbs (4.5 kg).

Pull on the upper handle on the front of the armrest to raise the cover. The upper storage area contains a 12 Volt power outlet that can be used to power small electrical devices, refer to “Electrical Power Outlets” for further information.

**Upper Storage Compartment**

With the upper lid closed, pull on the lower handle to open the lower storage bin.





Lower Storage Bin

**WARNING!**

Do not operate this vehicle with a console compartment lid in the open position. Driving with the console compartment lid open may result in injury in a collision.

## Seatback Storage

Located in the back of both the driver and passenger front seats are pockets that can be used for storage.



Drivers Side Seatback Storage

### Storage (Regular Cab)

The storage bin is located behind the front seats and runs the length of the cab.

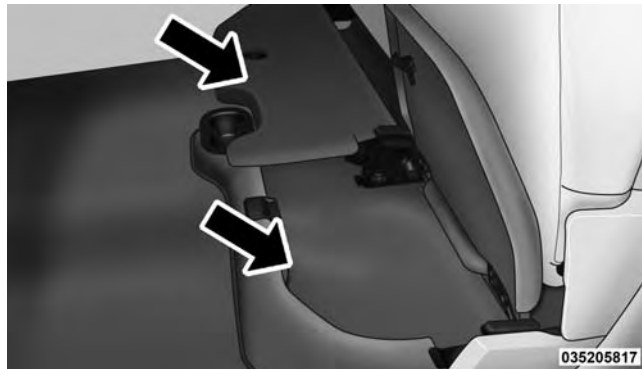


Storage Bin

### Storage and Seats (Crew Cab)

The Crew Cab models provide additional storage under the rear seats. Lift the seats to access the storage compartment.

To open the storage compartments, lift upward on the handle of the latch and open the lid.



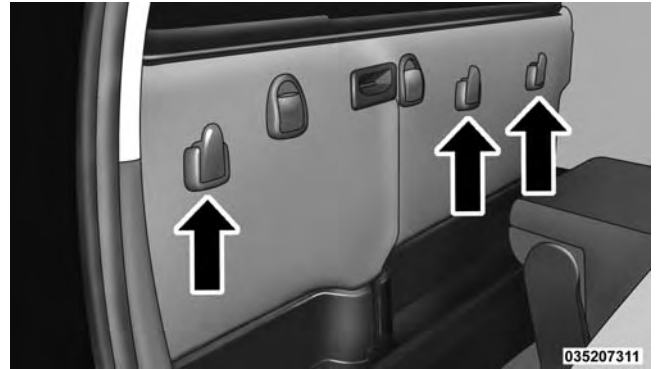
Crew Cab Storage

**CAUTION!**

Always lift the storage compartment lids by using the handle. Failure to lift the lids by using the handle can result in damage to the lids.

**Plastic Grocery Bag Retainers (Regular Cab Models)**

Retainer hooks which will hold plastic grocery bag handles are built into the back panel of the cab, behind the rear seat.



Grocery Bag Hooks

## REAR WINDOW FEATURES

### Rear Window Defroster



The rear window defroster button is located on the climate control panel. Push this button to turn on the rear window defroster and the heated outside mirrors (if equipped). An indicator in the button will illuminate when the rear window defroster is on. The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 10 minutes. For an additional five minutes of operation, push the button a second time.

**NOTE:** To prevent excessive battery drain, use the rear window defroster only when the engine is operating.

### CAUTION!

Failure to follow these cautions can cause damage to the heating elements:

- Use care when washing the inside of the rear window. Do not use abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window. Use a soft cloth and a mild washing solution, wiping parallel to the heating elements. Labels can be peeled off after soaking with warm water.
- Do not use scrapers, sharp instruments, or abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window.
- Keep all objects a safe distance from the window.

### Power Sliding Rear Window — If Equipped

The switch for the power sliding rear window is located on the overhead console.



Rear Window Switch

Push the switch to the right to open the glass. Pull the switch to the left to close the glass.

### Manual Sliding Rear Window — If Equipped

A locking device in the center of the window helps to prevent entry from the rear of the vehicle. Squeeze the lock to release the window.



# UNDERSTANDING YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL

## CONTENTS

---

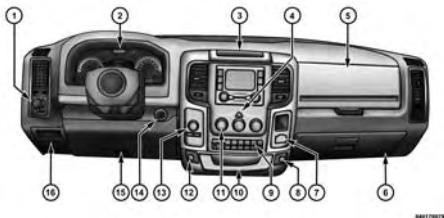
■ INSTRUMENT PANEL FEATURES . . . . .	.200	□ EVIC Red Telltales . . . . .	.224
■ INSTRUMENT CLUSTER — BASE . . . . .	.201	□ EVIC Yellow Telltales . . . . .	.226
■ INSTRUMENT CLUSTER — PREMIUM . . . . .	.202	□ EVIC White Telltales . . . . .	.228
■ INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DESCRIPTIONS . . . . .	.203	□ EVIC Selectable Menu Items . . . . .	.228
■ ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER (EVIC) . . . . .	.215	■ DRIVER INFORMATION DISPLAY (DID) . . . . .	.240
□ Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) Displays — 3.5" Display . . . . .	.218	□ Driver Information Display (DID) Displays . . . . .	.242
□ Oil Life Reset . . . . .	.220	□ Oil Life Reset . . . . .	.244
□ EVIC Messages . . . . .	.221	□ DID Messages . . . . .	.245
		□ DID Red Telltales . . . . .	.248
		□ DID Yellow Telltales . . . . .	.250

- DID White Telltales . . . . .252
- DID Selectable Menu Items . . . . .252
- Uconnect® SETTINGS . . . . .264
  - Buttons On The Faceplate. . . . .266
  - Buttons On The Touchscreen. . . . .266
- Uconnect® RADIOS — IF EQUIPPED . . . . .284
- iPod®/USB/MP3 CONTROL — IF EQUIPPED . .284
- STEERING WHEEL AUDIO CONTROLS — IF EQUIPPED . . . . .285
  - Radio Operation . . . . .286
  - CD Player — If Equipped. . . . .286
- CD/DVD DISC MAINTENANCE . . . . .286
- RADIO OPERATION AND MOBILE PHONES . .287
- Regulatory And Safety Information . . . . .287
- CLIMATE CONTROLS . . . . .290
  - Manual Climate Controls Without Touchscreen — If Equipped . . . . .290
  - Manual Climate Controls With Touchscreen — If Equipped . . . . .295
  - Automatic Climate Controls With Touchscreen — If Equipped . . . . .300
  - Climate Control Functions . . . . .306
  - Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) . . . . .308
  - Operating Tips . . . . .309
- Uconnect® VOICE RECOGNITION . . . . .313
  - Introducing Uconnect® . . . . .313
  - Get Started . . . . .314



□ Basic Voice Commands. . . . .	.315	□ Uconnect® Access (8.4A/8.4AN). . . . .	.324
□ Radio . . . . .	.317	□ Register (8.4A/8.4AN) . . . . .	.325
□ Media. . . . .	.318	□ Mobile App (8.4A/8.4AN) . . . . .	.325
□ Climate (8.4A/8.4AN) . . . . .	.320	□ Voice Texting (8.4A/8.4AN) . . . . .	.326
□ Navigation (8.4A/8.4AN). . . . .	.321	□ Yelp® (8.4A/8.4AN). . . . .	.327
□ Phone. . . . .	.322	□ SiriusXM Travel Link™ (8.4A/8.4AN) . . . . .	.328
□ Voice Text Reply . . . . .	.323	□ Additional Information . . . . .	.329

## INSTRUMENT PANEL FEATURES



1 — Headlight Switch

2 — Instrument Cluster

3 — Radio

4 — Hazard Switch

5 — Upper Glove Compartment

6 — Lower Glove Compartment

7 — 115v Power Inverter Outlet

8 — Power Outlet — If Equipped

9 — Lower Switch Bank

10 — Instrument Panel Drawer

11 — Climate Controls

12 — Power Outlet/Cigar Lighter — If Equipped

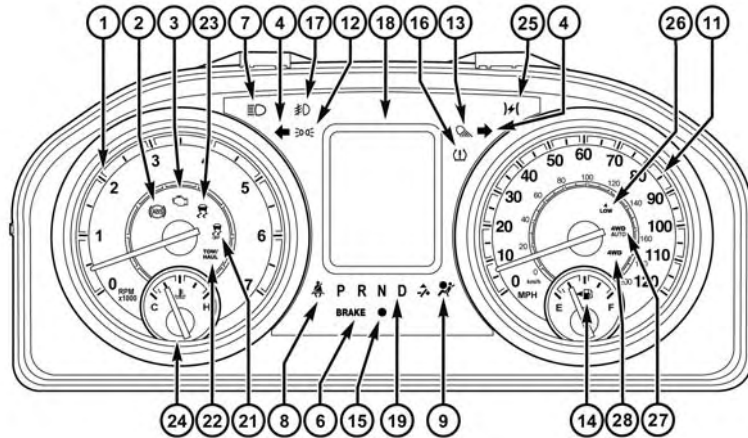
13 — Gear Selector/Transfer Case Position Switch — If Equipped

14 — Ignition Switch

15 — Hood Release

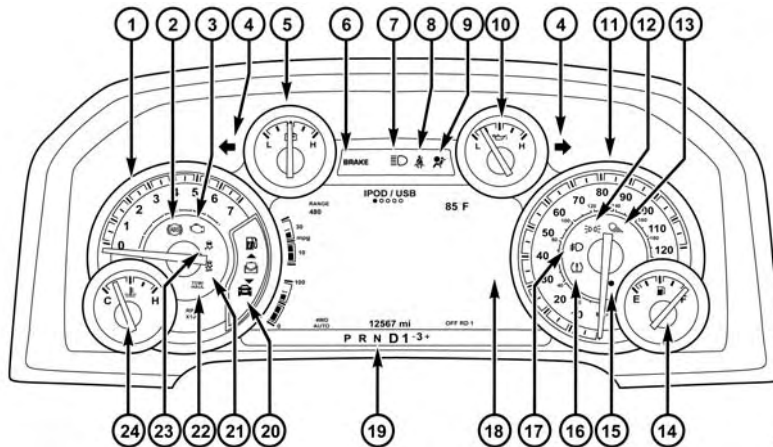
16 — Parking Brake Release

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER — BASE



0403017342

**INSTRUMENT CLUSTER — PREMIUM**



040370063

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DESCRIPTIONS

### 1. Tachometer

The tachometer indicates engine speed in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM x 1000).

### CAUTION!

Do not operate the engine with the tachometer pointer at high RPM for extended periods. Engine operation over 3200 RPM can result in significant damage that will not be covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

### 2. Anti-Lock Brake (ABS) Light

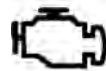


This light monitors the Anti-lock Brake System (ABS). The light will turn on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON/RUN position and may stay on for as long as four seconds.

If the ABS light remains on or turns on while driving, it indicates that the anti-lock portion of the brake system is not functioning and that service is required. However, the conventional brake system will continue to operate normally if the BRAKE warning light is not on.

If the ABS light is on, the brake system should be serviced as soon as possible to restore the benefits of anti-lock brakes. If the ABS light does not turn on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON/RUN position, have the light inspected by an authorized dealer.

### 3. Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL)



The Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) is part of an onboard diagnostic (OBDII) system which monitors the emissions and engine control system. If the vehicle is ready for emissions testing, the light will come on when the ignition is first turned on and remain on, as a bulb check, until the engine is started. If the vehicle is not ready for emissions

testing the light will come on when the ignition is first turned on and remain on for 15 seconds, then blink for 5 seconds, and remain on until the vehicle is started. If the bulb does not come on during starting, have the condition investigated promptly.

If this light comes on and remains on while driving, it suggests a potential engine control problem and the need for system service.

Although your vehicle will usually be drivable and not need towing, see your authorized dealer for service as soon as possible.

### CAUTION!

**Prolonged driving with the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) on could cause damage to the engine control system. It also could affect fuel economy and driveability. If the MIL is flashing, severe catalytic**

*(Continued)*

### CAUTION! *(Continued)*

**converter damage and power loss will soon occur. Immediate service is required.**

### WARNING!

**A malfunctioning catalytic converter, as referenced above, can reach higher temperatures than in normal operating conditions. This can cause a fire if you drive slowly or park over flammable substances such as dry plants, wood, cardboard, etc. This could result in death or serious injury to the driver, occupants or others.**

#### 4. Turn Signal Indicators



The arrow will flash with the exterior turn signal when the turn signal lever is operated.

**NOTE:**

- A continuous chime will sound if the vehicle is driven more than 1 mile (1.6 km) with either turn signal on.
- Check for an inoperative outside light bulb if either indicator remains on and does not flash, or flashes at a rapid rate.

### 5. Voltmeter — If Equipped



When the engine is running, the gauge indicates the electrical system voltage. The pointer should stay within the normal range if the battery is charged. If the pointer moves to either extreme left or right and remains there during normal driving, the electrical system should be serviced.

**NOTE:** The voltmeter may show a gauge fluctuation at various engine temperatures. This cycling operation is caused by the post-heat cycle of the intake manifold heater system. The number of cycles and the length of the cycling operation is controlled by the engine control module. Post-heat operation can run for several minutes, and then the electrical system and voltmeter needle will stabilize.

### 6. Brake Warning Light

This light monitors various brake functions, including brake fluid level and parking brake application. If the brake light turns on it may indicate that the parking brake is applied, that the brake fluid level is low, or that there is a problem with the Anti-lock Brake System reservoir.

If the light remains on when the parking brake has been disengaged, and the fluid level is at the full mark on the master cylinder reservoir, it indicates a possible brake hydraulic system malfunction or that a problem with the Brake Booster has been detected by the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) / Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. In this case, the light will remain on until the condition has been corrected. If the problem is related to the brake booster, the ABS pump will run when applying the brake and a brake pedal pulsation may be felt during each stop.

The dual brake system provides a reserve braking capacity in the event of a failure to a portion of the hydraulic system. A leak in either half of the dual brake system is indicated by the Brake Warning Light, which will turn on when the brake fluid level in the master cylinder has dropped below a specified level.

The light will remain on until the cause is corrected.

**NOTE:** The light may flash momentarily during sharp cornering maneuvers, which change fluid level conditions. The vehicle should have service performed, and the brake fluid level checked.

If brake failure is indicated, immediate repair is necessary.

### **WARNING!**

**Driving a vehicle with the red brake light on is dangerous. Part of the brake system may have failed. It will take longer to stop the vehicle. You could have a collision. Have the vehicle checked immediately.**

Vehicles equipped with the ABS, are also equipped with Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD). In the event of an EBD failure, the Brake Warning Light will turn on along with the ABS Light. Immediate repair to the ABS system is required.




Operation of the Brake Warning Light can be checked by turning the ignition switch from the OFF position to the ON/RUN position. The light should illuminate for approximately two seconds. The light should then turn off unless the parking brake is applied or a brake fault is detected. If the light does not illuminate, have the light inspected by an authorized dealer.

The light also will turn on when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the ON/RUN position.

**NOTE:** This light shows only that the parking brake is applied. It does not show the degree of brake application.

### 7. High Beam Indicator

 This light shows that the high beam headlights are on. Push the multifunction control lever away from you to switch the headlights to high beam. Pull the lever toward you to switch the headlights back to low beam. If the driver's door is open, and the headlights or

park lights are left on, the high beam indicator light will remain illuminated and a chime will sound.

### 8. Seat Belt Reminder Light



When the ignition switch is first turned to ON/RUN, this light will turn on for four to eight seconds as a bulb check. During the bulb check, if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled, a chime will sound. After the bulb check or when driving, if the driver's seat belt remains unbuckled, the seat belt reminder light will flash or remain on continuously. Refer to "Occupant Restraints" in "Things To Know Before Starting Your Vehicle" for further information.

### 9. Air Bag Warning Light



This light will turn on for four to eight seconds as a bulb check when the ignition switch is first turned to ON/RUN. If the light is either not on during starting, stays on, or turns on while driving, have the system inspected at an authorized

dealer as soon as possible. Refer to “Occupant Restraints” in “Things To Know Before Starting Your Vehicle” for further information.

### 10. Oil Pressure Gauge — If Equipped

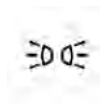


The pointer should always indicate some oil pressure when the engine is running. A continuous high or low reading under normal driving conditions may indicate a lubrication system malfunction. Immediate service should be obtained from an authorized dealer.

### 11. Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle speed in miles per hour and/or kilometers per hour (mph/km/h).

### 12. Park/Headlight ON Indicator — If Equipped



This indicator will illuminate when the park lights or headlights are turned on.

### 13. Cargo Light — If Equipped



The cargo light will illuminate when the cargo light is activated by pushing the cargo light button on the headlight switch.

### 14. Fuel Gauge

Shows level of fuel in tank when ignition switch is in the ON/RUN position.

### 15. Vehicle Security Light — If Equipped



This light will flash at a fast rate for approximately 15 seconds, when the vehicle security alarm is arming, and then will flash slowly until the vehicle is disarmed.

## 16. Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light — If Equipped



Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to

overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety

of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle, to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

### CAUTION!

The TPMS has been optimized for the original equipment tires and wheels. TPMS pressures and warning have been established for the tire size equipped on your vehicle. Undesirable system operation or sensor damage may result when using replacement equipment that is not of the same size, type, and/or style. Aftermarket wheels can cause sensor damage. Using aftermarket tire sealants may

*(Continued)*

### CAUTION! *(Continued)*

cause the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor to become inoperable. After using an aftermarket tire sealant it is recommended that you take your vehicle to an authorized dealership to have your sensor function checked.

**NOTE:** The TPMS telltale is also accompanied by a “Low Tire” message in the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) screen indicating “Low Tire” for EVIC enabled clusters.

#### 17. *Front Fog Light Indicator — If Equipped*



This indicator will illuminate when the front fog lights are on.

### 18. *Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID)*

The EVIC/DID features a driver-interactive display that is located in the instrument cluster. For further information, refer to “Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC” OR “/Driver Information Display (DID)” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel.”

### 19. *Shift Lever Indicator*

The Shift Lever Indicator is self-contained within the instrument cluster. It displays the gear position of the automatic transmission.

**NOTE:** The highest available transmission gear is displayed in the lower right corner of the EVIC/DID whenever the Electronic Range Select (ERS) feature is active. Use the +/- selector on the shift lever to activate ERS. Refer to “Automatic Transmission” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

### 20. *Driver Information Display (DID) Menu*

The Driver Information Display (DID) features a driver-interactive display that is located in the instrument cluster. For further information, refer to “Driver Information Display (DID)” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel.”

### 21. *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF Indicator Light — If Equipped*



This light indicates the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is off.

### 22. *TOW/HAUL*



The TOW HAUL button is located on the center stack upper switch bank. This light will illuminate when TOW HAUL mode is selected.

### 23. *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Activation/ Malfunction Indicator Light — If Equipped*



The “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” in the instrument cluster will come on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON/RUN position. It should go out with the engine running. If the “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” comes on continuously with the engine running, a malfunction has been detected in the ESC system. If this light remains on after several ignition cycles, and the vehicle has been driven several miles (kilometers) at speeds greater than 30 mph (48 km/h), see your authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the problem diagnosed and corrected.

#### NOTE:

- The “ESC Off Indicator Light” and the “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” come on momentarily each time the ignition switch is turned to ON/RUN.
- Each time the ignition is turned to ON/RUN, the ESC system will be ON, even if it was turned off previously.
- The ESC system will make buzzing or clicking sounds when it is active. This is normal; the sounds will stop when ESC becomes inactive following the maneuver that caused the ESC activation.

### 24. *Temperature Gauge*

The temperature gauge shows engine coolant temperature. Any reading within the normal range indicates that the engine cooling system is operating satisfactorily.

The gauge pointer will likely indicate a higher temperature when driving in hot weather, up mountain grades, or when towing a trailer. It should not be allowed to exceed the upper limits of the normal operating range.

### CAUTION!

Driving with a hot engine cooling system could damage your vehicle. If the temperature gauge reads "H" pull over and stop the vehicle. Idle the vehicle with the air conditioner turned off until the pointer drops back into the normal range. If the pointer remains on the "H" and you hear continuous chimes, turn the engine off immediately and call an authorized dealer for service.

### WARNING!

A hot engine cooling system is dangerous. You or others could be badly burned by steam or boiling coolant. You may want to call an authorized dealer for service if your vehicle overheats. If you decide to look under the hood yourself, see "Maintaining Your Vehicle." Follow the warnings under the "Cooling System Pressure Cap" paragraph.

4

#### 25. *Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) Light*



This light informs you of a problem with the Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) system. The light will come on when the ignition is first turned ON and remain on briefly as a bulb check. If the light does not come on during starting, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

If a problem is detected, the light will come on while the engine is running. Cycle the ignition key when the vehicle has completely stopped and the shift lever is placed in the PARK position. The light should turn off.

If the light remains lit with the engine running, your vehicle will usually be drivable. However, see an authorized dealer for service as soon as possible. If the light is flashing when the engine is running, immediate service is required. You may experience reduced performance, an elevated/rough idle or engine stall and your vehicle may require towing.

#### 26. 4 LOW — *If Equipped*


 A square indicator light icon with a white background. The number "4" is positioned above the word "LOW", both in a bold, black, sans-serif font.

This light alerts the driver that the vehicle is in the four-wheel drive LOW mode. The front and rear driveshafts are mechanically locked together forcing the front and rear wheels to

rotate at the same speed. Low range provides a greater gear reduction ratio to provide increased torque at the wheels.

For further information on four-wheel drive operation and proper use, refer to “Four-Wheel Drive Operation — If Equipped” in “Starting And Operating.”

#### 27. 4WD AUTO Indicator Light — *If Equipped*


 A square indicator light icon with a white background. The text "4WD" is positioned above "AUTO", both in a bold, black, sans-serif font.

This light alerts the driver that the vehicle is in the four-wheel drive auto mode, and the front axle is engaged, but the vehicle’s power is sent to the rear wheels. Four-wheel drive will be automatically engaged when the vehicle senses a loss of traction.

For further information on four-wheel drive operation and proper use, refer to “Four-Wheel Drive Operation — If Equipped” in “Starting And Operating.”



## 28. 4WD Indicator Light — If Equipped

### 4WD

This light alerts the driver that the vehicle is in the four-wheel drive mode, and the front and rear driveshafts are mechanically locked together forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed.

For further information on four-wheel drive operation and proper use, refer to “Four-Wheel Drive Operation — If Equipped” in “Starting And Operating.”

## ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER (EVIC)

The Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) features a driver-interactive display that is located in the instrument cluster.



0409024167

Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)

The EVIC Menu items consists of the following:

- Speedometer
- Vehicle Info
- Fuel Economy Info
- Trip A
- Trip B
- Stop/Start Info (If Equipped)
- Air Suspension (If Equipped)
- Trailer Tow
- Messages
- Screen Setup
- Vehicle Settings (Not Equipped with a Uconnect® 5.0 & 8.4 radio)

The system allows the driver to select information by pushing the following EVIC Control buttons located on the left side of the steering wheel:



040971549

EVIC Control Buttons

- *UP Arrow Button*



Push and release the UP arrow button to scroll upward through the main menu items.

- *DOWN Arrow Button*



Push and release the DOWN arrow button to scroll downward through the main menu items.

- *RIGHT Arrow Button*



Push and release the RIGHT arrow button to access/select the information screens or sub-menu screens of a main menu item. Push and

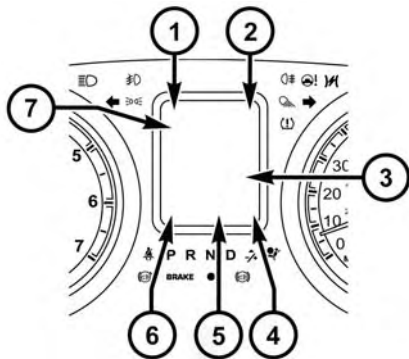
hold the RIGHT arrow button for two seconds to reset displayed/selected features that can be reset.

- *LEFT Arrow Button*



Push and release the LEFT arrow button to return to the main menu, to exit the main menu push and release the UP or DOWN arrow to highlight Turn Menu Off, then push and release the RIGHT arrow.

## Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) Displays — 3.5" Display



0409021772

The EVIC displays are located in the center portion of the cluster and consists of seven sections:

### 1. *Compass Display*

Displays the current direction. Refer to “Compass Settings” under “Customer Programmable Features — Uconnect® 5.0/8.4 Settings” for further information.

### 2. *Temperature Display*

Displays the temperature in degrees Celsius or degrees Fahrenheit.

### 3. *Main Screen*

Displays main menu, sub-menus, settings.

### 4. *EVIC White Telltales*

### 5. *EVIC Amber Telltales*

### 6. *EVIC Red Telltales*

### 7. *Audio/Phone Information And Sub-menu Information*

Whenever there are sub-menus available, the position within the sub-menu is shown here.

The main display area will normally display the main menu or the screens of a selected feature of the main menu. The main display area also displays “pop up” messages that consist of approximately 60 possible warning or information messages. These pop up messages fall into several categories:

- *Five Second Stored Messages*

When the appropriate conditions occur, this type of message takes control of the main display area for five seconds and then returns to the previous screen. Most of the messages of this type are then stored (as long as the condition that activated it remains active) and can be reviewed from the “Messages” main menu item. As long as there is a stored message, an “i” will be displayed in

the EVIC’s compass/outside temp line. Examples of this message type are “Right Front Turn Signal Lamp Out” and “Low Tire Pressure.”

- *Unstored Messages*

This message type is displayed indefinitely or until the condition that activated the message is cleared. Examples of this message type are “Turn Signal On” (if a turn signal is left on) and “Lights On” (if driver leaves the vehicle).

- *Unstored Messages Until RUN*

These messages deal primarily with the Remote Start feature. This message type is displayed until the ignition is in the RUN state. Examples of this message type are “Remote Start Aborted - Door Ajar” and “Press Brake Pedal and Push Button to Start.”

- *Five Second Unstored Messages*

When the appropriate conditions occur, this type of message takes control of the main display area for five seconds and then returns to the previous screen. An example of this message type is “Automatic High Beams On.”

### **Oil Life Reset**

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine oil change indicator system. The “Oil Change Required” message will display for approximately 10 seconds after a single chime has sounded, to indicate the next scheduled oil change interval. The engine oil change indicator system is duty cycle based, which means the engine oil change interval may fluctuate, dependent upon your personal driving style.

**NOTE:** Use the steering wheel controls for the following procedure(s)

### Vehicles Equipped With Passive Entry

1. Without pushing the brake pedal, push the ENGINE START/STOP button and cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position (do not start the engine).
2. Push and release the DOWN arrow button to scroll downward through the main menu to “Vehicle Info.”
3. Push and release the RIGHT arrow button to access the “Oil Life” screen.
4. Push and hold the RIGHT arrow button for one second to access the “Oil Life Reset” screen.
5. Push and release the DOWN arrow button to select “Yes,” then push and release the RIGHT arrow button to select reset of the Oil Life.
6. Push and release the UP arrow button to exit the EVIC screen.

### Vehicles Not Equipped With Passive Entry

1. Without pushing the brake pedal, cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position (do not start the engine).
2. Push and release the DOWN arrow button to scroll downward through the main menu to “Vehicle Info.”
3. Push and release the RIGHT arrow button to access the “Oil Life” screen.
4. Push and hold the RIGHT arrow button for one second to access the “Oil Life Reset” screen.
5. Push and release the DOWN arrow button to select “Yes,” then push and release the RIGHT arrow button to select reset of the Oil Life.
6. Push and release the UP arrow button to exit the EVIC screen.

**NOTE:** If the indicator message illuminates when you start the vehicle, the oil change indicator system did not reset. If necessary, repeat this procedure.

### EVIC Messages

- Front Seatbelts Unbuckled
- Driver Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Passenger Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Service Airbag System
- Traction Control Off
- Washer Fluid Low
- Oil Pressure Low
- Oil Change Due
- Fuel Low
- Service Antilock Brake System

## 222 UNDERSTANDING YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL

- Service Electronic Throttle Control
- Service Power Steering
- Cruise Off
- Cruise Ready
- Cruise Set To XXX MPH
- Tire Pressure Screen With Low Tire(s) “Inflate Tire to XX”
- Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS)
- Service Tire Pressure System
- Parking Brake Engaged
- Brake Fluid Low
- Service Electronic Braking System
- Engine Temperature Hot
- Battery Voltage Low
- Service Electronic Throttle Control
- Lights On
- Right Turn Signal Light Out
- Left Turn Signal Light Out
- Turn Signal On
- Sound Horn with Remote Lock: Off; 1st Press; 2nd Press
- Vehicle Not in Park
- Key in Ignition
- Key in Ignition Lights On
- Remote Start Active Key to Run
- Remote Start Active Push Start Button



- Remote Start Aborted Fuel Low
- Remote Start Aborted Too Cold
- Remote Start Aborted Door Open
- Remote Start Aborted Hood Open
- Remote Start Aborted Trunk Open
- Remote Start Aborted Time Expired
- Remote Start Disabled Start to Reset
- Service Airbag System
- Service Airbag Warning Light
- Driver Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Passenger Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Front Seatbelts Unbuckled
- Door Open
- Doors Open
- Gear Not Available
- Shift Not Allowed
- Shift to Neutral then Drive or Reverse
- Automatic Unavailable Use Autostick Service Req.
- Transmission Getting Hot Press Brake
- Trans. Hot Stop Safely Shift to Park Wait to Cool
- Transmission Cool Ready to Drive
- Trailer Brake Disconnected
- Service Transmission
- Service Shifter
- Engage Park Brake to Prevent Rolling
- Transmission Too cold Idle with Engine On

- Washer Fluid Low
- Autostop Duration – If Equipped

The Reconfigurable Telltales section is divided into the white telltales area on the right, yellow telltales in the middle, and red telltales on the left.

### **EVIC Red Telltales**

This area will show reconfigurable red telltales. These telltales include:

- *Door Ajar*



This light will turn on to indicate that one or more doors may be ajar.

- *Oil Pressure Warning Light*



This telltale indicates low engine oil pressure. If the light turns on while driving, stop the vehicle and shut off the engine as soon as possible. A chime will sound when this light turns on.

Do not operate the vehicle until the cause is corrected. This light does not show how much oil is in the engine. The engine oil level must be checked under the hood.

- *Oil Temperature Warning Light*



This telltale indicates engine oil temperature is high. If the light turns on while driving, stop the vehicle and shut off the engine as soon as possible.

- *Charging System Light*



This light shows the status of the electrical charging system. If the light stays on or comes on while driving, turn off some of the vehicle's non-essential electrical devices or increase engine speed (if at idle). If the charging system light remains on, it means that the vehicle is experiencing a problem with the charging system. **OBTAIN SERVICE IMMEDIATELY.** See an authorized dealer.

Refer to "Jump Starting Procedures" in "What To Do In Emergencies" if jump starting is required

- *Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) Light.*



This light informs you of a problem with the Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) system. The light will come on when the ignition is first turned ON and remain on briefly as a bulb

check. If the light does not come on during starting, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

If a problem is detected, the light will come on while the engine is running. Cycle the ignition key when the vehicle has completely stopped and the shift lever is placed in the PARK position. The light should turn off.

If the light remains lit with the engine running, your vehicle will usually be drivable. However, see an authorized dealer for service as soon as possible. If the light is flashing when the engine is running, immediate service is required. You may experience reduced performance, an elevated/rough idle or engine stall and your vehicle may require towing.

- *Engine Temperature Warning Light*



This light warns of an overheated engine condition. As temperatures rise and the gauge approaches **H**, this indicator will illuminate and a single chime will sound after reaching a set threshold. Further overheating will cause the temperature gauge to pass **H**, a continuous chime will occur until the engine is allowed to cool.

If the light turns on while driving, safely pull over and stop the vehicle. If the A/C system is on, turn it off. Also, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL and idle the vehicle. If the temperature reading does not return to normal, turn the engine off immediately and call for service. Refer to “If Your Engine Overheats” in “What To Do In Emergencies” for further information.

**NOTE:** When the transmission is shifted to Neutral, activate the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

- *Electric Power Steering Malfunction Warning Light*



This telltale is on when the Electric Power Steering is not operating and needs service.

- *Trailer Brake Disconnected Warning Light*



This telltale is on when the Trailer Brake has been disconnected.

## EVIC Yellow Telltales

This area will show reconfigurable yellow caution telltales. These telltales include:

- *Low Fuel Telltale*



When the fuel level reaches approximately 3.0 gal (11.0 L), this light will turn on, and remain on until fuel is added.

- *Windshield Washer Fluid Low Indicator*



This telltale will turn on to indicate the windshield washer fluid is low.

- *Low Coolant Level Indicator*



This telltale will turn on to indicate the vehicle coolant level is low.

- *Transmission Temperature Warning Telltale*



This telltale indicates that the transmission fluid temperature is running hot. This may occur with severe usage, such as trailer towing. If this telltale turns on, safely pull over and stop the vehicle. Then, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL and run the engine at idle or faster until the light turns off.

### CAUTION!

Continuous driving with the Transmission Temperature Warning Light illuminated will eventually cause severe transmission damage or transmission failure.

### WARNING!

If you continue operating the vehicle when the Transmission Temperature Warning Light is illuminated you could cause the fluid to boil over, come in contact with hot engine or exhaust components and cause a fire.

- *Loose Fuel Filler Cap*



This telltale will turn on to indicate that the fuel filler cap may be loose.

## EVIC White Telltales

- *Electronic Speed Control ON*



This light will turn on when the electronic speed control is ON. Refer to “Electronic Speed Control” in “Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle” for further information.

- *Electronic Speed Control SET*



This light will turn on when the electronic speed control is SET. Refer to “Electronic Speed Control” in “Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle” for further information.

- *Hill Descent Control – If equipped*



This indicator will illuminate when Hill Descent Control (HDC) has been selected using the Hill Descent Control Switch. Refer to “Electronic Brake Control” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

## EVIC Selectable Menu Items

Push and release the UP or DOWN arrow buttons until the desired Selectable Menu item is highlighted in the EVIC.

### Speedometer Menu Item

Push and release the UP or DOWN arrow button until the speedometer menu item is highlighted in the EVIC. Push and release the RIGHT arrow button to cycle the display between MPH and km/h.

### Vehicle Info Menu Item

Push and release the UP or DOWN arrow button(s) until the Vehicle Info menu item is highlighted in the EVIC. Push and release the RIGHT arrow button to enter the submenus items of Vehicle Info. follow the directional prompts to access or reset any of the following Vehicle Info submenu items:

- Tire Pressure
- Coolant Temp
- Transmission Temp (Automatic only)
- Oil Temp
- Oil Pressure
- Oil Life
- Battery Voltage
- Gauge Summary
- Engine Hours

### Fuel Economy Menu Item

Push and release the UP or DOWN arrow button until the Fuel Economy menu item is highlighted. Push and Hold the RIGHT arrow button to reset Average Fuel Economy.

- Current Fuel
- Economy gauge
- Average Fuel Economy value
- Range to Empty
- Dual Fuel Tank levels — If Equipped
- Push and release the RIGHT arrow button to display the Fuel Tank Level submenu item. Your EVIC will display the fuel levels of the Front and Rear fuel tanks. The fuel is automatically transferred from the Rear tank to the Front tank based on both tank levels. Fuel transfer is complete once the Front Fuel Level is greater than the Rear Fuel Level.

**Trip A**

Push and release the UP or DOWN arrow button until the Trip A menu item is highlighted in the EVIC. The Trip A information will display the following:

- Distance
- Average MPG
- Elapsed Time

Push and hold RIGHT arrow button to reset all information.

**Trip B**

Push and release Up & Down arrow button until the Trip B menu item is highlighted in the EVIC. The Trip B information will display the following:

- Distance
- Average MPG
- Elapsed Time

Push and hold the RIGHT arrow button to reset all the information.

**Trailer Tow Menu Item**

Push and release the UP or DOWN arrow button until the Trailer Tow menu item is highlighted. Push and release the RIGHT arrow button and the next screen will display the following trailer trip information:

- Trip (trailer specific) Distance: Push and hold the RIGHT arrow button to reset the distance.
- Trailer Brake
  - Output
  - Type
  - Gain



## EVIC Messages

- Front Seatbelts Unbuckled
- Driver Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Passenger Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Service Airbag System
- Traction Control Off
- Washer Fluid Low
- Oil Pressure Low
- Oil Change Due
- Fuel Low
- Service Antilock Brake System
- Service Electronic Throttle Control
- Service Power Steering
- Cruise Off
- Cruise Ready
- Cruise Set To XXX MPH
- Tire Pressure Screen With Low Tire(s) “Inflate Tire to XX”
- Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS)
- Service Tire Pressure System
- Parking Brake Engaged
- Brake Fluid Low
- Service Electronic Braking System
- Engine Temperature Hot
- Battery Voltage Low
- Service Electronic Throttle Control

- Lights On
- Right Turn Signal Light Out
- Left Turn Signal Light Out
- Turn Signal On
- Sound Horn with Remote Lock: Off; 1st Press; 2nd Press
- Vehicle Not in Park
- Key in Ignition
- Key in Ignition Lights On
- Remote Start Active Key to Run
- Remote Start Active Push Start Button
- Remote Start Aborted Fuel Low
- Remote Start Aborted Too Cold
- Remote Start Aborted Door Open
- Remote Start Aborted Hood Open
- Remote Start Aborted Trunk Open
- Remote Start Aborted Time Expired
- Remote Start Disabled Start to Reset
- Service Airbag System
- Service Airbag Warning Light
- Driver Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Passenger Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Front Seatbelts Unbuckled
- Door Open
- Doors Open
- Gear Not Available

- Shift Not Allowed
- Shift to Neutral then Drive or Reverse
- Automatic Unavailable Use Autostick Service Req.
- Transmission Getting Hot Press Brake
- Trans. Hot Stop Safely Shift to Park Wait to Cool
- Transmission Cool Ready to Drive
- Trailer Brake Disconnected
- Service Transmission
- Service Shifter
- Engage Park Brake to Prevent Rolling
- Transmission Too cold Idle with Engine On
- Washer Fluid Low
- Autostop Duration – If Equipped

The Reconfigurable Telltales section is divided into the white telltales area on the right, yellow telltales in the middle, and red telltales on the left.

### **Screen Setup Menu Item**

Push and release the UP or DOWN arrow button until the Screen Setup menu item is highlighted in the EVIC. Push and release the RIGHT arrow button to enter the Screen Setup submenu. The Screen Setup feature allows you to change what information is displayed in the instrument cluster as well as the location that information is displayed.

### **Vehicle Settings Menu Item**

Personal Settings allows the driver to set and recall features when the transmission is in PARK.

Push and release the UP and DOWN button until Settings displays in the EVIC.

Follow the prompts to display and set any of the following Vehicle Settings.

**NOTE:** Your vehicle may or may not be equipped with all the following settings.

- If equipped with a base radio (Non-Touchscreen) Vehicle Settings will be included in the EVIC.
- If equipped with a Touchscreen radio, the Vehicle Settings will be included in the radio head unit.

	Setting Names	Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer)	Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)
1	Language Select	Language	English, Spanish, French, Italian, German, Dutch
2	Units	Units	U.S.; Metric
3	ParkSense	ParkSense	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Notification — Sound Only; Sound &amp; Display</li> <li>• Front Volume — Low; Medium; High</li> <li>• Rear Volume — Low; Medium; High</li> </ul>
4	Tilt Mirror in Reverse	Tilt Mirror in R	On; Off
5	Rain Sensing Wipers	Auto Wipers	On; Off
6	Hill Start Assist	Hill Start Assist	On; Off

	Setting Names	Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Sub-menu Layer)	Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)
7	Headlights Off Delay	Lights Off Delay	0 seconds; 30 seconds; 60 seconds; 90 seconds
8	Illuminated Approach	Lights w/ Unlock	0 seconds; 30 seconds; 60 seconds; 90 seconds
9	Headlights On with Wipers	Lights w/ Wipers	On; Off
10	Automatic Highbeams	Auto Highbeams	On; Off
11	Daytime Running Lights	Daytime Lights	On; Off
12	Flash Lights with Lock	Lights w/ Lock	On; Off
13	Auto Lock Doors	Auto Lock Doors	On; Off
14	Auto Unlock Doors	Auto Unlock Doors	On; Off
15	Sound Horn with Remote Start	Horn w/ Rmt Start	On; Off

	<b>Setting Names</b>	<b>Setting Names Ab- breviated (Left Sub- menu Layer)</b>	<b>Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)</b>
16	Sound Horn with Remote Lock	Horn w/ Rmt Lock	Off; 1st Press; 2nd Press
17	Remote Unlock Sequence	Remote Unlock	Driver Door; All Doors
18	Key Fob Linked to Memory	Key in Memory	On; Off
19	Passive Entry	Passive Entry	On; Off
20	Remote Start Comfort System	Rmt Start Comfort	Off; Remoter Start; All starts
21	Easy Exit Seat	Easy Exit Seat	On; Off
22	Key-off Power Delay	Power Off Delay	Off; 45 seconds; 5 minutes; 10 minutes
23	Air Suspension Display Alerts	Air Susp. Alerts	All; Warnings Only

	<b>Setting Names</b>	<b>Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Sub-menu Layer)</b>	<b>Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)</b>
24	Aero Ride Height Mode	Aero Mode	On; Off
27	Tire/Jack Mode	Tire/Jack Mode	On; Off
28	Transport Mode	Transport Mode	On; Off
29	Wheel Alignment Mode	Wheel Alignment	On; Off
30	Horn w/ Remote Lower	Horn w/ Rmt Lwr	On; Off
31	Lights w/ Remote Lower	Lights w/ Rmt Lwr	On; Off
32	Trailer Select	Trailer Select	Trailer 1; Trailer 2; Trailer 3; Trailer 4
33	Brake Type	Brake Type	Light Electric; Heavy Electric; Light EOH; Heavy EOH

	<b>Setting Names</b>	<b>Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Sub-menu Layer)</b>	<b>Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)</b>
34	Trailer Name	Trailer Name	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Trailer # (# is equal to slot position)</li><li>• Boat</li><li>• Car</li><li>• Cargo</li><li>• Dump</li><li>• Equipment</li><li>• Flatbed</li><li>• Gooseneck</li><li>• Horse</li><li>• Livestock</li><li>• Motorcycle</li><li>• Snowmobile</li><li>• Travel</li><li>• Utility</li><li>• 5th Wheel</li></ul>



	Setting Names	Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Sub-menu Layer)	Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)
35	Compass Variance	Compass Var	1-15 increments of 1
36	Calibrate Compass	Compass Cal	Cancel; Calibrate
37	Fuel Saver Display	Fuel Saver	On; Off

### Turn Menu OFF

Push and release the RIGHT arrow button to exit the main menu.

Push and release any EVIC control button to enter the EVIC main menu again.

## DRIVER INFORMATION DISPLAY (DID)

The Driver Information Display (DID) features a driver-interactive display that is located in the instrument cluster.



040971462

Driver Information Display (DID)

The DID Menu items consists of the following:

- Digital Speedometer
- Vehicle Info
- Fuel Economy Info
- Trip A
- Trip B
- Stop/Start Info (If Equipped)
- Trailer Tow
- Audio
- Stored Messages
- Screen Setup
- Vehicle Settings (Not Equipped with a Uconnect® 5.0 & 8.4 radio)

The system allows the driver to select information by pushing the following buttons mounted on the steering wheel:



DID Controls

040971549

- *UP Arrow Button*



Push and release the UP arrow button to scroll upward through the main menu and submenus.

- *DOWN Arrow Button*



Push and release the DOWN arrow button to scroll downward through the main menu and submenus.

- *RIGHT Arrow Button*



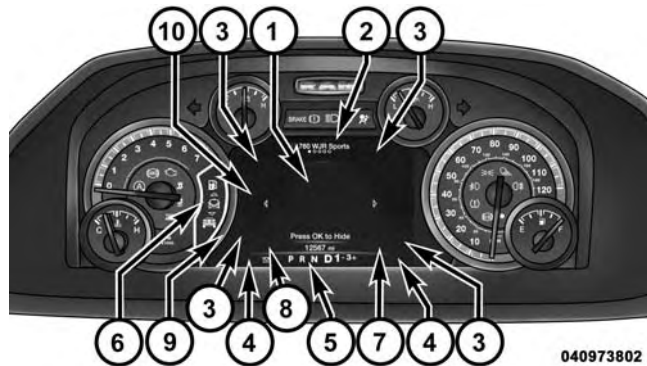
Push and release the RIGHT arrow button to access/select the information screens or sub-menu screens of a main menu item. Push and hold the RIGHT arrow button for two seconds to reset displayed/selected features that can be reset.

- **LEFT Arrow Button**



Push and release the LEFT arrow button to return to the main menu from an info screen or submenu item.

### Driver Information Display (DID) Displays



040973802

The DID displays are located in the center portion of the cluster and consists of eight sections:

1. Main Screen — The inner ring of the display will illuminate in grey under normal conditions, yellow for non critical warnings, red for critical warnings, and white for on demand information.
2. Audio / Phone Information and Sub-menu Information — Whenever there are sub-menus available, the position within the sub-menus is shown here.
3. Selectable Information (Compass, Temp, Range to Empty, Trip A, Trip B, Average MPG, Trailer Trip (distance only), Trailer Brake Gain, Time)
4. Telltales/Indicators
5. Shift Lever Status (PRNDL)
6. Selectable Menu Icons
7. Air Suspension Status – If Equipped

8. 4WD Status
9. Selectable Gauge 2 (Trans Temp, Oil Temp, Oil Life, Trailer Brake, Current MPG)
10. Selectable Gauge 1 (Trans Temp, Oil Temp, Oil Life, Trailer Brake, Current MPG)

The main display area will normally display the main menu or the screens of a selected feature of the main menu. The main display area also displays “pop up” messages that consist of approximately 60 possible warning or information messages. These pop up messages fall into several categories:

- *Five Second Stored Messages*

When the appropriate conditions occur, this type of message takes control of the main display area for five seconds and then returns to the previous screen. Most of the messages of this type are then stored (as long as the condition that activated it remains active) and can be reviewed from the

“Messages” main menu item. As long as there is a stored message, an “i” will be displayed in the DID’s compass/outside temp line. Examples of this message type are “Right Front Turn Signal Lamp Out” and “Low Tire Pressure.”

- *Unstored Messages*

This message type is displayed indefinitely or until the condition that activated the message is cleared. Examples of this message type are “Turn Signal On” (if a turn signal is left on) and “Lights On” (if driver leaves the vehicle).

- *Unstored Messages Until RUN*

These messages deal primarily with the Remote Start feature. This message type is displayed until the ignition is in the RUN state. Examples of this message type are “Remote Start Aborted - Door Ajar” and “Press Brake Pedal and Push Button to Start.”

- *Five Second Unstored Messages*

When the appropriate conditions occur, this type of message takes control of the main display area for five seconds and then returns to the previous screen. An example of this message type is “Automatic High Beams On.”

### **Oil Life Reset**

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine oil change indicator system. The “Oil Change Required” message will flash in the DID display for approximately 10 seconds after a single chime has sounded, to indicate the next scheduled oil change interval. The engine oil change indicator system is duty cycle based, which means the engine oil change interval may fluctuate, dependent upon your personal driving style.

**NOTE:** Use the steering wheel DID controls for the following procedure(s).

### Vehicles Equipped With Passive Entry

1. Without pushing the brake pedal, push the ENGINE START/STOP button and cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position (do not start the engine).
2. Push and release the DOWN arrow button to scroll downward through the main menu to “Vehicle Info.”
3. Push and release the RIGHT arrow button to access the “Oil Life” screen.
4. Push and hold the RIGHT arrow button for one second to access the “Oil Life Reset” screen.
5. Push and release the DOWN arrow button to select “Yes,” then push and release the RIGHT arrow button to select reset of the Oil Life.
6. Push and release the Up arrow button to exit the DID screen.

### Vehicles Not Equipped With Passive Entry

1. Without pushing the brake pedal, cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position (do not start the engine).
2. Push and release the DOWN arrow button to scroll downward through the main menu to “Vehicle Info.”
3. Push and release the RIGHT arrow button to access the “Oil Life” screen.
4. Push and hold the RIGHT arrow button for one second to access the “Oil Life Reset” screen.
5. Push and release the DOWN arrow button to select “Yes,” then push and release the RIGHT arrow button to select reset of the Oil Life.
6. Push and release the Up arrow button to exit the DID screen.

**NOTE:** If the indicator message illuminates when you start the vehicle, the oil change indicator system did not reset. If necessary, repeat this procedure.

### DID Messages

- Front Seatbelts Unbuckled
- Driver Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Passenger Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Service Airbag System
- Traction Control Off
- Washer Fluid Low
- Oil Pressure Low
- Oil Change Due
- Fuel Low
- Service Antilock Brake System

- Service Electronic Throttle Control
- Service Power Steering
- Cruise Off
- Cruise Ready
- Cruise Set To XXX MPH
- Tire Pressure Screen With Low Tire(s) “Inflate Tire to XX”
- Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS)
- Service Tire Pressure System
- Parking Brake Engaged
- Brake Fluid Low
- Service Electronic Braking System
- Engine Temperature Hot
- Battery Voltage Low
- Service Electronic Throttle Control
- Lights On
- Right Turn Signal Light Out
- Left Turn Signal Light Out
- Turn Signal On
- Sound Horn with Remote Lock: Off; 1st Press; 2nd Press
- Vehicle Not in Park
- Key in Ignition
- Key in Ignition Lights On
- Remote Start Active Key to Run
- Remote Start Active Push Start Button



- Remote Start Aborted Fuel Low
- Remote Start Aborted Too Cold
- Remote Start Aborted Door Open
- Remote Start Aborted Hood Open
- Remote Start Aborted Trunk Open
- Remote Start Aborted Time Expired
- Remote Start Disabled Start to Reset
- Service Airbag System
- Service Airbag Warning Light
- Driver Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Passenger Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Front Seatbelts Unbuckled
- Door Open
- Doors Open
- Gear Not Available
- Shift Not Allowed
- Shift to Neutral then Drive or Reverse
- Automatic Unavailable Use Autostick Service Req.
- Transmission Getting Hot Press Brake
- Trans. Hot Stop Safely Shift to Park Wait to Cool
- Transmission Cool Ready to Drive
- Trailer Brake Disconnected
- Service Transmission
- Service Shifter
- Engage Park Brake to Prevent Rolling
- Transmission Too cold Idle with Engine On

- Washer Fluid Low
- Autostop Duration – If Equipped

The Reconfigurable Telltales section is divided into the white telltales area on the right, yellow telltales in the middle, and red telltales on the left.

### **DID Red Telltales**

This area will show reconfigurable red telltales. These telltales include:

- *Door Ajar*



This light will turn on to indicate that one or more doors may be ajar.

- *Oil Pressure Warning Light*



This telltale indicates low engine oil pressure. If the light turns on while driving, stop the vehicle and shut off the engine as soon as possible. A chime will sound when this light turns on.

Do not operate the vehicle until the cause is corrected. This light does not show how much oil is in the engine. The engine oil level must be checked under the hood.

- *Oil Temperature Warning Light*



This telltale indicates engine oil temperature is high. If the light turns on while driving, stop the vehicle and shut off the engine as soon as possible.

- *Charging System Light*



This light shows the status of the electrical charging system. If the light stays on or comes on while driving, turn off some of the vehicle's non-essential electrical devices or increase engine speed (if at idle). If the charging system light remains on, it means that the vehicle is experiencing a problem with the charging system. **OBTAIN SERVICE IMMEDIATELY.** See an authorized dealer.

Refer to "Jump Starting Procedures" in "What To Do In Emergencies." if jump starting is required.

- *Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) Light*



This light informs you of a problem with the Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) system. The light will come on when the ignition is first turned ON and remain on briefly as a bulb

check. If the light does not come on during starting, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

If a problem is detected, the light will come on while the engine is running. Cycle the ignition key when the vehicle has completely stopped and the shift lever is placed in the PARK position. The light should turn off.

If the light remains lit with the engine running, your vehicle will usually be drivable. However, see an authorized dealer for service as soon as possible. If the light is flashing when the engine is running, immediate service is required. You may experience reduced performance, an elevated/rough idle or engine stall and your vehicle may require towing.

- *Engine Temperature Warning Light*



This light warns of an overheated engine condition. As temperatures rise and the gauge approaches **H**, this indicator will illuminate and a single chime will sound after reaching a set threshold. Further overheating will cause the temperature gauge to pass **H**, a continuous chime will occur until the engine is allowed to cool.

If the light turns on while driving, safely pull over and stop the vehicle. If the A/C system is on, turn it off. Also, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL and idle the vehicle. If the temperature reading does not return to normal, turn the engine off immediately and call for service. Refer to “If Your Engine Overheats” in “What To Do In Emergencies” for further information.

**NOTE:** When the transmission is shifted to Neutral, activate the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

- *Trailer Brake Disconnected Warning Light*



This telltale is on when the Trailer Brake has been disconnected.

### **DID Yellow Telltales**

This area will show reconfigurable yellow caution telltales. These telltales include:

- *Low Fuel Telltale*



When the fuel level reaches approximately 3.0 gal (11.0 L), this light will turn on, and remain on until fuel is added.

- *Windshield Washer Fluid Low Indicator*



This telltale will turn on to indicate the windshield washer fluid is low.

- *Low Coolant Level Indicator*



This telltale will turn on to indicate the vehicle coolant level is low.

- *Transmission Temperature Warning Telltale*



This telltale indicates that the transmission fluid temperature is running hot. This may occur with severe usage, such as trailer towing. If this telltale turns on, safely pull over and stop the vehicle. Then, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL and run the engine at idle or faster until the light turns off.

**CAUTION!**

Continuous driving with the Transmission Temperature Warning Light illuminated will eventually cause severe transmission damage or transmission failure.

**WARNING!**

If you continue operating the vehicle when the Transmission Temperature Warning Light is illuminated you could cause the fluid to boil over, come in contact with hot engine or exhaust components and cause a fire.

- *Loose Fuel Filler Cap*



This telltale will turn on to indicate that the fuel filler cap may be loose.

### DID White Telltales

- *Electronic Speed Control Ready*



This light will turn on when the electronic speed control is ON. Refer to “Electronic Speed Control” in “Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle” for further information.

- *Electronic Speed Control SET*



This light will turn on when the electronic speed control is SET. Refer to “Electronic Speed Control” in “Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle” for further information.

- *Hill Descent Control – If equipped*



This indicator will illuminate when Hill Descent Control (HDC) has been selected using the Hill Descent Control Switch. Refer to “Electronic Brake Control” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

### DID Selectable Menu Items

Push and release the UP or DOWN arrow buttons until the desired Selectable Menu icon/title is highlighted in the DID.

### Digital Speedometer



Push and release the UP or DOWN arrow button until the Digital display icon is highlighted in the DID. Push and release the RIGHT arrow button to change the display between mph and km/h.

## Vehicle Info



Push and release the UP or DOWN arrow button until the Vehicle Info icon is highlighted in the DID. Push and release the RIGHT arrow button to enter the submenus items of Vehicle Info. follow the directional prompts to access or reset any of the following Vehicle Info submenu items:

Tire Pressure Information System (3500 Series Heavy Duty Ram Trucks)

A vehicle ICON is displayed with the tire pressure values in each corner of the ICON.

If the Tire Pressure system requires service, "Service Tire Pressure System" is displayed.

- Tire PSI is an information only function and cannot be reset.

- Refer to the "Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS) under "Starting and Operating" for further information.
- Transmission Temperature – Automatic Transmission Only
- Oil Temperature
- Oil Life
- Battery Voltage — If Equipped
- Gauge Summary:
  - Coolant Temperature
  - Transmission Temperature (automatic only)
  - Oil Temperature
  - Oil Pressure
- Engine Hours

## Fuel Economy



Push and release the UP or DOWN arrow button until the Fuel Economy Menu icon/title is highlighted.

Submenu item:

- Range
- Current MPG or L/100 km
- Average MPG or L/100 km
- To reset the following features (Range, Current MPG or L/100 km, or Average MPG / L/100 km), push hold the RIGHT arrow button till features are reset.
- Dual Fuel Tank levels — If Equipped

- Push and release the RIGHT arrow button to display the Fuel Tank Level submenu item. Your DID will display the fuel levels of the Front and Rear fuel tanks.
- The fuel is automatically transferred from the Rear tank to the Front tank based on both tank levels. Fuel transfer is complete once the Front Fuel Level is greater than the Rear Fuel Level.

## Trip A



Push and release the UP or DOWN arrow button until the Trip A icon/title is highlighted in the DID. The Trip A information will display the following:

- Distance MI or km
- Average MPG or L/100 km
- Average MPH or km/h
- Elapsed Time



Hold the RIGHT arrow button to reset all the information.

### Trip B



Push and release the UP or DOWN arrow button until the Trip B icon/title is highlighted in the DID. The Trip B information will display the following:

- Distance MI or km
- Average MPG or L/100 km
- Average MPH or km/h
- Elapsed Time

Hold the RIGHT arrow button to reset all the information.

### Trailer Tow



Push and release the UP or DOWN arrow button until the Trailer Tow icon is highlighted. Push and release the RIGHT arrow button and the next screen will display the following trailer trip information:

- Trailer Trip
- Trailer Brake

### Audio



Push and release the UP or DOWN arrow button until the Audio display icon is highlighted in the DID. Push and release the RIGHT arrow button to display the active source.

## Stored Messages



Push and release the UP arrow button until the Messages display icon is highlighted in the DID. This feature shows the number of stored warning messages. Pushing the RIGHT arrow button will allow you to see what the stored messages are.

## Screen Setup



Push and release the UP or DOWN arrow button until the Screen Setup display icon is highlighted in the DID. Push and release the RIGHT arrow button to enter the Screen Setup submenu. The Screen Setup feature allows you to change what information is displayed in the instrument cluster as well as the location that information is displayed.

	Settings	Options
1	Upper Left	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None</li> <li>• Compass</li> <li>• Outside Temp.</li> <li>• Time</li> <li>• Range</li> <li>• Average MPG</li> <li>• Current MPG</li> <li>• Trip A</li> <li>• Trip B</li> <li>• Trailer Trip</li> <li>• Trailer Brake Gain</li> </ul>

	Settings	Options
2	Upper Right	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None</li> <li>• Compass</li> <li>• Outside Temp.</li> <li>• Time</li> <li>• Range</li> <li>• Average MPG</li> <li>• Current MPG</li> <li>• Trip A</li> <li>• Trip B</li> <li>• Trailer Trip</li> <li>• Trailer Brake Gain</li> </ul>

	Settings	Options
3	Lower Left	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None</li> <li>• Compass</li> <li>• Outside Temp.</li> <li>• Time</li> <li>• Range</li> <li>• Average MPG</li> <li>• Current MPG</li> <li>• Trip A</li> <li>• Trip B</li> <li>• Trailer Trip</li> <li>• Trailer Brake Gain</li> </ul>

	Settings	Options
4	Lower Right	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• None</li><li>• Compass</li><li>• Outside Temp.</li><li>• Time</li><li>• Range</li><li>• Average MPG</li><li>• Current MPG</li><li>• Trip A</li><li>• Trip B</li><li>• Trailer Trip</li><li>• Trailer Brake Gain</li></ul>

	Settings	Options
5	Upper Gauge	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• None</li><li>• Compass</li><li>• Outside Temp.</li><li>• Time</li><li>• Range</li><li>• Average MPG</li><li>• Current MPG</li><li>• Trip A</li><li>• Trip B</li><li>• Trailer Trip</li><li>• Trailer Brake Gain</li></ul>

	Settings	Options
6	Lower Gauge	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None</li> <li>• Compass</li> <li>• Outside Temp.</li> <li>• Time</li> <li>• Range</li> <li>• Average MPG</li> <li>• Current MPG</li> <li>• Trip A</li> <li>• Trip B</li> <li>• Trailer Trip</li> <li>• Trailer Brake Gain</li> </ul>
7	Odometer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 000</li> <li>• 000.0</li> </ul>
8	Restore Defaults	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cancel</li> <li>• OK</li> </ul>

### Vehicles Settings (Customer-Programmable Features)



**NOTE:** This feature is only available on 5.0 and 8.4 Uconnect® Radios

Personal Settings allows the driver to set and recall features when the transmission is in PARK.

Push and release the UP and DOWN button until Personal Settings displays in the DID.

Follow the prompts to display and set any of the following Personal Settings.

**NOTE:** Your vehicle may or may not be equipped with all the following settings.

	Setting Names	Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer)	Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)
1	Language Select	Language	English, Spanish, French, Italian, German, Dutch
2	Units	Units	U.S.; Metric
3	ParkSense	ParkSense	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Notification — Sound Only; Sound &amp; Display</li> <li>• Front Volume — Low; Medium; High</li> <li>• Rear Volume — Low; Medium; High</li> </ul>
4	Tilt Mirror in Reverse	Tilt Mirror in R	On; Off
5	Rain Sensing Wipers	Auto Wipers	On; Off
6	Hill Start Assist	Hill Start Assist	On; Off
7	Headlights Off Delay	Lights Off Delay	0 seconds; 30 seconds; 60 seconds; 90 seconds
8	Illuminated Approach	Lights w/ Unlock	0 seconds; 30 seconds; 60 sec- onds; 90 seconds

	Setting Names	Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer)	Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)
9	Headlights On with Wipers	Lights w/ Wipers	On; Off
10	Automatic Highbeams	Auto Highbeams	On; Off
11	Flash Lights with Lock	Lights w/ Lock	On; Off
12	Auto Lock Doors	Auto Lock Doors	On; Off
13	Auto Unlock Doors	Auto Unlock Doors	On; Off
14	Sound Horn with Remote Start	Horn w/ Rmt Start	On; Off
15	Sound Horn with Remote Lock	Horn w/ Rmt Lock	On; Off
16	Remote Unlock Sequence	Remote Unlock	Driver Door; All Doors
17	Key Fob Linked to Memory	Key in Memory	On; Off
18	Passive Entry	Passive Entry	On; Off
19	Remote Start Comfort System	Rmt Start Comfort	On; Off
20	Easy Exit Seat	Easy Exit Seat	On; Off
21	Key-off Power Delay	Power Off Delay	Off; 45 seconds; 5 minutes; 10 minutes

	Setting Names	Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer)	Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)
22	Commercial Settings	Commercial	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aux Switches</li> <li>• Power Take-Off</li> <li>• PIN Setup</li> </ul>
23	Air Suspension Display Alerts	Air Susp. Alerts	All; Warnings Only
24	Aero Ride Height Mode	Aero Mode	On; Off
25	Tire/Jack Mode	Tire/Jack Mode	On; Off
26	Transport Mode	Transport Mode	On; Off
27	Wheel Alignment Mode	Wheel Alignment	On; Off
28	Horn w/ Remote Lower	Horn w/ Rmt Lwr	On; Off
29	Lights w/ Remote Lower	Lights w/ Rmt Lwr	On; Off
30	Trailer Select	Trailer Select	Trailer 1; Trailer 2; Trailer 3; Trailer 4
31	Brake Type	Brake Type	Light Electric; Heavy Electric; Light EOH; Heavy EOH

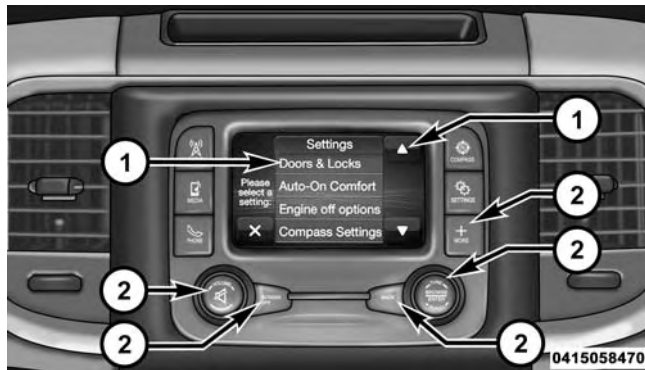


	Setting Names	Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer)	Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)
32	Trailer Name	Trailer Name	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Trailer # (# is equal to slot position)</li> <li>• Boat</li> <li>• Car</li> <li>• Cargo</li> <li>• Dump</li> <li>• Equipment</li> <li>• Flatbed</li> <li>• Gooseneck</li> <li>• Horse</li> <li>• Tag</li> <li>• Motorcycle</li> <li>• Snowmobile</li> <li>• Travel</li> <li>• Utility</li> <li>• 5th Wheel</li> </ul>

	Setting Names	Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer)	Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)
33	Compass Variance	Compass Var	1-15 increments of 1
34	Calibrate Compass	Compass Cal	Cancel; Calibrate
35	Fuel Saver Display	Fuel Saver	On; Off
36	Park Assist Front Chime Volume	Park Assist Front Chime Volume	On; Off
37	Park Assist Rear Chime Volume	Park Assist Rear Chime Volume	On; Off

### Uconnect® SETTINGS

The Uconnect® system uses a combination of buttons on the touchscreen and buttons on the faceplate located on the center of the instrument panel that allows you to access and change the customer programmable features. Many features can vary by vehicle.



**Uconnect® 5.0 Buttons On The Touchscreen And Buttons On The Faceplate**

- 1 — Uconnect® Buttons On The Touchscreen
- 2 — Uconnect® Buttons On The Faceplate



**Uconnect® 8.4A/8.4AN Buttons On The Touchscreen And Buttons On The Faceplate**

- 1 — Uconnect® Buttons On The Touchscreen
- 2 — Uconnect® Buttons On The Faceplate

## Buttons On The Faceplate

Buttons on the faceplate are located below the Uconnect® system in the center of the instrument panel. In addition, there is a Scroll/Enter control knob located on the right side of the Climate Controls in the center of the instrument panel. Turn the control knob to scroll through menus and change settings (i.e., 30, 60, 90), push the center of the control knob one or more times to select or change a setting (i.e., ON, OFF).

Your Uconnect® system may also have Screen Off and Back buttons located below the Uconnect® system.

Push the Screen Off button to turn off the Uconnect® touchscreen. Push the Screen Off button a second time to turn the touchscreen on.

Push the Back button to exit out of a Menu or certain option on the Uconnect® system.

## Buttons On The Touchscreen

Buttons on the touchscreen are accessible on the Uconnect® display.

### Customer Programmable Features — Uconnect® 5.0/8.4 Settings

Push the + MORE button on the faceplate (Uconnect® 5.0) or the “Apps” button on the touchscreen (Uconnect® 8.4), then press the “Settings” button on the touchscreen to display the Setting menu screen. In this mode the Uconnect® system allows you to access programmable features that may be equipped such as Display, Clock, Safety & Driving Assistance, Lights, Doors & Locks, Auto-On Comfort & Remote Start, Engine Off Operation, Compass Settings, Audio, Phone/Bluetooth® and SiriusXM Setup.

**NOTE:** Only one touchscreen area may be selected at a time.

When making a selection, press the button on the touchscreen to enter the desired mode. Once in the desired mode, press and release the preferred setting until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected. Once the setting is complete, either press the “Back Arrow” button on the touchscreen or the BACK button on the faceplate to return to the previous menu or press the “X” button on the touchscreen to close out of the settings screen. Pressing the “Up” or “Down” arrow buttons on the touchscreen on the right side of the screen will allow you to toggle up or down through the available settings.

### *Display*

After pressing the “Display” button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available.

- *Display Mode*

When in this display you may select one of the auto display settings. To change Mode status, select from “Day,” “Night” or “Auto” until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected. Then press the arrow back button on the touchscreen.

**NOTE:** When Day or Night is selected for the Display Mode, the usage of the Parade Mode feature will cause the radio to activate the Display Brightness Day control even though the headlights are on.

- *Display Brightness With Headlights ON*

When in this display, you may select the brightness with the headlights on. Adjust the brightness with the “+” and “-” setting buttons on the touchscreen or by selecting any point on the scale between the “+” and “-” buttons on the touchscreen. Then press the arrow back button on the touchscreen.

**NOTE:** To make changes to the “Display Brightness with Headlights ON” setting, the headlights must be on and the interior dimmer switch must not be in the “party” or “parade” positions.

- *Display Brightness With Headlights OFF*

When in this display, you may select the brightness with the headlights off. Adjust the brightness with the “+” and “-” setting buttons on the touchscreen or by selecting any

point on the scale between the “+” and “-” buttons on the touchscreen. Then press the arrow back button on the touchscreen.

**NOTE:** To make changes to the “Display Brightness with Headlights OFF” setting, the headlights must be off and the interior dimmer switch must not be in the “party” or “parade” positions.

- *Set Theme*

This feature will allow you to choose a background theme for the display screen. The theme will change the background color, highlight color, and button color of the display screen. Press the “Set Theme” button on the touchscreen and select one of the pre-configured themes available.

- *Set Language*

When in this display, you may select one of multiple languages (English / Français / Español) for all display nomenclature, including the trip functions and the navigation system (if equipped). Press the Set Language button on the touchscreen, then press the desired language button on the touchscreen until a check-mark appears next to the language, showing that setting has been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- *Units*

When in this display, you may select to have the Driver Information Display (DID), odometer, and navigation system (if equipped) changed between US and Metric units of measure. Press “US” or “Metric” until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- *Touchscreen Beep*

When in this display, you may turn on or shut off the sound heard when a touchscreen button (button on the touchscreen) is pressed. Press the “Touchscreen Beep” button on the touchscreen until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- *Navigation Turn-By-Turn In Cluster — If Equipped*

When this feature is selected, the turn-by-turn directions will appear in the display as the vehicle approaches a designated turn within a programmed route. To make your selection, press the “Navigation Turn-By-Turn In Cluster” button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- *Controls Screen Time-Out — If Equipped*

When this feature is selected, the Controls Screen will stay open for five seconds before the screen times out. With the feature deselected, the screen will stay open until it is manually closed. Press the “Controls Screen Time-Out” button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- *Fuel Saver Display — If Equipped*

This feature will allow you to enable fuel saver mode and will be displayed in the DID. Press the “Fuel Saver Display” button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

### *Clock*

After pressing the “Clock” button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Sync Time With GPS*

This feature will allow you to automatically have the radio set the time. To change the Sync Time setting, press the “Sync with GPS Time” button on the touchscreen until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu, or push the back button on the faceplate.

- *Set Time Hours*

This feature will allow you to adjust the hours. The “Sync with GPS Time” button on the touchscreen must be unchecked. To make your selection, press the “+” or “-” buttons on the touchscreen to adjust the hours up or down. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to



return to the previous menu or press the “X” button on the touchscreen to close out of the settings screen.

- *Set Time Minutes*

This feature will allow you to adjust the minutes. The “Sync with GPS Time” button on the touchscreen must be unchecked. To make your selection, press the “+” or “-” buttons on the touchscreen to adjust the minutes up or down. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu or press the “X” button on the touchscreen to close out of the settings screen.

- *Time Format*

This feature will allow you to select the time format display setting. Press the “Time Format” button on the touchscreen until a check-mark appears next to the 12hrs or 24hrs setting, showing that setting has been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu, or push the back button on the faceplate.

- *Show Time In Status Bar — If Equipped*

This feature will allow you to turn on or shut off the digital clock in the status bar. To change the Show Time Status setting press the “Show Time in Status Bar” button on the touchscreen until a check-mark appears next to setting, indicating that the setting has been selected. To return to the previous menu, press the back arrow button on the touchscreen, or push the back button on the faceplate.

### *Safety & Driving Assistance*

After pressing the “Safety & Driving Assistance” button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available.

- *Tilt Mirrors In Reverse*

When this feature is selected, the outside sideview mirrors will tilt downward when the ignition is in the RUN position and the transmission shift lever is in the REVERSE position. The mirrors will move back to their previous position when the transmission is shifted out of REVERSE. To make your selection, press the “Tilt Mirrors In Reverse” button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to setting, showing that setting has been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- *ParkView® Backup Camera*

Your vehicle may be equipped with the ParkView® Rear Back Up Camera that allows you to see an on-screen image of the rear surroundings of your vehicle whenever the shift lever is put into REVERSE. The image will be displayed on the radio touchscreen display along with a caution note to “check entire surroundings” across the

top of the screen. After five seconds, this note will disappear. The ParkView® camera is located on the rear of the vehicle above the rear License plate. To make your selection, press the “ParkView® Backup Camera” button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to the setting, indicating that the setting had been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- *ParkView® Camera Delay*

When this feature is enabled, it will allow the ParkView Backup Camera display to remain on while in drive for up to 10 seconds, or 8 mph. To make your selection, press the “ParkView® Backup Camera Delay” button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to the setting, indicating that the setting had been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- *ParkView® Backup Camera Active Guidelines*

Your vehicle may be equipped with the ParkView® Rear Back Up Camera Active Guidelines that allows you to see Active (Dynamic) Guidelines which deflect with steering wheel angle over the ParkView Back up Camera display whenever the shift lever is put into REVERSE. The image will be displayed on the radio touchscreen display along with a caution note to “check entire surroundings” across the top of the screen. After five seconds, this note will disappear. To make your selection, press the “ParkView® Backup Camera Active Guidelines” button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to the setting, indicating that the setting had been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- *Rain Sensing Auto Wipers*

When this feature is selected, the system will automatically activate the windshield wipers if it senses moisture on the windshield. To make your selection, press the “Rain Sensing” button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- *Hill Start Assist — If Equipped*

When this feature is selected, the Hill Start Assist (HSA) system is active. Refer to “Electronic Brake Control System” in “Starting And Operating” for system function and operating information. To make your selection, press the “Hill Start Assist” button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that the setting has been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

## Lights

After pressing the “Lights” button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Headlight Illumination On Approach*

When this feature is selected, the headlights will activate and remain on for 0, 30, 60, or 90 seconds when the doors are unlocked with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. To change the Illuminated Approach status, press the “+” or “-” button on the touchscreen to select your desired time interval. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- *Headlights With Wipers — If Equipped*

When this feature is selected, and the headlight switch is in the AUTO position, the headlights will turn on approximately 10 seconds after the wipers are turned on. The headlights will also turn off when the wipers are

turned off, if they were turned on by this feature. To make your selection, press the “Headlights With Wipers” button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- *Auto Dim High Beams — If Equipped*

When this feature is selected, the high beam headlights will deactivate automatically under certain conditions. To make your selection, press the “Auto High Beams” button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu. Refer to “Automatic High Beam — If Equipped” in “Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle” for further information.

- *Flash Lamps With Lock*

When this feature is selected, the exterior lights will flash when the doors are locked or unlocked with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. This feature may be selected with or without the Sound Horn on Lock feature selected. To make your selection, press the “Flash Lamps with Lock” button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

### *Doors & Locks*

After pressing the “Doors & Locks” button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Auto Unlock On Exit*

When this feature is selected, all doors will unlock when the vehicle is stopped, the transmission is in the PARK or

NEUTRAL position and the driver’s door is opened. To make your selection, press the “Auto Unlock On Exit” button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that the setting has been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- *Sound Horn With Lock*

When this feature is selected, the horn will sound when the door locks are activated. To make your selection, press the “Sound Horn With Lock” button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that the setting has been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- *Sound Horn With Remote Start*

When this feature is selected, the horn will sound when the remote start is activated. To make your selection, press the “Sound Horn With Remote Start” button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that the setting has been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- *1st Push Of Key Fob Unlocks*

When 1st Push Of Key Fob Unlocks is selected, only the driver’s door will unlock on the first push of the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter UNLOCK button. When 1st Push Of Key Fob Unlocks is selected, you must push the RKE transmitter UNLOCK button twice to unlock the passenger’s doors. When Unlock All Doors On 1st Push is selected, all of the doors will unlock on the first push of the RKE transmitter UNLOCK button.

**NOTE:** If the vehicle is programmed 1st Push Of Key Fob Unlocks, all doors will unlock no matter which Passive Entry equipped door handle is grasped. If 1st Push Of Key Fob Unlocks is programmed, only the driver’s door will unlock when the driver’s door is grasped. With Passive Entry, if 1st Push Of Key Fob Unlocks is programmed, pressing the handle more than once will only result in the driver’s door opening. If Driver’s Door first is selected, once the driver door is opened, the interior door lock/unlock switch can be used to unlock all doors (or use RKE transmitter).

- *Passive Entry*

This feature allows you to lock and unlock the vehicles door(s) without having to push the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter LOCK or UNLOCK buttons. To make your selection, press the “Passive Entry” button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that the setting has been selected. Press

the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu. Refer to “Keyless Enter-N-Go™” in “Things To Know Before Starting Your Vehicle.”

- *Personal Settings Linked to Key Fob — If Equipped*

This feature provides automatic recall of all settings stored to a memory location (driver’s seat, exterior mirrors, steering column position and radio station presets) to enhance driver mobility when entering and exiting the vehicle. To make your selection, press the “Personal Settings Linked to Key Fob” button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that the setting has been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

**NOTE:** The seat will return to the memorized seat location (if Personal Settings Linked to Key Fob is set to ON) when the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is used to unlock the door. Refer to “Driver Memory Seat” in “Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle” for further information.

- *Auto Comfort Systems — If Equipped*

After pressing the “Auto-On Comfort & Remote Start” button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Horn With Remote Start*

When this feature is selected, the horn will sound when the remote start is activated. To make your selection, press the “Sound Horn With Remote Start” button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to the

setting, showing that the setting has been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- ***Auto-On Driver Heated/Ventilated Seat & Steering Wheel With Vehicle Start — If Equipped***

When this feature is selected the driver's heated seat and heated steering wheel will automatically turn ON when temperatures are below 40° F (4.4° C). When temperatures are above 80° F (26.7° C) the driver vented seat will turn ON. To make your selection, press the "Auto Heated Seats" button on the touchscreen, then select either "Off," "Remote Start" or "All Starts" until a check-mark appears next to setting, showing that setting has been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

### *Engine Off Options*

After pressing the "Engine Off Options" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- ***Easy Exit Seats — If Equipped***

When this feature is selected, the Driver's seat will automatically move rearward once the engine is shut off. To make your selection, press the "Easy Exit Seats" button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to setting, showing that setting has been selected. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- ***Engine Off Power Delay***

When this feature is selected, the power window switches, radio, Uconnect® Phone system (if equipped), DVD video system (if equipped), power sunroof (if equipped), and power outlets will remain active for up to 10 minutes after the ignition is cycled to OFF. Opening



either front door will cancel this feature. To change the Engine Off Power Delay status, press the “0 seconds,” “45 seconds,” “5 minutes” or “10 minutes” button on the touchscreen. Then press the back arrow button on the touchscreen.

- *Headlight Off Delay*

When this feature is selected, the driver can choose to have the headlights remain on for 0, 30, 60, or 90 seconds when exiting the vehicle. To change the Headlight Off Delay status, press the “+” or “-” button on the touchscreen to select your desired time interval. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

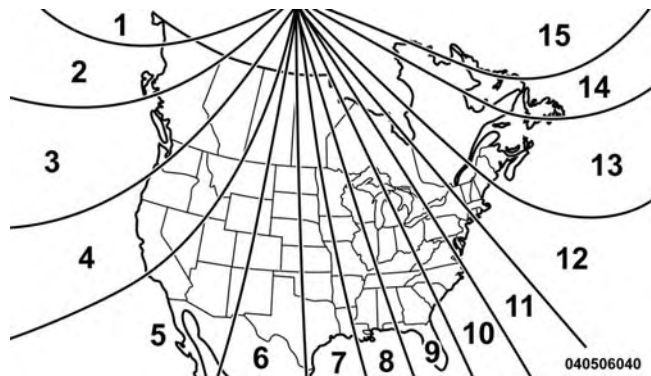
### *Compass Settings — Uconnect® 5.0*

After pressing the “Compass Settings” button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Variance*

Compass Variance is the difference between Magnetic North and Geographic North. To compensate for the differences the variance should be set for the zone where the vehicle is driven, per the zone map. Once properly set, the compass will automatically compensate for the differences and provide the most accurate compass heading.

**NOTE:** Keep magnetic materials, such as iPod's®, Mobile Phones, Laptops and Radar Detectors, away from the top of the instrument panel where the compass module is located. These materials can cause interference with the compass sensor, and it may give false readings.



Compass Variance Map

- *Perform Compass Calibration*

Push the Compass button on the faceplate, then press the "Calibration" button on the touchscreen to change this setting. This compass is self-calibrating, which eliminates the need to manually reset the compass. When the vehicle is new, the compass may appear erratic and the Driver Information Display (DID) will display CAL until the compass is calibrated. You may also calibrate the compass by pressing the "ON" button on the touchscreen and completing one or more 360-degree turns (in an area free from large metal or metallic objects) until the CAL indicator displayed in the DID turns off. The compass will now function normally.

## Audio

After pressing the “Audio” button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Balance/Fade*

This feature allows you to adjust the Balance and Fade settings. Press and drag the speaker icon or use the arrows to adjust, tap the “C” icon to readjust to the center. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- *Equalizer*

When in this display you may adjust the Bass, Mid and Treble settings. Adjust the settings with the “+” and “-” buttons on the touchscreen or by selecting any point on the scale between the “+” and “-” buttons on the touchscreen. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- *Speed Adjusted Volume*

This feature increases or decreases volume relative to vehicle speed. To change the Speed Adjusted Volume press the “Speed Adjusted Volume” button on the touchscreen and select from “Off,” “1,” “2” or “3” buttons on the touchscreen. Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- *Surround Sound — If Equipped*

This feature provides simulated surround sound mode. To make your selection, press the “Surround Sound” button on the touchscreen, select “On” or “Off.” Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- *AUX Volume Offset — If Equipped*

This feature provides the ability to tune the audio level for portable devices connected through the AUX input. To make your selection, press the “AUX Volume Offset” button on the touchscreen, select “On” or “Off.” Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- *Loudness — If Equipped*

This feature improves sound quality at lower volumes. To make your selection, press the “Loudness” button on the touchscreen, select “On” or “Off.” Press the back arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

### *Phone/Bluetooth®*

After pressing the “Phone/Bluetooth®” button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Paired Phones*

This feature shows which phones are paired to the Phone/Bluetooth® system. For further information, refer to the Uconnect® Supplement Manual.

- *Paired Audio Sources*

This feature shows which audio devices are paired to the Phone/Bluetooth® system. For further information, refer to the Uconnect® Supplement Manual.

### *Trailer Brake*

After pressing the “Trailer Brake” button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Trailer Select*

When this feature is selected, the Trailer Type can be selected between “Trailer 1,” “Trailer 2,” “Trailer 3” and “Trailer 4.” To make your selection, scroll up or down until the preferred setting is highlighted, then press and release the SELECT button until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that the setting has been selected.

- *Trailer Brake Type*

When this feature is selected, the Trailer Brake Type can be changed between “Light Electric,” “Heavy Electric,” “Light EOH” and “Heavy EOH.” To make your selection, scroll up or down until the preferred setting is highlighted, then press and release the SELECT button until a

check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that the setting has been selected. Refer to “Integrated Trailer Brake Module” in “Starting And Operating.”

### *SiriusXM Setup — If Equipped*

After pressing the “SiriusXM Setup” button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

- *Channel Skip*

SiriusXM can be programmed to designate a group of channels that are the most desirable to listen to or to exclude undesirable channels while scanning. To make your selection, press the “Channel Skip” button on the touchscreen, select the channels you would like to skip followed by pressing the back arrow button on the touchscreen.

- *Subscription Information*

New vehicle purchasers or lessees will receive a free limited time subscription to SiriusXM Satellite Radio with your radio. Following the expiration of the free services, it will be necessary to access the information on the Subscription Information screen to re-subscribe.

Press the “Subscription Info” button on the touchscreen to access the Subscription Information screen.

Write down the SIRIUS ID numbers for your receiver. To reactivate your service, either call the number listed on the screen or visit the provider online.

**NOTE:** SiriusXM Travel Link is a separate subscription and is available for U.S. residents only.

## **Uconnect® RADIOS — IF EQUIPPED**

For detailed information about your Uconnect® radio, refer to your Uconnect® Supplement Manual.

## **iPod®/USB/MP3 CONTROL — IF EQUIPPED**

Located inside the center console upper lid, this feature allows an iPod® or external USB device to be plugged into the USB port.

iPod® control supports Mini, 4G, Photo, Nano, 5G iPod® and iPhone® devices. Some iPod® software versions may not fully support the iPod® control features. Please visit Apple’s website for software updates.



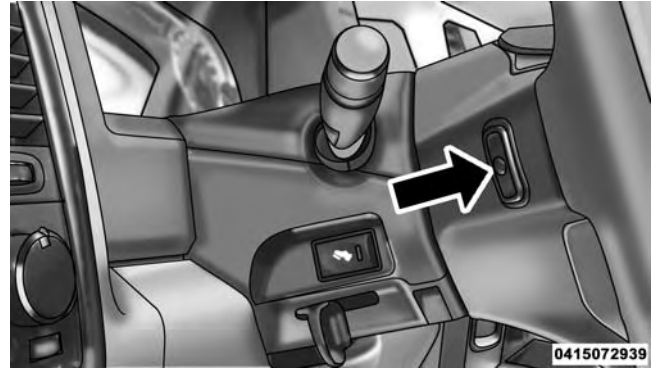
0415045301

### Center Console USB/AUX SD Card Media Hub

For further information, refer to the Uconnect® Supplement Manual or visit [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com).

## STEERING WHEEL AUDIO CONTROLS — IF EQUIPPED

The remote sound system controls are located on the back surface of the steering wheel. Reach behind the wheel to access the switches.



0415072939

### Remote Sound System Controls (Rearview Of Steering Wheel)

The right hand control is a rocker type switch with a push-button in the center. Pushing the top of the switch will increase the volume, and pushing the bottom of the switch will decrease the volume.

The button located in the center of the right hand control will switch modes to Radio, CD or other valid audio sources.

The left hand control is a rocker type switch with a push-button in the center. The function of the left hand control is different depending on which mode you are in.

The following describes the left hand control operation in each mode.

### **Radio Operation**

Pushing the top of the switch will SEEK up for the next listenable station and pushing the bottom of the switch will SEEK down for the next listenable station.

The button located in the center of the left hand control will tune to the next pre-set station that you have programmed in the radio pre-set buttons.

### **CD Player — If Equipped**

Pushing the top of the switch once will go to the next track on the CD. Pressing the bottom of the switch once will go to the beginning of the current track or to the beginning of the previous track if it is within eight seconds after the current track begins to play.

If you push the switch up or down twice it plays the second track, three times, it will play the third, etc.

### **CD/DVD DISC MAINTENANCE**

To keep a CD/DVD in good condition, take the following precautions:

1. Handle the disc by its edge; avoid touching the surface.



2. If the disc is stained, clean the surface with a soft cloth, wiping from center to edge.
3. Do not apply paper or tape to the disc; avoid scratching the disc.
4. Do not use solvents such as benzene, thinner, cleaners, or anti-static sprays.
5. Store the disc in its case after playing.
6. Do not expose the disc to direct sunlight.
7. Do not store the disc where temperatures may become too high.

**NOTE:** If you experience difficulty in playing a particular disc, it may be damaged (e.g., scratched, reflective coating removed, a hair, moisture or dew on the disc) oversized, or have protection encoding. Try a known good disc before considering disc player service.

## **RADIO OPERATION AND MOBILE PHONES**

Under certain conditions, the mobile phone being on in your vehicle can cause erratic or noisy performance from your radio. This condition may be lessened or eliminated by relocating the mobile phone antenna. This condition is not harmful to the radio. If your radio performance does not satisfactorily “clear” by the repositioning of the antenna, it is recommended that the radio volume be turned down or off during mobile phone operation when not using Uconnect® (if equipped).

### **Regulatory And Safety Information**

#### **USA/CANADA**

##### **Exposure to Radio Frequency Radiation**

The radiated output power of the internal wireless radio is far below the FCC radio frequency exposure limits.

Nevertheless, the wireless radio will be used in such a manner that the radio is 20 cm or further from the human body.

The internal wireless radio operates within guidelines found in radio frequency safety standards and recommendations, which reflect the consensus of the scientific community.

The radio manufacturer believes the internal wireless radio is safe for use by consumers. The level of energy emitted is far less than the electromagnetic energy emitted by wireless devices such as mobile phones. However, the use of wireless radios may be restricted in some situations or environments, such as aboard airplanes. If you are unsure of restrictions, you are encouraged to ask for authorization before turning on the wireless radio.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

**NOTE:**

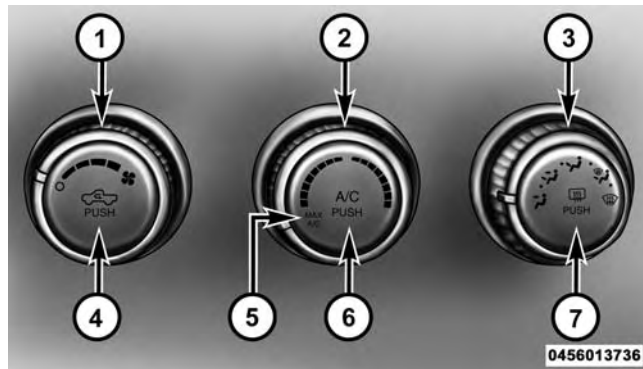
- This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.
- If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio technician for help.

## CLIMATE CONTROLS

The Climate Control System allows you to regulate the temperature, amount, and direction of air circulating throughout the vehicle. The controls are located on the instrument panel below the radio.

### Manual Climate Controls Without Touchscreen — If Equipped

The controls for the manual heating and air conditioning system in this vehicle consist of a series of outer rotary dials and inner push knobs. These comfort controls can be set to obtain desired interior conditions.



Manual Climate Controls

- |                           |                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 — Front Blower          | 5 — MAX A/C                |
| 2 — Temperature Control   | 6 — Air Conditioning (A/C) |
| 3 — MODE Control          | 7 — DEFROST Mode           |
| 4 — RECIRCULATION Control |                            |

## Front Blower Control



045671419

There are four blower speeds. Use this control to regulate the amount of air forced through the system in any mode you select. The blower speed increases as you move the control clockwise from the OFF position.

## Temperature Control



045671420

Use this control to regulate the temperature of the air inside the passenger compartment. Rotating the knob counterclockwise, from top center into the blue area of the scale, indicates cooler temperatures. Rotating the knob clockwise, into the red area, indicates warmer temperatures.

## Air Conditioning Operation



045671422

Push the A/C button to engage the Air Conditioning (A/C). A LED will illuminate when the A/C system is engaged.

## MAX A/C

For maximum cooling, when MAX A/C is selected the A/C is turned on automatically and the air is recirculated.

**NOTE:** A/C cannot be deselected when in MAX A/C position. The LED will blink three times if the A/C button is pushed. If your air conditioning performance seems lower than expected, check the front of the A/C condenser (located in front of the radiator), for an accumulation of dirt or insects. Clean with a gentle water spray from behind the radiator and through the condenser. Fabric front fascia protectors may reduce airflow to the condenser, reducing air conditioning performance.

### Mode Control (Air Direction)



045671421

Mode control allows you to choose from several patterns of air distribution. You can select either a primary mode, as identified by the symbols, or a blend of two of these modes. The

closer the control is to a particular mode, the more air distribution you receive from that mode.

### Panel Mode



Air is directed through the outlets in the instrument panel. These outlets can be adjusted to direct airflow.


### Bi-Level Mode




Air is directed through the panel and floor outlets.

**NOTE:** There is a difference in temperature (in any conditions other than full cold or full hot), between the upper and lower outlets for added comfort. The warmer air goes to the floor outlets. This feature gives improved comfort during sunny but cool conditions.

## Floor Mode

 Air is directed through the floor outlets with a small amount through the defrost and side window demist outlets.

## Mix Mode

 Air is directed through the floor, defrost and side window demist outlets. This setting works best in cold or snowy conditions that require extra heat at the windshield. This setting is good for maintaining comfort, while reducing moisture on the windshield.

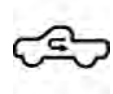
## Defrost Mode

 Air is directed through the windshield and side window demist outlets. Use the DEFROST mode

with maximum blower and warm temperature settings for best windshield and side window defrosting.

**NOTE:** The air conditioning compressor operates in MIX and DEFROST, or a blend of these modes even if the A/C button is not pushed. This dehumidifies the air to help dry the windshield. To improve fuel economy, use these modes only when necessary.

## Recirculation Control

 Push the Recirculation Control button to choose between outside air intake or recirculation of the air inside the vehicle. A LED will illuminate when you are in Recirculation mode. Only use the Recirculation mode to temporarily block out any outside odors, smoke, or dust, and to cool the interior rapidly upon initial start-up in very hot or humid weather.

**NOTE:**

- If the RECIRCULATION button is pushed when the system is in Defrost mode, the Recirculation LED indicator will flash three times and then turn off to indicate Recirculation mode is not allowed.
- Continuous use of the Recirculation mode may make the inside air stuffy and window fogging may occur. Extended use of this mode is not recommended.
- In cold or damp weather, the use of the Recirculation mode will cause windows to fog on the inside because of moisture buildup inside the vehicle. For maximum defogging, select the outside air position.
- The A/C can be deselected manually without disturbing the mode control selection by pushing the A/C button.

**Air Outlets**

The airflow from each of the instrument panel outlets can be adjusted for direction, and turned on or off to control airflow.

**NOTE:** For maximum airflow to the rear, the center instrument panel outlets can be directed toward the rear seat passengers.

**Economy Mode**

If ECONOMY mode is desired, push the A/C button to turn off the LED indicator and the A/C compressor. Rotate the temperature control knob to the desired temperature. Also, make sure to select only Panel, Bi-Level or Floor modes.



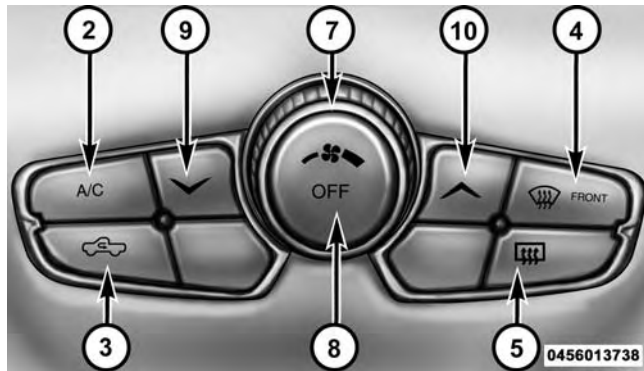
### Stop/Start System — If Equipped

While in an Autostop, the Climate Controls system may automatically adjust airflow to maintain cabin comfort. Customer settings will be maintained upon return to an engine running condition.

### Manual Climate Controls With Touchscreen — If Equipped

#### Buttons On The Faceplate

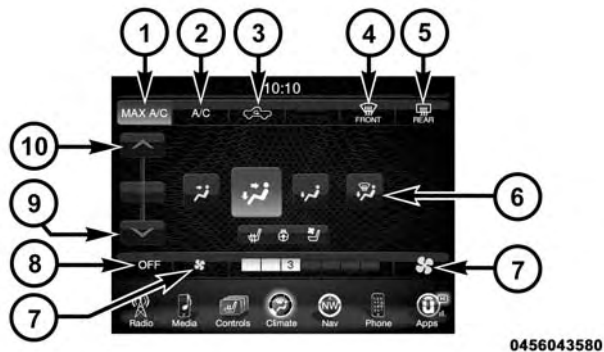
The buttons on the faceplate are located below the radio touchscreen.



Climate Controls — Buttons On The Faceplate

## Buttons On The Touchscreen

Buttons on the touchscreen are accessible on the radio.



Temperature Controls — Buttons On The Touchscreen

## Button Descriptions (Applies To Both Buttons On The Faceplate and Buttons On The Touchscreen)

### 1. MAX A/C Button

Press and release to toggle between MAX A/C and the prior settings. The button on the touchscreen illuminates when MAX A/C is ON. In MAX A/C, the blower level and mode position can be adjusted to desired user settings. Pressing other settings will cause the MAX A/C operation to switch to the prior settings and the MAX A/C indicator will turn off.

### 2. A/C Button

Press and release to change the current setting, the indicator illuminates when A/C is ON. Performing this function again will cause the A/C operation to switch into manual mode and the A/C indicator will turn off.

### 3. *Recirculation Button*

Press and release to change the current setting; the indicator illuminates when ON.

### 4. *Front Defrost Button*

Press and release to change the current airflow setting to Defrost mode. The indicator illuminates when this feature is ON. Air comes from the windshield and side window demist outlets. When the defrost button is selected, the blower level will increase. Use Defrost mode with maximum temperature settings for best windshield and side window defrosting and defogging. Performing this function will cause the ATC to switch into manual mode. If the front defrost mode is turned off the climate system will return the previous setting.

### 5. *Defrost Button*

Press and release this button to turn on the rear window defroster (if equipped) and the heated outside mirrors (if

equipped). An indicator will illuminate when the rear window defroster is on. The rear window defroster automatically turns off after 10 minutes.

#### **CAUTION!**

**Failure to follow these cautions can cause damage to the heating elements:**

- **Use care when washing the inside of the rear window. Do not use abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window. Use a soft cloth and a mild washing solution, wiping parallel to the heating elements. Labels can be peeled off after soaking with warm water.**
- **Do not use scrapers, sharp instruments, or abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window.**
- **Keep all objects a safe distance from the window.**

## 6. Modes

The airflow distribution mode can be adjusted so air comes from the instrument panel outlets, floor outlets, and demist outlets. The Mode settings are as follows:

- *Panel Mode*



Air comes from the outlets in the instrument panel. Each of these outlets can be individually adjusted to direct the flow of air. The air vanes of the center outlets and outboard outlets can be moved up and down or side to side to regulate airflow direction. There is a shut off wheel located below the air vanes to shut off or adjust the amount of airflow from these outlets.

- *Bi-Level Mode*



Air comes from the instrument panel outlets and floor outlets. A slight amount of air is directed through the defrost and side window demister outlets.

**NOTE:** BI-LEVEL mode is designed under comfort conditions to provide cooler air out of the panel outlets and warmer air from the floor outlets.

- *Floor Mode*



Air comes from the floor outlets. A slight amount of air is directed through the defrost and side window demister outlets.

- *Mix Mode*



Air comes from the floor, defrost and side window demister outlets. This mode works best in cold or snowy conditions.

**NOTE:** The air conditioning compressor operates in MIX and DEFROST modes even if the A/C button is not pressed. This dehumidifies the air to help dry the windshield. To improve fuel economy, utilize these modes only when required.

## 7. Blower Control

Blower control is used to regulate the amount of air forced through the climate system. There are seven blower speeds available. Adjusting the blower will cause automatic mode to switch to manual operation. The speeds can be selected using either buttons on the faceplate or buttons on the touchscreen as follows:

### **Blower Control Knob On The Faceplate**

The blower speed increases as you turn the control clockwise from the lowest blower setting. The blower speed decreases as you turn the blower control knob counterclockwise.

### **Buttons On The Touchscreen**

Use the small blower icon to reduce the blower setting and the large blower icon to increase the blower setting. Blower can also be selected by pressing the blower bar area between the icons.

## 8. Climate Control OFF Button

Press and release this button to turn the Climate Control ON/OFF.

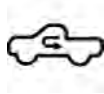
## 9. Temperature Control Down Button

Push the button on the faceplate for cooler temperature settings. On the touchscreen, slide the temperature bar towards the blue arrow button for cooler temperature settings.

## 10. Temperature Control Up Button

Push the button on the faceplate for warmer temperature settings. On the touchscreen, slide the temperature bar towards the blue arrow button for cooler temperature settings.

## Recirculation Control



When outside air contains smoke, odors, or high humidity, or if rapid cooling is desired, you may wish to recirculate interior air by pressing the RECIRCULATION control button.

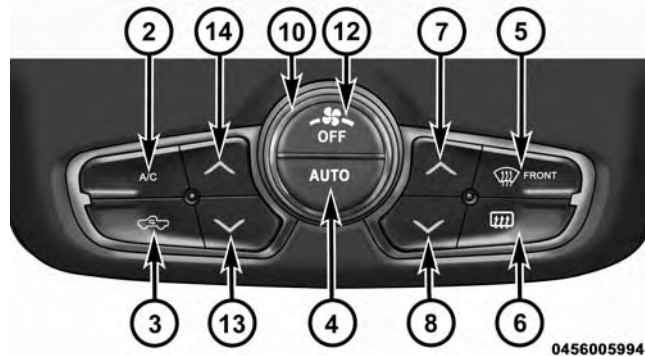
Recirculation mode should only be used temporarily. The recirculation LED will illuminate on the blower control knob when this button is selected. Push the button a second time to turn off the Recirculation mode LED and allow outside air into the vehicle.

**NOTE:** In cold weather, use of Recirculation mode may lead to excessive window fogging. The Recirculation mode is not allowed in Defrost mode to improve window clearing operation. Recirculation will be disabled automatically if these modes are selected.

## Automatic Climate Controls With Touchscreen — If Equipped

### Buttons On The Faceplate

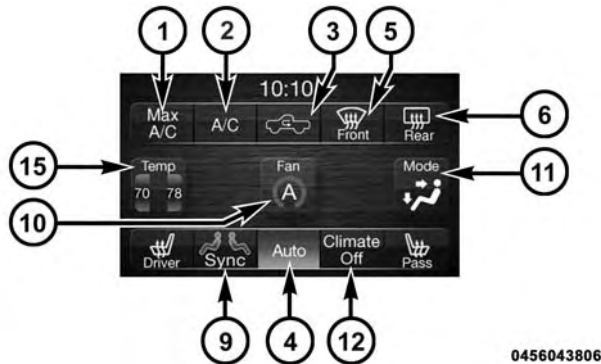
The buttons on the faceplate are located below the Uconnect® screen.



Automatic Climate Controls — Buttons On The Faceplate

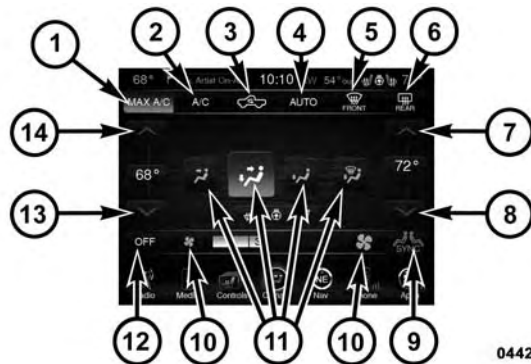
### Buttons On The Touchscreen

Buttons on the touchscreen are accessible on the Uconnect® system screen.



0456043806

Uconnect® 5.0 Automatic Temperature Controls —  
Buttons On The Touchscreen



0442005993

Uconnect® 8.4 Automatic Temperature Controls —  
Buttons On The Touchscreen

Button Descriptions (Applies To Both Buttons On The  
Faceplate And Buttons On The Touchscreen)

#### 1. MAX A/C Button

Press and release to change the current setting, the indicator illuminates when MAX A/C is ON. Performing

this function again will cause the MAX A/C operation to switch into manual mode and the MAX A/C indicator will turn off.

### **2. A/C Button**

Press and release to change the current setting, the indicator illuminates when A/C is ON. Performing this function again will cause the A/C operation to switch into manual mode and the A/C indicator will turn off.

### **3. Recirculation Button**

Press and release to change the current setting, the indicator illuminates when ON.

### **4. AUTO Operation Button**

Automatically controls the interior cabin temperature by adjusting airflow distribution and amount. Performing this function will cause the ATC to switch between manual mode and automatic modes. Refer to “Automatic Operation” for more information.

### **5. Front Defrost Button**

Press and release to change the current airflow setting to Defrost mode. The indicator illuminates when this feature is ON. Air comes from the windshield and side window demist outlets. When the defrost button is selected, the blower level will increase. Use Defrost mode with maximum temperature settings for best windshield and side window defrosting and defogging. Performing this function will cause the ATC to switch into manual mode. If the front defrost mode is turned off the climate system will return the previous setting.

### **6. Defrost Button**

Press and release this button to turn on the rear window defroster (if equipped) and the heated outside mirrors (if equipped). An indicator will illuminate when the rear window defroster is on. The rear window defroster automatically turns off after 10 minutes.



**CAUTION!**

Failure to follow these cautions can cause damage to the heating elements:

- Use care when washing the inside of the rear window. Do not use abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window. Use a soft cloth and a mild washing solution, wiping parallel to the heating elements. Labels can be peeled off after soaking with warm water.
- Do not use scrapers, sharp instruments, or abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window.
- Keep all objects a safe distance from the window.

#### 7. *Passenger Temperature Control Up Button (Uconnect® 8.4)*

Provides the passenger with independent temperature control. Push the button on the faceplate for warmer

temperature settings or on the touchscreen, press and slide the temperature bar towards the red arrow for warmer temperature settings.

**NOTE:** Pressing this button while in Sync mode will automatically exit Sync.

#### 8. *Passenger Temperature Control Down Button (Uconnect® 8.4)*

Provides the passenger with independent temperature control. Push the button on the faceplate for cooler temperature settings or on the touchscreen, press and slide the temperature bar towards the blue arrow for cooler temperature settings.

**NOTE:** Pressing this button while in Sync mode will automatically exit Sync.

## 9. SYNC

Press the Sync button on the touchscreen to toggle the Sync feature On/Off. The Sync indicator is illuminated when this feature is enabled. Sync is used to synchronize the passenger temperature setting with the driver temperature setting. Changing the passenger temperature setting while in Sync will automatically exit this feature.

## 10. Blower Control

Blower control is used to regulate the amount of air forced through the climate system. There are seven blower speeds available. Adjusting the blower will cause automatic mode to switch to manual operation. The speeds can be selected using either Buttons on the faceplate or buttons on the touchscreen as follows:

### Blower Control Knob On The Faceplate

The blower speed increases as you turn the control clockwise from the lowest blower setting. The blower speed decreases as you turn the blower control knob counterclockwise.

## Button On The Touchscreen

Use the small blower icon to reduce the blower setting and the large blower icon to increase the blower setting. Blower can also be selected by pressing the blower bar area between the icons.

## 11. Modes

The airflow distribution mode can be adjusted so air comes from the instrument panel outlets, floor outlets, demist outlets and defrost outlets. The Mode settings are as follows:

- **Panel Mode**



Air comes from the outlets in the instrument panel. Each of these outlets can be individually adjusted to direct the flow of air. The air vanes of the center outlets and outboard outlets can be moved up and down or side to side to regulate airflow

direction. There is a shut off wheel located below the air vanes to shut off or adjust the amount of airflow from these outlets.

- **Bi-Level Mode**



Air comes from the instrument panel outlets and floor outlets. A slight amount of air is directed through the defrost and side window demister outlets.

**NOTE:** BI-LEVEL mode is designed under comfort conditions to provide cooler air out of the panel outlets and warmer air from the floor outlets.

- **Floor Mode**



Air comes from the floor outlets. A slight amount of air is directed through the defrost and side window demister outlets.

- **Mix Mode**



Air comes from the floor, defrost and side window demist outlets. This mode works best in cold or snowy conditions.

## 12. *Climate Control OFF Button*

Press and release this button to turn the Climate Control ON/OFF.

## 13. *Driver Temperature Control Down Button (Uconnect® 8.4)*

Provides the driver with independent temperature control. Push the button on the faceplate for cooler temperature settings or on the touchscreen, press and slide the temperature bar towards the blue arrow for cooler temperature settings.

**NOTE:** In Sync mode, this button will also automatically adjust the passenger temperature setting at the same time.

#### 14. *Driver Temperature Control Up Button (Uconnect® 8.4)*

Provides the driver with independent temperature control. Push the button on the faceplate button for warmer temperature settings or on the touchscreen, press and slide the temperature bar towards the red arrow for warmer temperature settings.

**NOTE:** In Sync mode, this button will also automatically adjust the passenger temperature setting at the same time.

#### 15. *Temperature Control (Uconnect® 5.0)*

Press the temperature button on the touchscreen to regulate the temperature of the air inside the passenger compartment. Moving the temperature bar into the red area, indicates warmer temperatures. Moving the temperature bar into the blue area indicates cooler temperatures.

## Climate Control Functions

### A/C (Air Conditioning)

The Air Conditioning (A/C) button allows the operator to manually activate or deactivate the air conditioning system. When the air conditioning system is turned on, cool dehumidified air will flow through the outlets into the cabin. For improved fuel economy, press the A/C button to turn off the air conditioning and manually adjust the blower and airflow mode settings. Also, make sure to select only Panel, Bi-Level or Floor modes.

### NOTE:

- For Manual Climate Controls, if the system is in Mix, Floor or Defrost Mode, the A/C can be turned off, but the A/C system shall remain active to prevent fogging of the windows.

- If fog or mist appears on the windshield or side glass, select Defrost mode and adjust blower speed if needed.
- If your air conditioning performance seems lower than expected, check the front of the A/C condenser (located in front of the radiator), for an accumulation of dirt or insects. Clean with a gentle water spray from behind the radiator and through the condenser. Fabric front fascia protectors may reduce airflow to the condenser, reducing air conditioning performance.

### MAX A/C

MAX A/C sets the control for maximum cooling performance.

Press and release to toggle between MAX A/C and the prior settings. The button on the touchscreen illuminates when MAX A/C is ON.

In MAX A/C, the blower level and mode position can be adjusted to desired user settings. Pressing other settings will cause the MAX A/C operation to switch to the prior settings and the MAX A/C indicator will turn off.

### Recirculation Control



When outside air contains smoke, odors, or high humidity, or if rapid cooling is desired, you may wish to recirculate interior air by pressing the RECIRCULATION control button on the touchscreen or faceplate. Recirculation mode should only be used temporarily. The recirculation LED button on the faceplate will illuminate when either button is selected. Push either button a second time to turn off the Recirculation mode LED and allow outside air into the vehicle.

**NOTE:** In cold weather, use of Recirculation mode may lead to excessive window fogging. The recirculation feature may be unavailable (button on the touchscreen greyed out) if conditions exist that could create fogging on the inside of the windshield. On systems with Manual Climate Controls, the recirculation mode is not allowed in Defrost mode to improve window clearing operation. Recirculation will be disabled automatically if this mode is selected. Attempting to use Recirculation while in this mode will cause the LED in the control button on the faceplate to blink and then turn off.

## **Automatic Temperature Control (ATC)**

### **Automatic Operation**

1. Push the AUTO button on the faceplate or press the "AUTO" button on the touchscreen.

2. Next, adjust the temperature you would like the system to maintain by adjusting the driver and passenger temperature buttons on the faceplate or buttons on the touchscreen. Once the desired temperature is displayed, the system will achieve and automatically maintain that comfort level.
3. When the system is set up for your comfort level, it is not necessary to change the temperature. You will experience the greatest efficiency by simply allowing the system to function automatically.

### **NOTE:**

- It is not necessary to move the temperature settings. The system automatically adjusts the temperature, mode, and blower speed to provide comfort as quickly as possible.

- The temperature can be displayed in U.S. or Metric units by selecting the Uconnect® customer-programmable feature. Refer to the “Uconnect® System Settings” in this section of the manual.

To provide you with maximum comfort in the Automatic mode, during cold start-ups the blower fan will remain on low until the engine warms up. The blower will increase in speed and transition into Auto mode.

### Manual Operation Override

The system allows for manual selection of blower speed, air distribution mode, A/C status and recirculation control.

The blower fan speed can be set to any fixed speed by adjusting the blower control. The fan will now operate at a fixed speed until additional speeds are selected. This allows the front occupants to control the volume of air circulated in the vehicle and cancel the Auto mode.

The operator can also select the direction of the airflow by selecting one of the available mode settings. A/C operation and Recirculation control can also be manually selected in Manual operation.

**NOTE:** Each of these features operates independently from each other. If any feature is controlled manually, temperature control will continue to operate automatically.

### Operating Tips

**NOTE:** Refer to the chart at the end of this section for suggested control settings for various weather conditions.

### Summer Operation

The engine cooling system must be protected with a high-quality antifreeze coolant to provide proper corrosion protection and to protect against engine overheating. OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032) is recommended. Refer to “Maintenance Procedures” in “Maintaining Your Vehicle” for proper coolant selection.

### Winter Operation

To ensure the best possible heater and defroster performance, make sure the engine cooling system is functioning properly and the proper amount, type, and concentration of coolant is used. Refer to “Maintenance Procedures” in “Maintaining Your Vehicle” for proper coolant selection. Use of the air Recirculation mode during Winter months is not recommended because it may cause window fogging.

### Vacation/Storage

Any time you store your vehicle or keep it out of service (i.e., vacation) for two weeks or more, run the air conditioning system at idle for about five minutes in fresh air with the blower setting in high. This will ensure adequate system lubrication to minimize the possibility of compressor damage when the system is started again.

### Window Fogging and Frosting

Vehicle windows tend to fog on the inside of the glass in mild, rainy and/or humid weather. Windows may frost on the inside of the glass in very cold weather. To clear the windows, select Defrost or Mix mode and increase the front blower speed. Do not use the Recirculation mode without A/C for long periods, as fogging may occur.



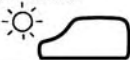








**NOTE:** Automatic Temperature Controls (ATC) will automatically adjust the climate control settings to reduce or eliminate window fogging on the front windshield. When this occurs, recirculation will be unavailable.

### **Outside Air Intake**

Make sure the air intake, located directly in front of the windshield, is free of obstructions such as leaves. Leaves collected in the air intake may reduce airflow, can cause odor, and if they enter the plenum they could plug the water drains. In winter months, ensure the air intake is clear of ice, slush and snow.

## Control Setting Suggestions For Various Weather Conditions

WEATHER	CONTROL SETTINGS
Hot weather and vehicle interior is very hot 	Set the mode control to  , A/C on, and blower on high. Roll down the windows for a minute to flush out the hot air. Once comfort is achieved adjust controls for comfort.
Warm weather 	Turn A/C on and set the mode control to the  position.
Cool Sunny	Operate in  position.
Cool & Humid conditions 	Set the mode control to  and turn on A/C to keep windows clear.
Cold Weather	Set the mode control to the  position. If windshield fogging starts to occur, move the control towards the  position.

0456001003

Operating Tips Chart

## Uconnect® VOICE RECOGNITION

### Introducing Uconnect®

Start using Uconnect® Voice Recognition with these helpful quick tips. It provides the key Voice Commands and tips you need to know to control your Uconnect® 5.0 or 8.4A/8.4AN system.



0501043050


### Uconnect® 5.0

Key Features:

- 5" touchscreen
- Three buttons on either side of the display



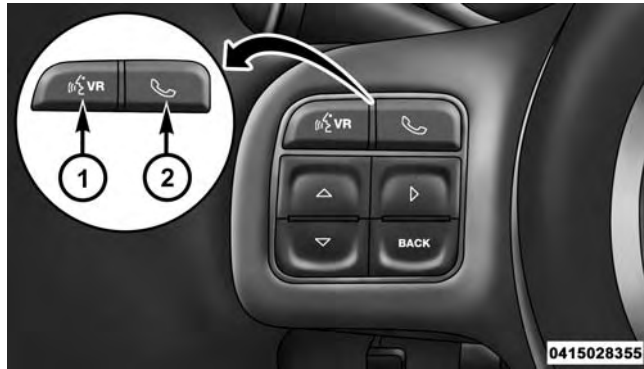
### Uconnect® 8.4AN

If you see the  icon on your touchscreen, you have the Uconnect® 8.4AN system. If not, you have a Uconnect® 8.4A system.

### Get Started

1. Visit [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com) to check mobile device and feature compatibility and to find phone pairing instructions.
2. Reduce background noise. Wind and passenger conversations are examples of noise that may impact recognition.
3. Speak clearly at a normal pace and volume while facing straight ahead. The microphone is positioned on the rearview mirror and aimed at the driver.
4. Each time you give a Voice Command, you must first push either the VR or Phone button, wait until **after** the beep, then say your Voice Command.
5. You can interrupt the help message or system prompts by pushing the VR or Phone button and saying a Voice Command from current category.

Two buttons are all you need to control your Uconnect® system with your voice.



### Voice Recognition (VR)/Phone Buttons

1 — Push To Begin Radio, Media, Navigation, Apps And Climate Functions

2 — Push To Initiate Or To Answer A Phone Call, Send Or Receive A Text

### Basic Voice Commands

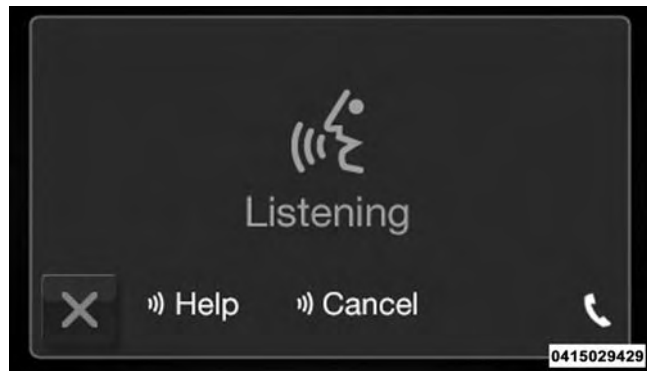
The basic Voice Commands below can be given at any point while using your Uconnect® system.

Push the VR button . After the beep, say...

- **Cancel** to stop a current voice session
- **Help** to hear a list of suggested Voice Commands
- **Repeat** to listen to the system prompts again

### 316 UNDERSTANDING YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL

Notice the visual cues that inform you of your voice recognition system's status. Cues appear on the touchscreen.



Uconnect® 5.0




Uconnect® 8.4A/8.4AN

## Radio

Use your voice to quickly get to the AM, FM or SiriusXM Satellite Radio® stations you would like to hear. (Subscription or included SiriusXM Satellite Radio® trial required.)

Push the VR button . After the beep, say...

- **Tune to** ninety-five-point-five FM
- **Tune to** Satellite Channel Hits 1

**TIP:** At any time, if you are not sure of what to say or want to learn a Voice Command, press the VR button  and say **“Help.”** The system will provide you with a list of commands.




Uconnect® 5.0 Radio



Uconnect® 8.4A/8.4AN Radio

## Media

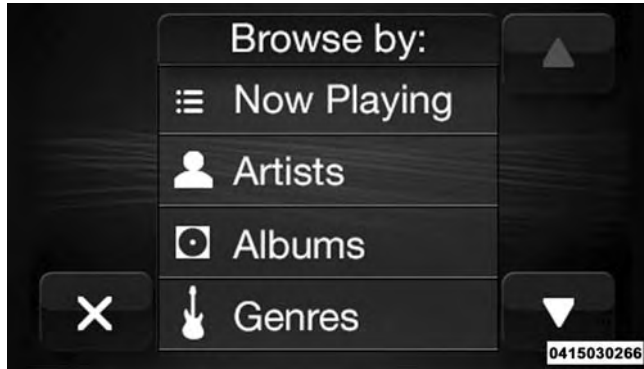
Uconnect® offers connections via USB, SD, Bluetooth® and auxiliary ports (If Equipped). Voice operation is only available for connected USB and iPod® devices. (Remote CD player optional and not available on all vehicles.)

Push the VR button . After the beep, say one of the following commands and follow the prompts to switch your media source or choose an artist.

- **Change source** to Bluetooth®
- **Change source** to iPod®
- **Change source** to USB
- **Play artist** Beethoven; **Play album** Greatest Hits; **Play song** Moonlight Sonata; **Play genre** Classical

**TIP:** Press the Browse button on the touchscreen to see all of the music on your iPod® or USB device. Your Voice Command must match **exactly** how the artist, album, song and genre information is displayed.





Uconnect® 5.0 Media



Uconnect® 8.4A/8.4AN Media

## Climate (8.4A/8.4AN)

Too hot? Too cold? Adjust vehicle temperatures hands-free and keep everyone comfortable while you keep moving ahead. (If vehicle is equipped with climate control.)

Push the VR button . After the beep, say one of the following commands:

- Set driver temperature to 70 degrees
- Set passenger temperature to 70 degrees


**TIP:** Voice Command for Climate may only be used to adjust the interior temperature of your vehicle. Voice Command will not work to adjust the heated seats or steering wheel if equipped.




Uconnect 8.4A/8.4AN Climate

## Navigation (8.4A/8.4AN)

The Uconnect® navigation feature helps you save time and become more productive when you know exactly how to get to where you want to go. (Navigation is optional on the Uconnect® 8.4A system. See your dealer to activate navigation at any time.)

- To enter a destination, push the VR button . After the beep, say:
  - For the 8.4A Uconnect® System, say: **“Enter state.”**
  - For the 8.4AN Uconnect® System, say: **“Navigate to 800 Chrysler Drive Auburn Hills, Michigan.”**
- Then follow the system prompts.

**TIP:** To start a POI search, push the VR button . After the beep, say: **“ Find nearest coffee shop.”**




Uconnect® 8.4A/8.4AN Navigation

## Phone

Making and answering hands-free phone calls is easy with Uconnect®. When the Phonebook button is illuminated on your touchscreen, your system is ready. Check UconnectPhone.com for mobile phone compatibility and pairing instructions.

Push the Phone button . After the beep, say one of the following commands...

- Call John Smith
- Dial 123-456-7890 and follow the system prompts
- Redial (call previous outgoing phone number)
- Call back (call previous incoming phone number)

**TIP:** When providing a Voice Command, push the Phone button  and say “Call,” then pronounce the name **exactly** as it appears in your phone book. When a contact has multiple phone numbers, you can say “Call John Smith **work.**”





Uconnect® 5.0 Phone



Uconnect® 8.4A/8.4AN Phone

## Voice Text Reply

Uconnect® will announce **incoming** text messages. Push the Phone button  and say **Listen**. (Must have compatible mobile phone paired to Uconnect® system.)

1. Once an incoming text message is read to you, push the Phone button . After the beep, say: **“Reply.”**
2. Listen to the Uconnect® prompts. After the beep, repeat one of the pre-defined messages and follow the system prompts.

### PRE-DEFINED VOICE TEXT REPLY RESPONSES


Yes.	Stuck in Traffic.	See you later.
No.	Start without me.	I'll be Late.
Okay.	Where are you?	I will be <number> minutes late.
Call me.	Are you there yet?	
I'll call you later.	I need directions.	See you in <number> of minutes.
I'm on my way.	Can't talk right now.	
I'm lost.		Thanks.

**TIP:** Your mobile phone must have the full implementation of the **Message Access Profile (MAP)** to take advantage of this feature. For details about MAP, visit [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com). Apple iPhone® iOS6 or later supports reading **incoming** text messages only.

### Uconnect® Access (8.4A/8.4AN)

An included trial and/or subscription is required to take advantage of the Uconnect® Access services in the next section of this guide. To register with Uconnect® Access, press the Apps button on the 8.4-inch touchscreen to get started. Detailed registration instructions can be found on the next page.

**NOTE:** Uconnect® Access is available only on equipped vehicles purchased within the continental United States and Alaska. Services can only be used where coverage is available; see coverage map for details.

 9-1-1 Call

 Security Alarm Notification


 Remote Door Lock/Unlock

 Stolen Vehicle Assistance

 Remote Vehicle Start\*\*

 Remote Horn and Lights

 Yelp® Search

 Voice Texting

 Roadside Assistance Call

 Wi-Fi Hotspot\*\*\*

\*\*If vehicle is equipped.

\*\*\*Extra charges apply.

## Register (8.4A/8.4AN)

1. Press the **Apps** button on the bottom of the 8.4-inch touchscreen.
2. If a pop-up message appears, press **Register** or go to the **Favorite Apps** menu and press **Uconnect® Registration**.
3. Read through the registration instructions. Enter and confirm your personal email address. Then press **Send**.
4. Check your personal inbox for an email from Uconnect® Access.
5. Click on the link inside the email within **72 hours** and complete the easy online registration process to create a personal Mopar® Owner Connect account linked to your vehicle.



Uconnect® Registration 8.4A/8.4AN

## Mobile App (8.4A/8.4AN)

Securely link your mobile device to your vehicle with the Uconnect® Access App. Once you have downloaded the App, you may start your vehicle or lock it from virtually any distance. (Vehicle must be properly equipped with factory-installed Remote Start.)



0415028348


### Mobile App

Download the Uconnect® Access App to a compatible Apple® or Android® mobile devices. All you need to do is:

1. After registering with Uconnect® Access, log on to your Mopar® Owner Connect account at [moparownerconnect.com](http://moparownerconnect.com).

2. On the Dashboard page, enter your mobile phone number to receive a link to download the App on your mobile device. Or go to iTunes®, or Google Play, and search for the Uconnect® Access App.
3. To activate the App, enter your Mopar Owner Connect user name and password and log in. Your vehicle is then connected to your mobile device.

### Voice Texting (8.4A/8.4AN)

1. To send a message, push the Phone button . After the beep, say the following command: **“Send message to John Smith.”**
2. Listen to the prompt. After the beep, dictate the message you would like to send. Wait for Uconnect® to process your message.
3. The Uconnect® system will repeat your message and provide a variety of options to add to, delete, send or hear the message again. After the beep, tell Uconnect®



what you'd like to do. For instance, if you're happy with your message, after the beep, say: **"Send."**


You must be registered with Uconnect® Access and have a compatible MAP – enabled smartphone to use your voice to send a personalized text message.

**TIP:**

- Not compatible with iPhone®.
- Messages are limited to 140 characters.
- The Messaging button on the touchscreen must be illuminated to use the feature.

**Yelp® (8.4A/8.4AN)**

Once registered with Uconnect® Access, you can use your voice to search for the most popular places or things around you.

1. Press the "Apps" button on the touchscreen.
2. Press the "All Apps" button on the touchscreen.
3. Press the "Yelp" button on the touchscreen.
4. Once the YELP® home screen appears on the touchscreen, push the VR button , then say: **"YELP search."**
5. Listen to the system prompts and after the beep, tell Uconnect® the place or business that you'd like Uconnect® to find.

**TIP:** Once you perform a search, you can reorganize the results by selecting either the Best Match, Rating or Distance tab on the top of the touchscreen display.



Yelp®

### SiriusXM Travel Link™ (8.4A/8.4AN)

Need to find a gas station, view local movie listings, check a sports score or the 5 - day weather forecast? SiriusXM Travel Link™ is a suite of services that brings a wealth of information right to your Uconnect® 8.4AN system. (Not available for 8.4A system.)

Push the VR button . After the beep, say one of the following commands:

- Show fuel prices
- Show 5 - day weather forecast
- Show extended weather

**TIP:** Traffic alerts are not accessible with Voice Command.



SiriusXM Travel Link™

### Additional Information

© 2015 FCA US LLC. All rights reserved. Mopar and Uconnect are registered trademarks and Mopar Owner Connect is a trademark of FCA US LLC. Android is a trademark of Google Inc. SiriusXM and all related marks

and logos are trademarks of SiriusXM Radio Inc. Yelp, Yelp logo, Yelp burst and related marks are registered trademarks of Yelp.

Uconnect® System Support:

- U.S. residents call 1-877-855-8400 or visit [DriveUconnect.com](http://DriveUconnect.com)
- Canadian residents call 1-800-465-2001 (English) or 1-800-387-9983 (French) or visit [DriveUconnect.ca](http://DriveUconnect.ca)

Mon. – Fri., 7:00 am – 12:00 am, ET

Sat., 8:00 am – 10:00 pm, ET

Sun., 9:00 am – 5:00 pm, ET

Uconnect® Access Services Support 1-855-792-4241. Please have your Uconnect® Security PIN ready when you call.



# STARTING AND OPERATING

## CONTENTS

- STARTING PROCEDURES . . . . . 336
  - Normal Starting. . . . . 336
  - Automatic Transmission . . . . . 337
  - Extreme Cold Weather (Below  $-20^{\circ}\text{F}$  or  $-29^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) .337
  - If Engine Fails To Start . . . . . 337
  - After Starting . . . . . 338
- ENGINE BLOCK HEATER — IF EQUIPPED. . . 339
- AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION . . . . . 339
  - Key Ignition Park Interlock. . . . . 341
  - Brake/Transmission Shift Interlock System . . 341
  - Six-Speed Automatic Transmission — If Equipped . . . . . 341
- POWER TAKE OFF OPERATION — IF EQUIPPED (CHASSIS CAB ONLY) . . . . . 353
  - Stationary Mode . . . . . 353
  - Mobile Mode. . . . . 355
- FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE OPERATION — IF EQUIPPED . . . . . 356
  - Manually Shifted Transfer Case — If Equipped.356
  - Shifting Procedure — Manually Shifted Transfer Case . . . . . 359

## 332 STARTING AND OPERATING

- Transfer Case Position Indicator Light . . . . .360
- Electronically Shifted Transfer Case (Four-Position Switch) — If Equipped . . . . .360
- Shifting Procedure . . . . .364
- LIMITED-SLIP DIFFERENTIAL . . . . .366
- DRIVING ON SLIPPERY SURFACES . . . . .367
  - Acceleration . . . . .367
  - Traction . . . . .368
- DRIVING THROUGH WATER . . . . .368
  - Flowing/Rising Water . . . . .369
  - Shallow Standing Water . . . . .369
- POWER STEERING . . . . .370
  - Power Steering Fluid Check . . . . .371
- PARKING BRAKE . . . . .372
- BRAKE SYSTEM . . . . .375
  - Hydraulic Brake Assist. . . . .375
- ELECTRONIC BRAKE CONTROL SYSTEM . . . . .376
  - Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) . . . . .376
  - Traction Control System (TCS) . . . . .377
  - Hill Start Assist (HSA) . . . . .378
  - Electronic Stability Control (ESC) . . . . .380
    - ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light And ESC OFF Indicator Light . . . . .385
  - Trailer Sway Control (TSC) . . . . .386
- TIRE SAFETY INFORMATION . . . . .387
  - Tire Markings . . . . .387

- Tire Identification Number (TIN) . . . . . 390
- Tire Terminology And Definitions . . . . . 392
- Tire Loading And Tire Pressure . . . . . 393
- **TIRES — GENERAL INFORMATION . . . . . 398**
  - Tire Pressure . . . . . 398
  - Tire Inflation Pressures . . . . . 399
  - Tire Pressures For High Speed Operation . . . 401
  - Tire Maintenance and Replacement . . . . . 401
  - Radial Ply Tires . . . . . 402
  - Tire Types . . . . . 402
  - Run Flat Tires — If Equipped . . . . . 404
  - Spare Tires — If Equipped . . . . . 404
  - Tire Spinning . . . . . 407

- Tread Wear Indicators . . . . . 408
- Life Of Tire . . . . . 408
- Replacement Tires . . . . . 409
- **SUPPLEMENTAL TIRE PRESSURE INFORMATION — IF EQUIPPED . . . . . 411**
- **TIRE CHAINS (TRACTION DEVICES) . . . . . 411**
- **TIRE ROTATION RECOMMENDATIONS . . . . 413**
  - Dual Rear Wheels . . . . . 414
- **TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR SYSTEM (TPMS) . 415**
  - Base System — If Equipped . . . . . 418
  - Premium System . . . . . 418
  - Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS) Chassis Cab — If Equipped . . . . . 423
  - General Information . . . . . 425

- FUEL REQUIREMENTS . . . . . 425
  - 5.7L/6.4L Engines . . . . . 425
  - Reformulated Gasoline . . . . . 426
  - Gasoline/Oxygenate Blends . . . . . 426
  - E-85 Usage In Non-Flex Fuel Vehicles . . . . . 427
  - MMT In Gasoline . . . . . 427
  - Materials Added To Fuel . . . . . 428
  - Fuel System Cautions. . . . . 428
  - Carbon Monoxide Warnings . . . . . 429
- ADDING FUEL . . . . . 429
  - Loose Fuel Filler Cap Message . . . . . 431
- VEHICLE LOADING . . . . . 431
  - Certification Label . . . . . 431
- TRAILER TOWING . . . . . 434
  - Common Towing Definitions . . . . . 434
  - Trailer Hitch Classification . . . . . 439
  - Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings) . . . . . 440
  - Trailer And Tongue Weight . . . . . 440
  - Towing Requirements . . . . . 441
  - Towing Tips . . . . . 449
- SNOWPLOW . . . . . 451
  - Before Plowing . . . . . 452
  - Snowplow Prep Package Model Availability . . . 452
  - Over The Road Operation With Snowplow Attached. . . . . 453
  - Operating Tips . . . . . 453



□ General Maintenance . . . . .454

■ **RECREATIONAL TOWING (BEHIND MOTORHOME, ETC.) . . . . .455**

□ Towing This Vehicle Behind Another Vehicle . .455

□ Recreational Towing — Two-Wheel Drive Models . . . . .456

□ Recreational Towing — Four-Wheel Drive Models . . . . .457

## STARTING PROCEDURES

Before starting your vehicle, adjust your seat, adjust both inside and outside mirrors, and fasten your seat belt.

The starter should not be operated for more than 10-second intervals. Waiting a few seconds between such intervals will protect the starter from overheating.

### WARNING!

**Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Leaving children in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the shift lever/transmission gear selector. Do not leave the Key Fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible**

*(Continued)*

### WARNING! *(Continued)*

**to children, and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with keyless Enter-N-Go in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.**

### Normal Starting

Normal starting of either a warm or cold engine is obtained without pumping or pressing the accelerator pedal. Cycle the ignition to the START position and release when the engine starts. If the engine fails to start within 10 seconds, cycle the ignition to the OFF position, wait five seconds, then repeat the "Normal Starting" procedure.

## Automatic Transmission

Start the engine with the shift lever in the NEUTRAL or PARK. Apply the brake before shifting into any driving range.

**NOTE:** This vehicle is equipped with a transmission shift interlocking system. The brake pedal must be pressed to shift out of PARK.

### Tip Start Feature

**Do not** press the accelerator. Cycle the ignition switch briefly to the START position and release it. The starter motor will continue to run but will automatically disengage when the engine is running.

### Extreme Cold Weather (Below $-20^{\circ}\text{F}$ or $-29^{\circ}\text{C}$ )

To ensure reliable starting at these temperatures, use of an externally powered electric engine block heater (available from your authorized dealer) is recommended.

## If Engine Fails To Start

If the engine fails to start after you have followed the “Normal Starting” procedure, it may be flooded. Push the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and hold it there while cranking the engine. This should clear any excess fuel in case the engine is flooded.

### CAUTION!

**To prevent damage to the starter, do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time. Wait 10 to 15 seconds before trying again.**

**WARNING!**

- **Never pour fuel or other flammable liquids into the throttle body air inlet opening in an attempt to start the vehicle. This could result in a flash fire causing serious personal injury.**
- **Do not attempt to push or tow your vehicle to get it started. Vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission cannot be started this way. Unburned fuel could enter the catalytic converter and once the engine has started, ignite and damage the converter and vehicle.**
- **If the vehicle has a discharged battery, booster cables may be used to obtain a start from a booster battery or the battery in another vehicle. This type of start can be dangerous if done improperly. Refer to “Jump-Starting” in “What To Do In Emergencies” for further information.**

If the engine has been flooded, it may start to run, but not have enough power to continue running when the ignition button/key is released. If this occurs, continue cranking with the accelerator pedal pushed all the way to the floor. Release the accelerator pedal and the ignition button/key once the engine is running smoothly.

If the engine shows no sign of starting after two 10-second periods of cranking with the accelerator pedal held to the floor, the “Normal Starting” procedure should be repeated.

**After Starting**

The idle speed is automatically controlled and will decrease as the engine warms up.

## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER — IF EQUIPPED

The engine block heater warms the engine, and permits quicker starts in cold weather. Connect the cord to a standard 110-115 Volt AC electrical outlet with a grounded, three-wire extension cord.

### Gasoline Engine Only

The engine block heater cord is routed through the grille by the right front tow hook.

It includes a removable cap that is secured by a tethered strap. It also has a c-clip that is used for storage when not in use for the Winter months. During Winter months, remove the heater cord wiring assembly from itself on the c-clip.

The engine block heater must be plugged in at least one hour to have an adequate warming effect on the engine.

### WARNING!

**Remember to disconnect the engine block heater cord before driving. Damage to the 110-115 Volt electrical cord could cause electrocution.**

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

### CAUTION!

**Damage to the transmission may occur if the following precautions are not observed:**

- **Shift into or out of PARK or REVERSE only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.**
- **Do not shift between PARK, REVERSE, NEUTRAL, or DRIVE when the engine is above idle speed.**
- **Before shifting into any gear, make sure your foot is firmly pressing the brake pedal.**

**NOTE:** You must press and hold the brake pedal while shifting out of PARK.

**WARNING!**

- It is dangerous to shift out of PARK or NEUTRAL if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly pressing the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and your foot is firmly pressing the brake pedal.
- Unintended movement of a vehicle could injure those in or near the vehicle. As with all vehicles, you should never exit a vehicle while the engine is running. Before exiting a vehicle, always apply the parking brake, shift the transmission into PARK,

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- turn the engine OFF, and remove the Key Fob. When the ignition is in the LOCK/OFF (key removal) position, the transmission is locked in PARK, securing the vehicle against unwanted movement.
- When leaving the vehicle, always make sure the ignition is in the OFF position, remove the Key Fob from the vehicle, and lock the vehicle.
  - Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the transmission gear selector.

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- **Do not leave the Key Fob in or near the vehicle (or in a location accessible to children), and do not leave the ignition (in a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go™) in the ACC or ON/RUN position. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.**

**Key Ignition Park Interlock**

This vehicle is equipped with a Key Ignition Park Interlock which requires the transmission to be in PARK before the ignition switch can be turned to the LOCK/OFF (key removal) position. The Key Fob can only be removed from the ignition when the ignition is in the LOCK/OFF position, and the transmission is locked in PARK whenever the ignition switch is in the LOCK/OFF position.

**NOTE:** If a malfunction occurs, the system will trap the Key Fob in the ignition switch to warn you that this safety feature is inoperable. The engine can be started and stopped but the Key Fob cannot be removed until you obtain service.

**Brake/Transmission Shift Interlock System**

This vehicle is equipped with a Brake Transmission Shift Interlock system (BTSI) that holds the shift lever in PARK unless the brakes are applied. To shift the transmission out of PARK, the ignition switch must be turned to the ON/RUN position (engine running or not) and the brake pedal must be pressed.

**Six-Speed Automatic Transmission — If Equipped**

Chassis Cab models (with automatic transmission) may use either the AS66RC transmission (which is equipped

with a Power Take-Off (PTO) access cover on the side of the transmission case), or the 66RFE transmission (which has no PTO access cover).

The transmission gear position display (located in the instrument cluster) indicates the transmission gear range. The shift lever is mounted on the right side of the steering column. You must press the brake pedal to move the shift lever out of PARK (refer to “Brake/Transmission Shift Interlock System” in this section). To drive, move the shift lever from PARK or NEUTRAL to the DRIVE position. Pull the shift lever toward you when shifting into REVERSE or PARK, or when shifting out of PARK.

The electronically-controlled transmission provides a precise shift schedule. The transmission electronics are self-calibrating; therefore, the first few shifts on a new vehicle may be somewhat abrupt. This is a normal condition, and precision shifts will develop within a few hundred miles (kilometers).

Only shift from DRIVE to PARK or REVERSE when the accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is stopped. Be sure to keep your foot on the brake pedal when shifting between these gears.

The transmission shift lever has only PARK, REVERSE, NEUTRAL, and DRIVE shift positions. Manual downshifts can be made using the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control (refer to “Electronic Range Select [ERS] Operation” in this section for further information). Pressing the ERS (-/+ ) switches (on the shift lever) while in the DRIVE position will select the highest available transmission gear, and will display that gear in the instrument cluster as 1, 2, 3, etc.

### **Gear Ranges**

DO NOT race the engine when shifting from PARK or NEUTRAL into another gear range.



**NOTE:** After selecting any gear range, wait a moment to allow the selected gear to engage before accelerating. This is especially important when the engine is cold.

### **PARK (P)**

This range supplements the parking brake by locking the transmission. The engine can be started in this range. Never attempt to use PARK while the vehicle is in motion. Apply the parking brake when leaving the vehicle in this range.

When parking on a level surface, you may shift the transmission into PARK first, and then apply the parking brake.

When parking on a hill, apply the parking brake before shifting the transmission to PARK, otherwise the load on the transmission locking mechanism may make it difficult to move the shift lever out of PARK. As an added

precaution, turn the front wheels toward the curb on a downhill grade and away from the curb on an uphill grade.

On four-wheel drive vehicles be sure that the transfer case is in a drive position.

### **WARNING!**

- **Never use the PARK position as a substitute for the parking brake. Always apply the parking brake fully when parked to guard against vehicle movement and possible injury or damage.**
- **Your vehicle could move and injure you and others if it is not completely in PARK. Check by trying to move the shift lever out of PARK with the brake pedal released. Make sure the transmission is in PARK before leaving the vehicle.**

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- It is dangerous to shift out of PARK or NEUTRAL if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly pressing the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and your foot is firmly pressing the brake pedal.
- Unintended movement of a vehicle could injure those in or near the vehicle. As with all vehicles, you should never exit a vehicle while the engine is running. Before exiting a vehicle, always apply the parking brake, shift the transmission into PARK, turn the engine OFF, and remove the Key Fob. When the ignition is in the LOCK/OFF (key removal) position, the transmission is locked in PARK, securing the vehicle against unwanted movement.

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- When leaving the vehicle, always make sure the ignition is in the OFF position, remove the Key Fob from the vehicle, and lock the vehicle.
- Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the shift lever.
- Do not leave the Key Fob in or near the vehicle, (or in a location accessible to children) and do not leave the ignition (in a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go™) in the ACC or ON/RUN position. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

(Continued)

**CAUTION!**

- Before moving the shift lever out of PARK, you must turn the ignition switch from the LOCK/OFF position to the ON/RUN position, and also press the brake pedal. Otherwise, damage to the shift lever could result.
- DO NOT race the engine when shifting from PARK or NEUTRAL into another gear range, as this can damage the drivetrain.

The following indicators should be used to ensure that you have engaged the transmission into the PARK position:

- When shifting into PARK, pull the shift lever toward you and move it all the way counterclockwise until it stops.

- Release the shift lever and make sure it is fully seated in the PARK gate.
- Look at the transmission gear position display and verify that it indicates the PARK position.
- With brake pedal released, verify that the shift lever will not move out of PARK.

**REVERSE (R)**

This range is for moving the vehicle backward. Shift into REVERSE only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

**NEUTRAL (N)**

Use this range when the vehicle is standing for prolonged periods with the engine running. The engine may be started in this range. Apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into PARK if you must leave the vehicle.

**WARNING!**

Do not coast in NEUTRAL and never turn off the ignition to coast down a hill. These are unsafe practices that limit your response to changing traffic or road conditions. You might lose control of the vehicle and have a collision.

**CAUTION!**

Towing the vehicle, coasting, or driving for any other reason with the transmission in NEUTRAL can cause severe transmission damage. Refer to "Recreational Towing" in "Starting And Operating" and "Towing A Disabled Vehicle" in "What To Do In Emergencies" for further information.

**DRIVE (D)**

This range should be used for most city and highway driving. It provides the smoothest upshifts and downshifts, and the best fuel economy. The transmission automatically upshifts through underdrive first, second, and third gears, direct fourth gear and overdrive fifth and sixth gears. The DRIVE position provides optimum driving characteristics under all normal operating conditions.

When frequent transmission shifting occurs (such as when operating the vehicle under heavy loading conditions, in hilly terrain, traveling into strong head winds, or while towing heavy trailers), use the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control (refer to "Electronic Range Select (ERS) Operation" in this section for further information) to select a lower gear range. Under these conditions, using a lower gear range will improve performance and extend transmission life by reducing excessive shifting and heat buildup.

If the transmission temperature exceeds normal operating limits, the powertrain controller will modify the transmission shift schedule and expand the range of torque converter clutch engagement. This is done to prevent transmission damage due to overheating.

If the transmission becomes extremely hot or is in danger of overheating, the “Transmission Temperature Warning Light” may illuminate and the transmission may operate differently until the transmission cools down.

**NOTE:** Use caution when operating a heavily loaded vehicle at low speeds (such as towing a trailer up a steep grade, or in stop-and-go traffic) during hot weather. In these conditions, torque converter slip can impose a significant additional heat load on the cooling system. Downshifting the transmission to the lowest possible gear (when climbing a grade), or shifting to NEUTRAL (when stopped in heavy traffic) can help to reduce this excess heat generation.

During cold temperatures, transmission operation may be modified depending on engine and transmission temperature as well as vehicle speed. This feature improves warm up time of the engine and transmission to achieve maximum efficiency. Engagement of the torque converter clutch is inhibited until the transmission fluid is warm (refer to the “Note” under “Torque Converter Clutch” in this section). On models with 66RFE transmission, top overdrive gear is also inhibited until the transmission fluid is warm, and during extremely cold temperatures (-16°F [-27°C] or below), operation may briefly be limited to first and direct gears only. On trucks with AS66RC transmission, fifth and sixth gears may be inhibited briefly on cold starts below 41°F (5°C), and during very cold temperatures (-4°F [-20°C] or below), operation may briefly be limited to third gear only. During this condition, the ability of the vehicle to accelerate under heavily loaded conditions may be reduced.

In all cases, normal operation will resume once the transmission temperature has risen to a suitable level.

### Transmission Limp Home Mode

Transmission function is monitored electronically for abnormal conditions. If a condition is detected that could result in transmission damage, Transmission Limp Home Mode is activated. In this mode, the transmission remains in fourth gear (for 66RFE transmission) or third gear (for AS66RC transmission) regardless of which forward gear is selected. If an AS66RC equipped truck enters Limp Home Mode at highway speeds, it will initially engage fifth gear, until the vehicle slows to a speed where third gear can be engaged. PARK, REVERSE, and NEUTRAL will continue to operate. The Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) may be illuminated. Limp Home Mode allows the vehicle to be driven to an authorized dealer for service without damaging the transmission.

In the event of a momentary problem, the transmission can be reset to regain all forward gears by performing the following steps:

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Shift the transmission into PARK.
3. Turn the ignition switch to the OFF position.
4. Wait approximately 10 seconds.
5. Restart the engine.
6. Shift into the desired gear range. If the problem is no longer detected, the transmission will return to normal operation.

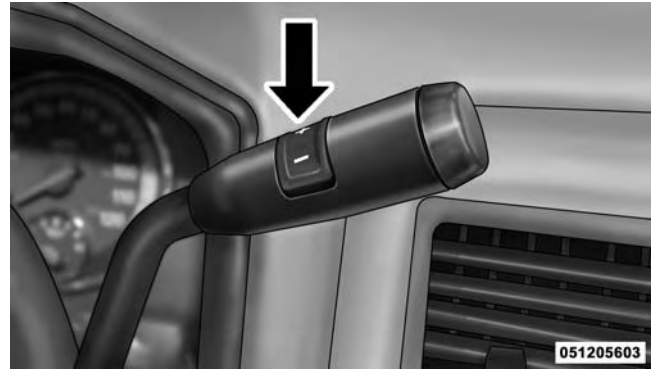
**NOTE:** Even if the transmission can be reset, we recommend that you visit your authorized dealer at your earliest possible convenience. Your authorized dealer has diagnostic equipment to determine if the problem could recur.

If the transmission cannot be reset, authorized dealer service is required.

### Electronic Range Select (ERS) Operation

The Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control allows the driver to limit the highest available gear when the transmission is in DRIVE. For example, if you shift the transmission into 4 (fourth gear), the transmission will not shift above fourth gear, but will shift through the lower gears normally.

You can switch between DRIVE and ERS mode at any vehicle speed. When the shift lever is in the DRIVE position, the transmission will operate automatically, shifting between all available gears. Tapping the ERS (-) switch will activate ERS mode, display the current gear in the instrument cluster, and maintain that gear as the top available gear. Once in ERS mode, tapping (-) or (+) will change the top available gear.



**Column Shift Lever**

To exit ERS mode, simply push and hold the ERS (+) switch until “D” is once again displayed in the instrument cluster.

**WARNING!**

**Do not downshift for additional engine braking on a slippery surface. The drive wheels could lose their grip and the vehicle could skid, causing a collision or personal injury.**

**NOTE:** To select the proper gear position for maximum deceleration (engine braking), simply push and hold the ERS (-) switch. The transmission will shift to the range from which the vehicle can best be slowed down.

**CAUTION!**

**When using ERS for engine braking while descending steep grades, be careful not to overspeed the engine. Apply the brakes as needed to prevent engine overspeed.**

**Overdrive Operation**

The automatic transmission includes an electronically controlled Overdrive (fifth and sixth gears). The transmission will automatically shift into Overdrive if the following conditions are present:

- The shift lever is in the DRIVE position.
- The transmission fluid has reached an adequate temperature.
- The engine coolant has reached an adequate temperature.
- Vehicle speed is sufficiently high.
- The TOW/HAUL switch has not been activated.
- The driver is not heavily pressing the accelerator.



## When To Use TOW/HAUL Mode

When driving in hilly areas, towing a trailer, carrying a heavy load, etc., and frequent transmission shifting occurs, push the TOW/HAUL switch to activate TOW/HAUL mode. This will improve performance and reduce the potential for transmission overheating or failure due to excessive shifting. When operating in TOW/HAUL mode, transmission upshifts are delayed, and the transmission will automatically downshift (for engine braking) when the throttle is closed and/or during steady braking maneuvers.



**TOW/HAUL Switch**

The “TOW/HAUL Indicator Light” will illuminate in the instrument cluster to indicate that TOW/HAUL mode has been activated. Pushing the switch a second time restores normal operation. Normal operation is always the default at engine start-up. If TOW/HAUL mode is desired, the switch must be pushed each time the engine is started.

**WARNING!**

**Do not use the “TOW/HAUL” feature when driving in icy or slippery conditions. The increased engine braking can cause the rear wheels to slide, and the vehicle to swing around with the possible loss of vehicle control, which may cause an accident possibly resulting in personal injury or death.**

**Torque Converter Clutch**

A feature designed to improve fuel economy has been included in the automatic transmission on your vehicle. A clutch within the torque converter engages automatically at calibrated speeds. This may result in a slightly different feeling or response during normal operation in the upper gears. When the vehicle speed drops or during some accelerations, the clutch automatically disengages.

**NOTE:**

- The torque converter clutch will not engage (and 66RFE-equipped trucks will not shift to sixth gear), until the transmission fluid and engine coolant are warm [usually after 1 to 3 miles (2 to 5 km) of driving]. Because engine speed is higher when the torque converter clutch is not engaged, it may seem as if the transmission is not shifting properly when cold. This is normal. Using the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control, when the transmission is sufficiently warm, will demonstrate that the transmission is able to shift into and out of Overdrive.
- If the vehicle has not been driven for several days, the first few seconds of operation after shifting the transmission into gear may seem sluggish. This is due to the fluid partially draining from the torque converter into the transmission. This condition is normal and will not cause damage to the transmission. The torque converter will refill within five seconds after starting the engine.

## POWER TAKE OFF OPERATION — IF EQUIPPED (CHASSIS CAB ONLY)

This vehicle when equipped with PTO Prep and the AS66RC automatic six-speed, will allow for an aftermarket upfit with a transmission driven PTO (power take off). The customer will have the ability to operate the PTO in either a “stationary” or “mobile” mode. The vehicles will be factory set to the “stationary” mode. To select ‘mobile mode’ You will need to enter the commercial vehicle menu on the EVIC/DID screen and select mobile PTO mode. Details of the PTO selection modes and further PTO information is available at the Ram Truck Bodybuilders web site. [www.rambodybuilder.com](http://www.rambodybuilder.com)

### AS66RC Six-Speed Automatic Transmission Only

The PTO drive gear (part of the AS66RC) operates at torque converter turbine speed. The turbine speed will be less than engine speed when the torque converter clutch is not engaged and will be same as engine speed when the torque converter clutch is engaged.

#### Stationary Mode

To operate the PTO in this mode the vehicle must meet the following conditions:

- Be in PARK position (vehicles equipped with automatic transmission.)
- PTO switch has been activated.
- Parking brake applied (vehicles equipped with manual transmission).
- Brake pedal must not be applied.

- Vehicle engine must be running.
- No vehicle, brake or clutch switch faults present.
- PTO must be correctly installed using the vehicle provided circuits.

The Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID) will display a "PTO On" message for five seconds if the above conditions are met. Otherwise, the EVIC/DID will display a message "To Operate PTO Shift To Park" indicating what operator action should be taken to engage the PTO mode.

The customer has the choice to operate the PTO by utilizing the cruise control switches or by utilizing a remote control (provided by the PTO supplier). To operate the feature using the cruise control switches, the customer must first activate the PTO switch which will turn on the PTO. In order to increase or decrease the engine idle speed, to optimize the PTO function, the "RESUME/ACCEL" and "DECEL" cruise switches can

be used respectively. To disengage PTO operation and return to "standard vehicle operation" simply toggle the PTO switch to the OFF position.

The torque converter clutch (TCC) will automatically engage at engine speeds above 1,200 RPM (engine speed) in PTO stationary mode. Once engaged, the TCC will remain applied and will not disengage until the engine speed falls below 1,000 RPM. TCC engagement is desirable for certain types of PTO applications (Automatic Transmission Only).

To operate the PTO via a remote switch, the customer must make sure the above conditions are met. It is vital for proper operation that the PTO and remote have been installed correctly, paying special attention to ensure the vehicle provided wiring has been connected properly. This is the responsibility of the installer of the PTO and switches/remote system. It is the responsibility of the PTO manufacturer to ensure that their electrical (switches and remote) system is compatible with the vehicle's electrical architecture and software functionality.

**NOTE:** Single set speed can be programmed via the PTO menu on the EVIC/DID screen. Further details are available at the Ram Truck Bodybuilders web site. [www.rambodybuilder.com](http://www.rambodybuilder.com) [www.ramtrucks.com](http://www.ramtrucks.com).

### Mobile Mode

To operate the PTO in this mode the vehicle must meet the following conditions:

- Mobile mode is activated via the menu on the EVIC/DID screen.
- (ON/OFF) switch has been activated.
- Vehicles with automatic transmission must be in PARK or DRIVE.
- Parking brake must not be applied.
- Brake pedal must not be applied.

- No vehicle, brake or clutch switch faults present.
- Vehicle engine must be running.
- PTO must be correctly installed using the vehicle provided circuits.

The customer may choose to use the PTO while the vehicle is moving. To do so, the PTO function must be activated prior to taking the vehicle out of PARK. This is accomplished by activating the upfitter-provided PTO on/off switch. At this point, the customer may place the vehicle in a forward or reverse gear and have PTO operation once the vehicle begins to move. To disengage PTO operation and return to “standard vehicle operation” simply toggle the on/off switch to the OFF position.

**NOTE:** For application specific information with respect to PTO and pump requirements and additional vehicle information (wiring schematics, preset idle values, engine speed limits, and vehicle hardware and software requirements) please refer to the Body Builders Guide by accessing [www.rambodybuilder.com](http://www.rambodybuilder.com) and choosing the appropriate links.

### **FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE OPERATION — IF EQUIPPED**

Four-wheel drive trucks are equipped with either a manually shifted transfer case or an electronically shifted transfer case. Refer to the operating instructions for your transfer case, located in this section for further information.

#### **Manually Shifted Transfer Case — If Equipped**

The transfer case provides four mode positions.

- Two-wheel drive high range (2H)

- Four-wheel drive high range (4H)
- Neutral (N)
- Four-wheel drive low range (4L)

This transfer case is intended to be driven in the 2H position for normal street and highway conditions such as dry, hard surfaced roads.

When additional traction is required, the 4H and 4L positions can be used to lock the front and rear drive-shafts together and force the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This is accomplished by simply moving the shift lever to the desired positions once the appropriate speed and gear requirements are met refer to “Shifting Procedure – Manually Shifted Transfer Case” in this section for further information. The 4H and 4L positions are intended for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Driving in the 4H and 4L positions on dry, hard surfaced roads may cause increased tire wear and damage to the driveline components.

The “Transfer Case Position Indicator Light” in the instrument cluster will alert the driver that the vehicle is in four-wheel drive and that the front and rear driveshafts are locked together. This light will illuminate when the transfer case is shifted into either the 4H or 4L position. There is no light for the 2H or NEUTRAL positions on some models.

When operating your vehicle in 4L, the engine speed is approximately three times that of the 2H or 4H positions at a given road speed. Take care not to overspeed the engine and do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

Proper operation of four-wheel drive vehicles depends on tires of equal size, type and circumference on each wheel. Any difference will adversely affect shifting and can cause damage to the drivetrain.

**NOTE:** Do not attempt to make a shift while only the front or rear wheels are spinning. The front and rear driveshaft speeds must be equal for the shift to take place. Shifting while only the front or rear wheels are spinning can cause damage to the transfer case.

Because four-wheel drive provides improved traction, there is a tendency to exceed safe turning and stopping speeds. Do not go faster than road conditions permit.

**NOTE:** Delayed shifts out of four-wheel drive may be experienced due to uneven tire wear, low or uneven tire pressures, excessive vehicle loading, or cold temperatures.

**WARNING!**

**You or others could be injured or killed if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL position disengages both the front and rear drive shafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to roll, even if the transmission is in PARK. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.**

For additional information on the appropriate use of each transfer case mode position, see the information below:

**2H**

Rear-Wheel Drive High Range — This range is for normal street and highway driving on dry hard surfaced roads.

**4H**

Four-Wheel Drive High Range — This range locks the front and rear driveshafts together forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces only.

**Neutral (N)**

Neutral — This range disengages the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. To be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. Refer to “Recreational Towing” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

**4L**

Four-Wheel Drive Low Range — This range locks the front and rear driveshafts together forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional



traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

### CAUTION!

Do not use 4L (Low) range when operating the vehicle on dry pavement. Driveline hardware damage can result.

## Shifting Procedure — Manually Shifted Transfer Case

### 2H To 4H

Shifting between 2H and 4H can be made with the vehicle stopped or in motion. If the vehicle is in motion, shifts can be made up to 55 mph (88 km/h). With the vehicle in motion, the transfer case will engage/disengage faster if you momentarily release the accelerator pedal after completing the shift. Apply a constant force when shifting the transfer case lever.

### 2H Or 4H To 4L

With the vehicle rolling at 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h), shift the transmission into NEUTRAL. While the vehicle is coasting at 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h), shift the transfer case lever firmly to the desired position. Do not pause in transfer case NEUTRAL.

### NOTE:

- Pausing in transfer case NEUTRAL in vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission may require shutting the engine OFF to avoid gear clash while completing the shift. If difficulty occurs, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL, hold foot on brake, and turn the engine OFF. Make shift to the desired mode.
- Shifting into or out of 4L is possible with the vehicle completely stopped, however difficulty may occur due to the mating clutch teeth not being properly aligned. Several attempts may be required for clutch teeth

alignment and shift completion to occur. The preferred method is with the vehicle rolling 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h). Avoid attempting to engage or disengage 4L with the vehicle moving faster than 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h).

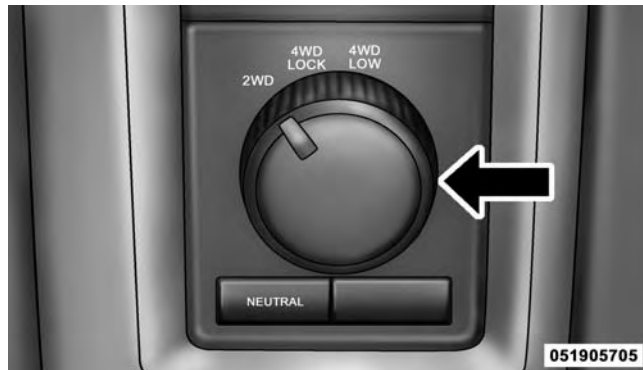
- Do not attempt to shift into or from 4L while the transmission is in gear.

### Transfer Case Position Indicator Light

The “Transfer Case Position Indicator Light” in the instrument cluster is used to alert the driver that the front axle is fully engaged and all four wheels are driving.

### Electronically Shifted Transfer Case (Four-Position Switch) — If Equipped

This is an electronic shift transfer case and is operated by the 4WD Control Switch (Transfer Case Switch), which is located on the instrument panel.



**Transfer Case Switch (Four-Position)**

This electronically shifted transfer case provides four mode positions:

- Two-wheel drive high range (2WD)
- Four-wheel drive lock range (4WD LOCK)
- Four-wheel drive low range (4WD LOW)
- Neutral (NEUTRAL)

This electronically shifted transfer case is designed to be driven in the two-wheel drive position (2WD) for normal street and highway conditions on dry, hard surfaced roads.

When additional traction is required, the transfer case 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions can be used to maximize torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This is accomplished by rotating the 4WD Control Switch to the desired position. Refer to “Shifting Procedure” in this section for specific shifting instructions. The 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions are designed for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Driving in the 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions on dry hard surfaced roads may cause increased tire wear and damage to the driveline components.

**NOTE:** The transfer case NEUTRAL position is selected by pushing the button located on the lower left hand corner of the 4WD Control Switch. The transfer case NEUTRAL position is to be used for recreational towing only. Refer to “Recreational Towing” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

### Transfer Case Position Indicator Lights

The Transfer Case Position Indicator Lights (4WD and 4LOW) are located in the instrument cluster and indicate the current and desired transfer case selection. When you select a different transfer case position, the indicator lights will do the following:

#### If All Shift Conditions Are Met:

1. The current position indicator light will turn OFF.
2. The selected position indicator light will flash until the transfer case completes the shift.

3. When the shift is complete, the indicator light for the selected position will stop flashing and remain ON.

**If One Or More Shift Conditions Are Not Met:**

1. The indicator light for the current position will remain ON.
2. The newly selected position indicator light will continue to flash.
3. The transfer case **will not** shift.

**NOTE:** Before retrying a selection, make certain that all the necessary requirements for selecting a new transfer case position have been met. To retry the selection, turn the control knob back to the current position, wait five seconds, and retry selection. To find the shift requirements, refer to the "Shifting Procedure" for your transfer case, located in this section.

The "SVC 4WD Warning Light" monitors the electronic shift four-wheel drive system. If this light remains on after engine start up or illuminates during driving, it means that the four-wheel drive system is not functioning properly and that service is required.

**WARNING!**

**Always engage the parking brake when powering down the vehicle if the "SVC 4WD Warning Light" is illuminated. Not engaging the parking brake may allow the vehicle to roll, which may cause personal injury.**

**NOTE:** Do not attempt to make a shift while only the front or rear wheels are spinning, as this can cause damage to driveline components.

When operating your vehicle in 4WD LOW, the engine speed is approximately three times that of the 2WD or 4WD LOCK positions at a given road speed. Take care not to overspeed the engine and do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

Proper operation of four-wheel drive vehicles depends on tires of equal size, type and circumference on each wheel. Any difference in tire size can cause damage to the drivetrain.

Because four-wheel drive provides improved traction, there is a tendency to exceed safe turning and stopping speeds. Do not go faster than road conditions permit.

**WARNING!**

**You or others could be injured or killed if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the**

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

**NEUTRAL position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL position disengages both the front and rear drive shafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to roll, even if the transmission is in PARK. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.**

For additional information on the appropriate use of each transfer case mode position, see the information below:

**2WD**

Rear Wheel Drive High Range — This range is for normal street and highway driving on dry, hard surfaced roads.

### 4WD LOCK

Four-Wheel Drive Lock Range — This range maximizes torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This range provides additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces only.

### 4WD LOW

Four-Wheel Drive Low Range — This range provides low speed four-wheel drive. It maximizes torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This range provides additional traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

### NEUTRAL (N)

Neutral — This range disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. To be used for flat

towing behind another vehicle. Refer to “Recreational Towing” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

### Shifting Procedure

#### NOTE:

- If any of the requirements to select a new transfer case position have not been met, the transfer case will not shift. The position indicator light for the previous position will remain ON and the newly selected position indicator light will continue to flash until all the requirements for the selected position have been met. To retry a shift: return the control knob back to the original position, make certain all shift requirements have been met, wait five seconds and try the shift again.
- If all the requirements to select a new transfer case position have been met, the current position indicator

light will turn OFF, the selected position indicator light will flash until the transfer case completes the shift. When the shift is complete, the position indicator light for the selected position will stop flashing and remain ON.

### 2WD To 4WD LOCK

Rotate the 4WD control switch to the desired position. Shifts between 2WD and 4WD LOCK can be done with the vehicle stopped or in motion. With the vehicle in motion, the transfer case will engage/disengage faster if you momentarily release the accelerator pedal after turning the control switch. If the vehicle is stopped, the ignition switch must be in the ON position with the engine either running or off. This shift cannot be completed if the ignition switch is in the ACC position.

**NOTE:** The four-wheel drive system will not allow shifts between 2WD/4WD LOCK if the front and/or rear wheels are spinning (no traction). In this situation, the selected position indicator light will flash and the original position indicator light will remain ON. At this time, reduce speed and stop spinning the wheels to complete the shift.

### 2WD Or 4WD LOCK To 4WD LOW

**NOTE:** When shifting into or out of 4WD LOW some gear noise may be heard. This noise is normal and is not detrimental to the vehicle or occupants.

Shifting can be performed with the vehicle rolling 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h) or completely stopped. You can use either of the following procedures:

#### Preferred Procedure

1. With the engine running, slow the vehicle to 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h).

2. Shift the transmission into NEUTRAL.
3. While still rolling, rotate the transfer case control switch to the desired position.
4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift the transmission back into gear.

#### **Alternate Procedure**

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. With the ignition switch in the ON position and the engine running, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL.
3. Rotate the transfer case control switch to the desired position.
4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift the transmission back into gear.

#### **NOTE:**

- If Steps 1 or 2 of either the Preferred or Alternate Procedure are not satisfied prior to attempting the shift, then the desired position indicator light will flash continuously while the original position indicator light is ON, until all requirements have been met.
- The ignition switch must be in the ON position for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the ignition switch is not in the ON position, the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.

#### **LIMITED-SLIP DIFFERENTIAL**

The limited-slip differential provides additional traction on snow, ice, mud, sand and gravel, particularly when there is a difference between the traction characteristics of the surface under the right and left rear wheels. During



normal driving and cornering, the limited-slip unit performs similarly to a conventional differential. On slippery surfaces, however, the differential delivers more of the driving effort to the rear wheel having the better traction.

The limited-slip differential is especially helpful during slippery driving conditions. With both rear wheels on a slippery surface, a slight application of the accelerator will supply maximum traction. When starting with only one rear wheel on an excessively slippery surface, slight momentary application of the parking brake may be necessary to gain maximum traction.

### **WARNING!**

**On vehicles equipped with a limited-slip differential never run the engine with one rear wheel off the ground since the vehicle may drive through the rear**

*(Continued)*

### **WARNING! (Continued)**

**wheel remaining on the ground. You could lose control of the vehicle.**

Care should be taken to avoid sudden accelerations when both rear wheels are on a slippery surface. This could cause both rear wheels to spin, and allow the vehicle to slide sideways on the crowned surface of a road or in a turn.

## **DRIVING ON SLIPPERY SURFACES**

### **Acceleration**

Rapid acceleration on snow covered, wet, or other slippery surfaces may cause the driving wheels to pull erratically to the right or left. This phenomenon occurs when there is a difference in the surface traction under the rear (driving) wheels.

**WARNING!**

**Rapid acceleration on slippery surfaces is dangerous. Unequal traction can cause sudden pulling of the rear wheels. You could lose control of the vehicle and possibly have a collision. Accelerate slowly and carefully whenever there is likely to be poor traction (ice, snow, wet mud, loose sand, etc.).**

**Traction**

When driving on wet or slushy roads, it is possible for a wedge of water to build up between the tire and road surface. This is known as hydroplaning and may cause partial or complete loss of vehicle control and stopping ability. To reduce this possibility, the following precautions should be observed:

- Slow down during rainstorms or when the roads are slushy.

- Slow down if the road has standing water or puddles.
- Replace tires when tread wear indicators first become visible.
- Keep tires properly inflated.
- Maintain sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you to avoid a collision in a sudden stop.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a Limited Slip Differential (LSD) that reduces, but does not eliminate, the amount of wheel slip across a given axle for improved handling.

**DRIVING THROUGH WATER**

Driving through water more than a few inches/centimeters deep will require extra caution to ensure safety and prevent damage to your vehicle.

## Flowing/Rising Water

### WARNING!

Do not drive on or across a road or path where water is flowing and/or rising (as in storm run-off). Flowing water can wear away the road or path's surface and cause your vehicle to sink into deeper water. Furthermore, flowing and/or rising water can carry your vehicle away swiftly. Failure to follow this warning may result in injuries that are serious or fatal to you, your passengers, and others around you.

## Shallow Standing Water

Although your vehicle is capable of driving through shallow standing water, consider the following Cautions and Warnings before doing so.

### WARNING!

- Driving through standing water limits your vehicle's traction capabilities. Do not exceed 5 mph (8 km/h) when driving through standing water.
- Driving through standing water limits your vehicle's braking capabilities, which increases stopping distances. Therefore, after driving through standing water, drive slowly and lightly press on the brake pedal several times to dry the brakes.
- Failure to follow these warnings may result in injuries that are serious or fatal to you, your passengers, and others around you.

### CAUTION!

- Always check the depth of the standing water before driving through it. Never drive through

*(Continued)*

**CAUTION!** *(Continued)*

standing water that is deeper than the bottom of the tire rims mounted on the vehicle.

- Determine the condition of the road or the path that is under water and if there are any obstacles in the way before driving through the standing water.
- Do not exceed 5 mph (8 km/h) when driving through standing water. This will minimize wave effects.
- Driving through standing water may cause damage to your vehicle's drivetrain components. Always inspect your vehicle's fluids (i.e., engine oil, transmission, axle, etc.) for signs of contamination (i.e., fluid that is milky or foamy in appearance) after driving through standing water. Do not continue to operate the vehicle if any fluid appears contaminated, as this may result in further damage. Such

*(Continued)*

**CAUTION!** *(Continued)*

damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

- Getting water inside your vehicle's engine can cause it to lock up and stall out, and cause serious internal damage to the engine. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

**POWER STEERING**

The standard power steering system will give you good vehicle response and increased ease of maneuverability in tight spaces. The system will provide mechanical steering capability if power assist is lost.

If for some reason the power assist is interrupted, it will still be possible to steer your vehicle. Under these conditions, you will observe a substantial increase in steering effort, especially at very low vehicle speeds and during parking maneuvers.

**NOTE:**

- Increased noise levels at the end of the steering wheel travel are considered normal and do not indicate that there is a problem with the power steering system.
- Upon initial start-up in cold weather, the power steering pump may make noise for a short amount of time. This is due to the cold, thick fluid in the steering system. This noise should be considered normal, and it does not in any way damage the steering system.

**CAUTION!**

Prolonged operation of the steering system at the end of the steering wheel travel will increase the steering fluid temperature and it should be avoided when possible. Damage to the power steering pump may occur.

**Power Steering Fluid Check**

Checking the power steering fluid level at a defined service interval is not required. The fluid should only be checked if a leak is suspected, abnormal noises are apparent, and/or the system is not functioning as anticipated. Coordinate inspection efforts through an authorized dealer.

**CAUTION!**

Do not use chemical flushes in your power steering system as the chemicals can damage your power steering components. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

**WARNING!**

**Fluid level should be checked on a level surface and with the engine off to prevent injury from moving parts and to ensure accurate fluid level reading. Do not overfill. Use only manufacturer's recommended power steering fluid.**

If necessary, add fluid to restore to the proper indicated level. With a clean cloth, wipe any spilled fluid from all surfaces. Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, And Genuine Parts" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information.

**PARKING BRAKE**

Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the parking brake is fully applied, the engine is off and the Key Fob is removed from the ignition switch. Also, be certain to leave an automatic transmission in PARK, or manual transmission in REVERSE or first gear.

The foot operated parking brake is located below the lower left corner of the instrument panel. To apply the parking brake, firmly push the parking brake pedal fully. To release the parking brake, pull the parking brake release handle.



### Parking Brake Release

When the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch ON, the “Brake Warning Light” in the instrument cluster will illuminate.

### NOTE:

- When the parking brake is applied and the automatic transmission is placed in gear, the “Brake Warning Light” will flash. If vehicle speed is detected, a chime will sound to alert the driver. Fully release the parking brake before attempting to move the vehicle.
- This light only shows that the parking brake is applied. It does not show the degree of brake application.

5

When parking on a hill, it is important to turn the front wheels toward the curb on a downhill grade and away from the curb on an uphill grade. For vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission, apply the parking brake before placing the shift lever in PARK, otherwise the load on the transmission locking mechanism may make it difficult to move the shift lever out of PARK.

The parking brake should always be applied whenever the driver is not in the vehicle.

**WARNING!**

- Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the shift lever.
- Do not leave the Key Fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children, and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go™ in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Be sure the parking brake is fully disengaged before driving; failure to do so can lead to brake failure and a collision.
- Always fully apply the parking brake when leaving your vehicle or it may roll and cause damage or injury. Also, be certain to leave an automatic transmission in PARK, a manual transmission in REVERSE or first gear. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to roll and cause damage or injury.

**CAUTION!**

If the “Brake Warning Light” remains on with the parking brake released, a brake system malfunction is indicated. Have the brake system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately.



## BRAKE SYSTEM

If power assist is lost for any reason (for example, repeated brake applications with the engine off), the brakes will still function. However, you will experience a substantial increase in braking effort to stop the vehicle.

If either the front or rear hydraulic system loses normal braking capability, the remaining system will still function with some loss of overall braking effectiveness. This will be evident by increased pedal travel during application, greater pedal force required to slow or stop, and activation of the “Brake Warning Light” and the “ABS Warning Light” (if equipped) during brake use.

The brake system power assist is provided by a hydro-boost unit which shares fluid with the power steering system. You may experience some clicking or hissing noises from the hydro-boost system during hard braking conditions.

**NOTE:** Under cold temperatures, pedal effort will be higher than normal until the power steering fluid reaches operating temperature.

### Hydraulic Brake Assist

The brake system power assist is provided by a hydro-boost unit which shares fluid with the power steering system. You may experience some clicking or hissing noises from the hydro-boost system during hard braking conditions.

**NOTE:** Under cold temperatures, pedal effort will be higher than normal until the power steering fluid reaches operating temperature.

## ELECTRONIC BRAKE CONTROL SYSTEM

Your vehicle is equipped with an advanced electronic brake control system that includes Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), Traction Control System (TCS), Brake Assist System (BAS), Electronic Roll Mitigation (ERM), Hill Start Assist (HSA), Electronic Stability Control (ESC), Trailer Sway Control (TSC) and Hill Decent Control (HDC [Power Wagon only]). All of the systems work together to enhance vehicle stability and control in various driving conditions, and are commonly referred to as ESC.

### Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)

The Four-Wheel Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) is designed to aid the driver in maintaining vehicle control under adverse braking conditions. The system operates with a separate computer to modulate hydraulic pressure to prevent wheel lockup and help avoid skidding on slippery surfaces.

The system's pump motor runs during an ABS stop to provide regulated hydraulic pressure. The pump motor makes a low humming noise during operation. This is normal.

The ABS conducts a low-speed selftest at about 10 mph (16 km/h). If you have your foot lightly on the brake while this test is occurring, you may feel slight pedal movement. The movement can be more apparent on ice and snow. This is normal.

When you are in a severe braking condition involving use of the ABS, you will experience some pedal drop as the vehicle comes to a complete stop. This is the result of the system reverting to the base brake system and is normal.

Engagement of the ABS may be accompanied by a pulsing sensation. You may also hear a clicking noise.

These occurrences are normal, and indicate that the system is functioning.

### **WARNING!**

- Pumping of the anti-lock brakes will diminish their effectiveness and may lead to a collision. Pumping makes the stopping distance longer. Just press firmly on your brake pedal when you need to slow down or stop.
- The Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase braking or steering efficiency beyond that afforded by the condition of the vehicle brakes and tires or the traction afforded.
- The ABS cannot prevent collisions, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, following another vehicle too closely, or hydroplaning.

*(Continued)*

### **WARNING! (Continued)**

- The capabilities of an ABS-equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.

### **ABS Warning Light**

The ABS includes an amber warning light. When the light is illuminated, the ABS is not functioning. The system reverts to standard, non-anti-lock brakes.

### **Traction Control System (TCS)**

The TCS monitors the amount of wheel spin of each of the driven wheels. If wheel spin is detected, brake pressure is applied to the slipping wheel(s), and engine power is reduced to provide enhanced acceleration and stability. A feature of the TCS system, Brake Limited Differential (BLD), controls the wheel spin across a driven axle. If one wheel on a driven axle is spinning

faster than the other, the system will apply the brake of the spinning wheel. This will allow more engine torque to be applied to the wheel that is not spinning. This feature remains active even if TCS and ESC are in the “Partial Off” mode. Refer to “Electronic Stability Control (ESC)” in this section of this manual. This brake pressure modulation transfers drive torque from slipping to non-slipping wheels to provide optimal forward traction.

### **Hill Start Assist (HSA)**

The HSA system is designed to assist the driver in launching a vehicle on an incline. HSA will maintain the level of brake pressure the driver inputs for a short duration once the driver takes his foot off of the brake pedal. If the driver does not apply the throttle during this short duration, the system will release brake pressure and the vehicle will roll down the incline. The system will release brake pressure in proportion to the amount of throttle applied.

During operation, HSA will activate the brake control system and a clicking noise may occur. If your foot is on the brake pedal during operation you may feel a slight pedal movement. The clicking and pedal movement is normal and both will stop when HSA becomes inactive.

### **HSA Activation Criteria**

The following criteria must be met in order for HSA to activate:

- Vehicle must be stopped
- Vehicle must be on an approximate 7% or greater incline
- Gear selection matches vehicle uphill direction (i.e., vehicle facing uphill is in forward gear; vehicle backing uphill is in REVERSE gear).

**WARNING!**

**There may be situations on minor hills with a loaded vehicle or while pulling a trailer where the system will not activate and slight rolling may occur, which could cause a collision with another vehicle or object. Always remember the driver is responsible for braking the vehicle.**

The system will only work if the intended direction of the vehicle and vehicle gear match. For example, if the intended direction is forward up a hill and the vehicle is in DRIVE and the activation criteria are met, HSA will activate.

The system will work in REVERSE and all forward gears, and will not activate if the vehicle is placed in NEUTRAL.

**Towing And Hauling With HSA**

The HSA system does not know if your vehicle is loaded or towing a trailer unless the TOW/HAUL switch, located on the center stack, is selected. When activated, the “TOW/HAUL Indicator Light” will illuminate in the instrument cluster. Refer to “Automatic Transmission” in “Starting And Operating” for further information. In order to accommodate the extra weight entailed under towing and hauling conditions and to increase driver comfort while launching on a hill, the system recognizes when the TOW/HAUL switch is activated and compensates by releasing brake pressure at a slower rate while throttle is applied in order to prevent the vehicle from rolling down the hill.

**WARNING!**

- If you use a trailer brake controller with your trailer, your trailer brakes may be activated and deactivated with the brake switch. If so, when the brake pedal is released, there may not be enough brake pressure to hold the vehicle and trailer on a hill and this could cause a collision with another vehicle or object behind you. In order to avoid rolling down the incline while resuming acceleration, manually activate the trailer brake or apply more vehicle brake pressure prior to releasing the brake pedal. Always remember the driver is responsible for braking the vehicle.
- HSA is not a parking brake. If you stop the vehicle on a hill without putting the transmission in **PARK** or using the parking brake, it will roll down the incline and could collide with another vehicle,

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

object or person, and cause serious or fatal injury. Always remember to use the parking brake while parking on a hill and that the driver is responsible for braking the vehicle.

**HSA Off**

HSA is a Customer Programmable Feature in the EVIC/DID. If you wish to turn off the HSA feature, refer to “Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID)” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

**Electronic Stability Control (ESC)**

The ESC system enhances directional control and stability of the vehicle under various driving conditions. ESC corrects for oversteering or understeering of the vehicle by applying the brake of the appropriate wheel to assist in counteracting the oversteer or understeer condition. Engine power may also be reduced to help the vehicle maintain the desired path.

ESC uses sensors in the vehicle to determine the vehicle path intended by the driver and compares it to the actual path of the vehicle. When the actual path does not match the intended path, ESC applies the brake of the appropriate wheel to assist in counteracting the oversteer or understeer condition.

- Oversteer - when the vehicle is turning more than appropriate for the steering wheel position.
- Understeer - when the vehicle is turning less than appropriate for the steering wheel position.

**WARNING!**

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase the traction afforded by prevailing

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

road conditions. ESC cannot prevent accidents, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, driving on very slippery surfaces, or hydroplaning. ESC also cannot prevent accidents resulting from loss of vehicle control due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Only a safe, attentive, and skillful driver can prevent accidents. The capabilities of an ESC equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.

## All Two-Wheel Drive Vehicles And Four-Wheel Drive Vehicles In 2WD, 4WD AUTO, Or 4WD LOCK Modes Can Choose The Following ESC Operating Modes:

### ESC On

This is the normal operating mode for ESC in 2WD/4WD AUTO/4WD LOCK modes and in 2WD vehicles. Whenever the vehicle is started or the transfer case (if equipped) is shifted from 4WD LOW or Neutral, back to 4WD LOCK or 4WD AUTO, the ESC system will be in this mode. This mode should be used for almost all driving situations. ESC should only be turned to "ESC Partial Off" or "ESC Full Off" for specific reasons as noted below.

### ESC Partial Off

This mode is entered by momentarily pushing the "ESC Partial Off" switch. When in "Partial Off" mode, the TCS portion of ESC, except for the "limited slip" feature described in the TCS section, has been disabled and the "ESC Off Indicator Light" will be illuminated. All other stability features of ESC function normally. This mode is intended to be used if the vehicle is in deep snow, sand, or gravel conditions and more wheel spin than TCS would normally allow is required to gain traction. To turn ESC on again, momentarily push the "ESC Off" switch. This will restore the normal "ESC On" mode of operation.



**NOTE:** To improve the vehicle's traction when driving with snow chains or starting off in deep snow, sand or gravel, it may be desirable to switch to the "ESC Partial Off" mode by pushing the "ESC Off" switch. Once the situation requiring ESC to be switched to the "ESC Partial Off" mode is overcome, turn ESC back on by momentarily pushing the "ESC Off" switch. This may be done while the vehicle is in motion.

### WARNING!

- When in "ESC Partial Off" mode, the TCS functionality of ESC, (except for the limited slip feature described in the TCS section), has been disabled and the "ESC Off Indicator Light" will be illuminated. When in "ESC Partial Off" mode, the engine power reduction feature of TCS is disabled, and the enhanced vehicle stability offered by the ESC system is reduced.

*(Continued)*

### WARNING! *(Continued)*

- Trailer Sway Control (TSC) is disabled when the ESC system is in the "ESC Partial Off" mode.

**All Four-Wheel Drive Vehicles In 4WD AUTO And 4WD LOCK Modes Can Also Choose The Following ESC Operating Mode. This Is The Only Selectable ESC Operating Mode in 4WD LOW:**

#### ESC Full Off

This mode is intended for off-road use when ESC stability features could inhibit vehicle maneuverability due to trail conditions. This mode is entered by pushing and holding the "ESC Off" switch for five seconds when the vehicle is stopped and the engine is running. After five seconds, the "ESC Off Indicator Light" will illuminate. Push and release the trip odometer button located on the instrument cluster to clear this message.

**NOTE:** The “ESC OFF” message will display and the audible chime will sound when the shift lever is placed into the PARK position from any other position and then moved out of the PARK position. This will occur even if the message was previously cleared.

In this mode, ESC and TCS except for the “limited slip” feature described in the TCS section are turned off until the vehicle reaches a speed of 40 mph (64 km/h). At 40 mph (64 km/h) the system returns to “ESC Partial Off” mode, described above. When the vehicle speed drops below 35 mph (56 km/h) the ESC system reverts back to “ESC Full Off”. ESC is off at low vehicle speeds so that it will not interfere with off-road driving but ESC function returns to provide the stability feature at speeds above 40 mph (64 km/h). The “ESC Off Indicator Light” will always be illuminated when ESC is in “ESC Partial Off” and “ESC Full Off”. To turn ESC on again, momentarily push the “ESC Off” switch. This will restore the normal “ESC On” mode of operation.

“ESC Full Off” is the only operating mode for ESC in 4WD LOW. Whenever the vehicle is started in 4WD LOW or the transfer case (if equipped) is shifted from 4WD LOCK or NEUTRAL, to 4WD LOW, the ESC system will be in this mode.

### **WARNING!**

**In the “ESC Full Off” mode, the engine torque reduction and stability features are disabled. Therefore, the enhanced vehicle stability offered by ESC is unavailable. In an emergency evasive maneuver the ESC system will not engage to assist in maintaining stability. “ESC Full Off” mode is intended for off-highway or off-road use only.**

## ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light And ESC OFF Indicator Light



The “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” in the instrument cluster will come on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position. It should go out with the engine running. If the “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” comes on continuously with the engine running, a malfunction has been detected in the ESC system. If this light remains on after several ignition cycles, and the vehicle has been driven several miles (kilometers) at speeds greater than 30 mph (48 km/h), see your authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the problem diagnosed and corrected.

The “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” (located in the instrument cluster) starts to flash as soon as the tires lose traction and the ESC system becomes active. The “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” also flashes when TCS is active. If the “ESC Activation/

Malfunction Indicator Light” begins to flash during acceleration, ease up on the accelerator and apply as little throttle as possible. Be sure to adapt your speed and driving to the prevailing road conditions.

### NOTE:

- The “ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light” and the “ESC OFF Indicator Light” come on momentarily each time the ignition switch is turned ON.
- Each time the ignition is turned ON, the ESC system will be ON even if it was turned off previously. Except for when the vehicle is started while in 4WD Low Range.
- The ESC system will make buzzing or clicking sounds when it is active. This is normal; the sounds will stop when ESC becomes inactive following the maneuver that caused the ESC activation.



The "ESC OFF Indicator Light" indicates the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is in "ESC Partial Off" or "ESC Full Off".

### Trailer Sway Control (TSC)

The TSC system uses sensors in the vehicle to recognize an excessively swaying trailer and will take the appropriate actions to attempt to stop the sway. The system may reduce engine power and apply the brake of the appropriate wheel(s) to counteract the sway of the trailer. TSC will become active automatically once an excessively swaying trailer is recognized. No driver action is required to activate. Note that TSC cannot stop all trailers from swaying. Always use caution when towing a trailer and follow the trailer tongue weight recommendations. Refer to "Trailer Towing" in "Starting And Operating" for further information. When TSC is functioning, the "ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light" will flash, the engine power may be reduced and you may feel the

brakes being applied to individual wheels to attempt to stop the trailer from swaying. TSC is disabled when the ESC system is in the "ESC Partial Off" or "ESC Full Off" modes.

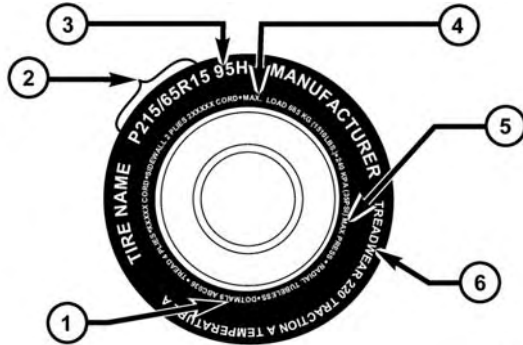
TSC is only active in the default "ESC On" mode. TSC can be disabled by pressing the "ESC Off" switch and entering "ESC Partial Off" mode. It is not active in the "ESC Partial Off" or "ESC Full Off" modes. Refer to the ESC portion of this section for an explanation of the different ESC operating modes.

#### **WARNING!**

**If TSC activates while driving, slow the vehicle down, stop at the nearest safe location, and adjust the trailer load to eliminate trailer sway.**

## TIRE SAFETY INFORMATION

### Tire Markings



054903773

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 — U.S. DOT Safety Standards Code (TIN) | 4 — Maximum Load                               |
| 2 — Size Designation                     | 5 — Maximum Pressure                           |
| 3 — Service Description                  | 6 — Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades |

### NOTE:

- P (Passenger) — Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. P-Metric tires have the letter “P” molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: P215/65R15 95H.
- European — Metric tire sizing is based on European design standards. Tires designed to this standard have the tire size molded into the sidewall beginning with the section width. The letter “P” is absent from this tire size designation. Example: 215/65R15 96H.
- LT (Light Truck) — Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. The size designation for LT-Metric tires is the same as for P-Metric tires except for the letters “LT” that are molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: LT235/85R16.

- Temporary spare tires are designed for temporary emergency use only. Temporary high pressure compact spare tires have the letter "T" or "S" molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: T145/80D18 103M.
- High flotation tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards and it begins with the tire diameter molded into the sidewall. Example: 31x10.5 R15 LT.

### Tire Sizing Chart

#### EXAMPLE:

---

**Example Size Designation:** P215/65R15XL 95H, 215/65R15 96H, LT235/85R16C, T145/80D18 103M, 31x10.5 R15 LT

---

**P** = Passenger car tire size based on U.S. design standards, or

"...**blank**..." = Passenger car tire based on European design standards, or

**LT** = Light truck tire based on U.S. design standards, or

**T or S** = Temporary spare tire or

**31** = Overall diameter in inches (in)

**215, 235, 145** = Section width in millimeters (mm)

---

**EXAMPLE:**

---

**65, 85, 80** = Aspect ratio in percent (%)

- Ratio of section height to section width of tire, or

**10.5** = Section width in inches (in)

---

**R** = Construction code

- "R" means radial construction, or
  - "D" means diagonal or bias construction
- 

**15, 16, 18** = Rim diameter in inches (in)

---

**Service Description:**

---

**95** = Load Index

- A numerical code associated with the maximum load a tire can carry
- 

**H** = Speed Symbol

- A symbol indicating the range of speeds at which a tire can carry a load corresponding to its load index under certain operating conditions
  - The maximum speed corresponding to the speed symbol should only be achieved under specified operating conditions (i.e., tire pressure, vehicle loading, road conditions, and posted speed limits)
-

---

**EXAMPLE:**

---

**Load Identification:**

Absence of the following load identification symbols on the sidewall of the tire indicates a Standard Load (SL) tire:

- **XL** = Extra load (or reinforced) tire, or
- **LL** = Light load tire or
- **C, D, E, F, G** = Load range associated with the maximum load a tire can carry at a specified pressure

---

**Maximum Load** – Maximum load indicates the maximum load this tire is designed to carry

---

**Maximum Pressure** – Maximum pressure indicates the maximum permissible cold tire inflation pressure for this tire

---

**Tire Identification Number (TIN)**

The TIN may be found on one or both sides of the tire, however, the date code may only be on one side. Tires with white sidewalls will have the full TIN, including the date code, located on the white sidewall side of the tire.

Look for the TIN on the outboard side of black sidewall tires as mounted on the vehicle. If the TIN is not found on the outboard side, then you will find it on the inboard side of the tire.



**EXAMPLE:****DOT MA L9 ABCD 0301****DOT** = Department of Transportation

- This symbol certifies that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation tire safety standards and is approved for highway use

**MA** = Code representing the tire manufacturing location (two digits)**L9** = Code representing the tire size (two digits)**ABCD** = Code used by the tire manufacturer (one to four digits)**03** = Number representing the week in which the tire was manufactured (two digits)

- 03 means the 3rd week

**01** = Number representing the year in which the tire was manufactured (two digits)

- 01 means the year 2001
- Prior to July 2000, tire manufacturers were only required to have one number to represent the year in which the tire was manufactured. Example: 031 could represent the 3rd week of 1981 or 1991

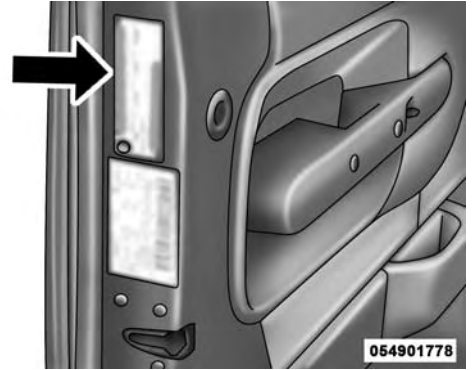
## Tire Terminology And Definitions

Term	Definition
<b>B-Pillar</b>	The vehicle B-Pillar is the structural member of the body located behind the front door.
<b>Cold Tire Inflation Pressure</b>	Cold tire inflation pressure is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after sitting for a minimum of three hours. Inflation pressure is measured in units of PSI (pounds per square inch) or kPa (kilopascals).
<b>Maximum Inflation Pressure</b>	The maximum inflation pressure is the maximum permissible cold tire inflation pressure for this tire. The maximum inflation pressure is molded into the sidewall.
<b>Recommended Cold Tire Inflation Pressure</b>	Vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold tire inflation pressure as shown on the tire placard.
<b>Tire Placard</b>	A label permanently attached to the vehicle describing the vehicle's loading capacity, the original equipment tire sizes and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures.

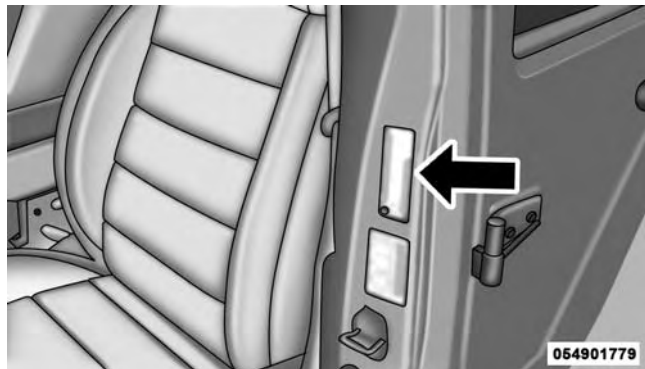
## Tire Loading And Tire Pressure

### Tire And Loading Information Placard Location

**NOTE:** The proper cold tire inflation pressure is listed on the driver's side B-Pillar or the rear edge of the driver's side door.



Example Tire Placard Location (Door)



Example Tire Placard Location (B-Pillar)

## Tire And Loading Information Placard

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION			
SEATING CAPACITY - TOTAL 5 FRONT 2 REAR 3			
THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS.			
TIRE	FRONT	REAR	SPARE
ORIGINAL TIRE SIZE	P195/70R14	P195/70R14	T125/70D15
COLD TIRE INFLATION PRESSURE	200kPa, 29PSI	200kPa, 29PSI	420kPa, 60PSI
SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION			4N109268

811b5a9a

### Tire And Loading Information Placard

This placard tells you important information about the:

1. Number of people that can be carried in the vehicle.
2. Total weight your vehicle can carry.

3. Tire size designed for your vehicle.
4. Cold tire inflation pressures for the front, rear, and spare tires.

### Loading

The vehicle maximum load on the tire must not exceed the load carrying capacity of the tire on your vehicle. You will not exceed the tire's load carrying capacity if you adhere to the loading conditions, tire size, and cold tire inflation pressures specified on the Tire and Loading Information placard and in the "Vehicle Loading" section of this manual.

**NOTE:** Under a maximum loaded vehicle condition, gross axle weight ratings (GAWRs) for the front and rear axles must not be exceeded. For further information on GAWRs, vehicle loading, and trailer towing, refer to "Vehicle Loading" in this manual.

To determine the maximum loading conditions of your vehicle, locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX lbs or XXX kg" on the Tire and Loading Information placard. The combined weight of occupants, cargo/luggage and trailer tongue weight (if applicable) should never exceed the weight referenced here.

### Steps For Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX lbs or XXX kg" on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX lbs or XXX kg.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lbs (635 kg) and there will be five 150 lb (68 kg) passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (295 kg) (since  $5 \times 150 \text{ lbs (68 kg)} = 750 \text{ lbs (340 kg)}$ , and  $1400 \text{ lbs (635 kg)} - 750 \text{ lbs (340 kg)} = 650 \text{ lbs [295 kg]}$ ).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.

**NOTE:**

- If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. The following table shows examples on how to calculate total load, cargo/luggage, and towing capacities of your vehicle with varying seating configurations and number and size of occupants. This table is for illustration purposes only and may not be accurate for the seating and load carry capacity of your vehicle.
- For the following example, the combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 865 lbs (392 kg).

Occupants			Combined weight of occupants and cargo from Tire Placard	MINUS	Combined Occupant's weight	=	AVAILABLE Cargo/Luggage and Trailer Tongue Weight
TOTAL	FRONT	REAR					
<b>EXAMPLE 1</b>							
5	2	3	865 lbs	minus	670 lbs	=	195 lbs
<b>EXAMPLE 2</b>							
3	2	1	865 lbs	minus	540 lbs	=	325 lbs
<b>EXAMPLE 3</b>							
2	2	0	865 lbs	minus	400 lbs	=	465 lbs

811a4d11

**WARNING!**

Overloading of your tires is dangerous. Overloading can cause tire failure, affect vehicle handling, and increase your stopping distance. Use tires of the recommended load capacity for your vehicle. Never overload them.

**TIRES — GENERAL INFORMATION****Tire Pressure**

Proper tire inflation pressure is essential to the safe and satisfactory operation of your vehicle. Four primary areas are affected by improper tire pressure:

- Safety and Vehicle Stability
- Economy
- Tread Wear
- Ride Comfort

**Safety****WARNING!**

- Improperly inflated tires are dangerous and can cause collisions.
- Under-inflation increases tire flexing and can result in overheating and tire failure.
- Over-inflation reduces a tire's ability to cushion shock. Objects on the road and chuckholes can cause damage that result in tire failure.
- Overinflated or under-inflated tires can affect vehicle handling and can fail suddenly, resulting in loss of vehicle control.
- Unequal tire pressures can cause steering problems. You could lose control of your vehicle.
- Unequal tire pressures from one side of the vehicle to the other can cause the vehicle to drift to the right or left.

*(Continued)*



**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Always drive with each tire inflated to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure.

Both under-inflation and over-inflation affect the stability of the vehicle and can produce a feeling of sluggish response or over responsiveness in the steering.

**NOTE:**

- Unequal tire pressures from side to side may cause erratic and unpredictable steering response.
- Unequal tire pressure from side to side may cause the vehicle to drift left or right.

**Fuel Economy**

Underinflated tires will increase tire rolling resistance resulting in higher fuel consumption.

**Ride Comfort And Vehicle Stability**

Proper tire inflation contributes to a comfortable ride. Over-inflation produces a jarring and uncomfortable ride.

**Tire Inflation Pressures**

The proper cold tire inflation pressure is listed on the driver's side B-Pillar or rear edge of the driver's side door.

At least once a month:

- Check and adjust tire pressure with a good quality pocket-type pressure gauge. Do not make a visual judgement when determining proper inflation. Tires may look properly inflated even when they are under-inflated.
- Inspect tires for signs of tire wear or visible damage.

**CAUTION!**

**After inspecting or adjusting the tire pressure, always reinstall the valve stem cap. This will prevent moisture and dirt from entering the valve stem, which could damage the valve stem.**

Inflation pressures specified on the placard are always “cold tire inflation pressure”. Cold tire inflation pressure is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after sitting for a minimum of three hours. The cold tire inflation pressure must not exceed the maximum inflation pressure molded into the tire sidewall.

Check tire pressures more often if subject to a wide range of outdoor temperatures, as tire pressures vary with temperature changes.

Tire pressures change by approximately 1 psi (7 kPa) per 12°F (7°C) of air temperature change. Keep this in mind when checking tire pressure inside a garage, especially in the Winter.

Example: If garage temperature = 68°F (20°C) and the outside temperature = 32°F (0°C) then the cold tire inflation pressure should be increased by 3 psi (21 kPa), which equals 1 psi (7 kPa) for every 12°F (7°C) for this outside temperature condition.

Tire pressure may increase from 2 to 6 psi (13 to 40 kPa) during operation. DO NOT reduce this normal pressure build up or your tire pressure will be too low.

## Tire Pressures For High Speed Operation

The manufacturer advocates driving at safe speeds and within posted speed limits. Where speed limits or conditions are such that the vehicle can be driven at high speeds, maintaining correct tire inflation pressure is very important. Increased tire pressure and reduced vehicle loading may be required for high-speed vehicle operation. Refer to your authorized tire dealer or original equipment vehicle dealer for recommended safe operating speeds, loading and cold tire inflation pressures.

### **WARNING!**

**High speed driving with your vehicle under maximum load is dangerous. The added strain on your tires could cause them to fail. You could have a serious collision. Do not drive a vehicle loaded to the maximum capacity at continuous speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).**

## Tire Maintenance and Replacement

You should follow all maintenance procedures specified by the manufacturer of this vehicle's tires. The tires originally installed on this vehicle were designed to conform to EPA greenhouse gas standards and NHTSA fuel economy standards.

If you need to replace your tires, you should do so with tires that meet those standards. Check with your authorized dealer or with the tire manufacturer for appropriate replacement tires.

## Radial Ply Tires

### WARNING!

Combining radial ply tires with other types of tires on your vehicle will cause your vehicle to handle poorly. The instability could cause a collision. Always use radial ply tires in sets of four. Never combine them with other types of tires.

### Tire Repair

If your tire becomes damaged, it may be repaired if it meets the following criteria:

- The tire has not been driven on when flat.
- The damage is only on the tread section of your tire (sidewall damage is not repairable).
- The puncture is no greater than a  $\frac{1}{4}$  of an inch (6 mm).

Consult an authorized tire dealer for tire repairs and additional information.

Damaged Run Flat tires, or Run Flat tires that have experienced a loss of pressure should be replaced immediately with another Run Flat tire of identical size and service description (Load Index and Speed Symbol).

### Tire Types

#### All Season Tires — If Equipped

All Season tires provide traction for all seasons (Spring, Summer, Fall and Winter). Traction levels may vary between different all season tires. All season tires can be identified by the M+S, M&S, M/S or MS designation on the tire sidewall. Use all season tires only in sets of four; failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.

## Summer Or Three Season Tires — If Equipped

Summer tires provide traction in both wet and dry conditions, and are not intended to be driven in snow or on ice. If your vehicle is equipped with Summer tires, be aware these tires are not designed for Winter or cold driving conditions. Install Winter tires on your vehicle when ambient temperatures are less than 40°F (5°C) or if roads are covered with ice or snow. For more information, contact an authorized dealer.

Summer tires do not contain the all season designation or mountain/snowflake symbol on the tire sidewall. Use Summer tires only in sets of four; failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.

### WARNING!

**Do not use Summer tires in snow/ice conditions. You could lose vehicle control, resulting in severe injury or death. Driving too fast for conditions also creates the possibility of loss of vehicle control.**

## Snow Tires

Some areas of the country require the use of snow tires during the Winter. Snow tires can be identified by a “mountain/snowflake” symbol on the tire sidewall.



If you need snow tires, select tires equivalent in size and type to the original equipment tires. Use snow tires only in sets of four; failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.

Snow tires generally have lower speed ratings than what was originally equipped with your vehicle and should not be operated at sustained speeds over 75 mph (120 km/h). For speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h) refer to original equipment or an authorized tire dealer for recommended safe operating speeds, loading and cold tire inflation pressures.

While studded tires improve performance on ice, skid and traction capability on wet or dry surfaces may be poorer than that of non-studded tires. Some states prohibit studded tires; therefore, local laws should be checked before using these tire types.

### **Run Flat Tires — If Equipped**

Run Flat tires allow you the capability to drive 50 miles (80 km) at 50 mph (80 km/h) after a rapid loss of inflation pressure. This rapid loss of inflation is referred to as the

Run Flat mode. A Run Flat mode occurs when the tire inflation pressure is of/or below 14 psi (96 kPa). Once a Run Flat tire reaches the run flat mode it has limited driving capabilities and needs to be replaced immediately. A Run Flat tire is not repairable.

It is not recommended driving a vehicle loaded at full capacity or to tow a trailer while a tire is in the run flat mode.

See the tire pressure monitoring section for more information.

### **Spare Tires — If Equipped**

**NOTE:** For vehicles equipped with Tire Service Kit instead of a spare tire, please refer to “Tire Service Kit” in “What To Do In Emergencies” for further information.

**CAUTION!**

**Because of the reduced ground clearance, do not take your vehicle through an automatic car wash with a compact or limited-use temporary spare installed. Damage to the vehicle may result.**

**Spare Tire Matching Original Equipped Tire And Wheel — If Equipped**

Your vehicle may be equipped with a spare tire and wheel equivalent in look and function to the original equipment tire and wheel found on the front or rear axle of your vehicle. This spare tire may be used in the tire rotation for your vehicle. If your vehicle has this option, refer to an authorized tire dealer for the recommended tire rotation pattern.

**Compact Spare Tire — If Equipped**

The compact spare is for temporary emergency use only. You can identify if your vehicle is equipped with a compact spare by looking at the spare tire description on the Tire and Loading Information Placard located on the driver's side door opening or on the sidewall of the tire. Compact spare tire descriptions begin with the letter "T" or "S" preceding the size designation. Example: T145/80D18 103M.

T, S = Temporary Spare Tire

Since this tire has limited tread life, the original equipment tire should be repaired (or replaced) and reinstalled on your vehicle at the first opportunity.

Do not install a wheel cover or attempt to mount a conventional tire on the compact spare wheel, since the wheel is designed specifically for the compact spare tire.

Do not install more than one compact spare tire and wheel on the vehicle at any given time.

### **WARNING!**

**Compact spares are for temporary emergency use only. With these spares, do not drive more than 50 mph (80 km/h). Temporary use spares have limited tread life. When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the temporary use spare tire needs to be replaced. Be sure to follow the warnings, which apply to your spare. Failure to do so could result in spare tire failure and loss of vehicle control.**

#### **Full Size Spare — If Equipped**

The full size spare is for temporary emergency use only. This tire may look like the originally equipped tire on the front or rear axle of your vehicle, but it is not. This spare tire may have limited tread life. When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the temporary use full size

spare tire needs to be replaced. Since it is not the same as your original equipment tire, replace (or repair) the original equipment tire and reinstall on the vehicle at the first opportunity.

#### **Limited-Use Spare — If Equipped**

The limited-use spare tire is for temporary emergency use only. This tire is identified by a label located on the limited-use spare wheel. This label contains the driving limitations for this spare. This tire may look like the original equipped tire on the front or rear axle of your vehicle, but it is not. Installation of this limited-use spare tire affects vehicle handling. Since it is not the same as your original equipment tire, replace (or repair) the original equipment tire and reinstall on the vehicle at the first opportunity.



**WARNING!**

Limited-use spares are for emergency use only. Installation of this limited-use spare tire affects vehicle handling. With this tire, do not drive more than the speed listed on the limit-use spare wheel. Keep inflated to the cold tire inflation pressures listed on your Tire and Loading Information Placard located on the driver's side B-Pillar or the rear edge of the driver's side door. Replace (or repair) the original equipment tire at the first opportunity and reinstall it on your vehicle. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control.

**Tire Spinning**

When stuck in mud, sand, snow, or ice conditions, do not spin your vehicle's wheels above 30 mph (48 km/h) or for longer than 30 seconds continuously without stopping.

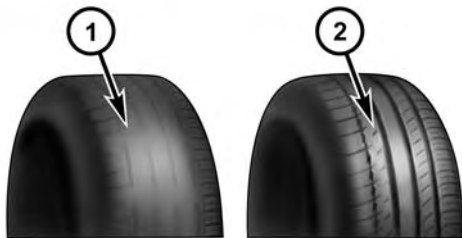
Refer to "Freeing A Stuck Vehicle" in "What To Do In Emergencies" for further information.

**WARNING!**

Fast spinning tires can be dangerous. Forces generated by excessive wheel speeds may cause tire damage or failure. A tire could explode and injure someone. Do not spin your vehicle's wheels faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) for more than 30 seconds continuously when you are stuck, and do not let anyone near a spinning wheel, no matter what the speed.

## Tread Wear Indicators

Tread wear indicators are in the original equipment tires to help you in determining when your tires should be replaced.



055007576

- 1 — Worn Tire  
2 — New Tire

These indicators are molded into the bottom of the tread grooves. They will appear as bands when the tread depth becomes a 1/16 of an inch (2 mm). When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the tire should be replaced. Refer to “Replacement Tires” in this section for further information.

## Life Of Tire

The service life of a tire is dependent upon varying factors including, but not limited to:

- Driving style.
- Tire pressure - Improper cold tire inflation pressures can cause uneven wear patterns to develop across the tire tread. These abnormal wear patterns will reduce tread life, resulting in the need for earlier tire replacement.
- Distance driven.

- Performance tires, tires with a speed rating of V or higher, and Summer tires typically have a reduced tread life. Rotation of these tires per the vehicle maintenance schedule is highly recommended.

### **WARNING!**

**Tires and the spare tire should be replaced after six years, regardless of the remaining tread. Failure to follow this warning can result in sudden tire failure. You could lose control and have a collision resulting in serious injury or death.**

Keep dismounted tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Protect tires from contact with oil, grease, and gasoline.

### **Replacement Tires**

The tires on your new vehicle provide a balance of many characteristics. They should be inspected regularly for

wear and correct cold tire inflation pressures. The manufacturer strongly recommends that you use tires equivalent to the originals in size, quality and performance when replacement is needed. Refer to the paragraph on “Tread Wear Indicator”. Refer to the Tire and Loading Information placard or the Vehicle Certification Label for the size designation of your tire. The Load Index and Speed Symbol for your tire will be found on the original equipment tire sidewall. See the Tire Sizing Chart example found in the Tire Safety Information section of this manual for more information relating to the Load Index and Speed Symbol of a tire.

It is recommended to replace the two front tires or two rear tires as a pair. Replacing just one tire can seriously affect your vehicle’s handling. If you ever replace a wheel, make sure that the wheel’s specifications match those of the original wheels.

It is recommended you contact your authorized tire dealer or original equipment dealer with any questions you may have on tire specifications or capability. Failure to use equivalent replacement tires may adversely affect the safety, handling, and ride of your vehicle.

**WARNING!**

- Do not use a tire, wheel size or rating other than that specified for your vehicle. Some combinations of unapproved tires and wheels may change suspension dimensions and performance characteristics, resulting in changes to steering, handling, and braking of your vehicle. This can cause unpredictable handling and stress to steering and suspension components. You could lose control and have a collision resulting in serious injury or death. Use only the tire and wheel sizes with load ratings approved for your vehicle.

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Never use a tire with a smaller load index or capacity, other than what was originally equipped on your vehicle. Using a tire with a smaller load index could result in tire overloading and failure. You could lose control and have a collision.
- Failure to equip your vehicle with tires having adequate speed capability can result in sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

**CAUTION!**

Replacing original tires with tires of a different size may result in false speedometer and odometer readings.

## SUPPLEMENTAL TIRE PRESSURE INFORMATION — IF EQUIPPED

A light load vehicle condition is defined as two passengers [150 lbs (68 kg) each] plus 200 lbs (91 kg) of cargo. Cold tire inflation pressures for a lightly loaded vehicle will be found on the face of the driver's door.

## TIRE CHAINS (TRACTION DEVICES)

Use of traction devices require sufficient tire-to-body clearance. Follow these recommendations to guard against damage.

- Traction device must be of proper size for the tire, as recommended by the traction device manufacturer.

Please follow the table below for proper tire size, chain type, and axle recommendations:

Vehicle	Axle Recommendations	Tire Sizes	Chain Class
Chassis Cab 3500 (Single Rear Wheel) Models	Rear Only	LT265/70R18E	U Class
Chassis Cab 3500 (Dual Rear Wheel) 4X2 Models	Rear Only	LT235/80R17E	U Class
Chassis Cab 3500 (Dual Rear Wheel) 4X4 Models	Front/Rear	LT235/80R17E	U Class
Chassis Cab 4500/5500 Models	Rear Only	225/70R19.5G	U Class

**WARNING!**

Using tires of different size and type (M+S, Snow) between front and rear axles can cause unpredictable handling. You could lose control and have a collision.

**CAUTION!**

To avoid damage to your vehicle or tires, observe the following precautions:

- Because of restricted traction device clearance between tires and other suspension components, it is important that only traction devices in good condition are used. Broken devices can cause serious damage. Stop the vehicle immediately if noise occurs that could indicate device breakage. Remove the damaged parts of the device before further use.

**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- Install device as tightly as possible and then re-tighten after driving about ½ mile (0.8 km).
- Do not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h).
- Drive cautiously and avoid severe turns and large bumps, especially with a loaded vehicle.
- Do not drive for a prolonged period on dry pavement.
- Observe the traction device manufacturer's instructions on the method of installation, operating speed, and conditions for use. Always use the suggested operating speed of the device manufacturer's if it is less than 30 mph (48 km/h).
- Do not use traction devices on a compact spare tire.

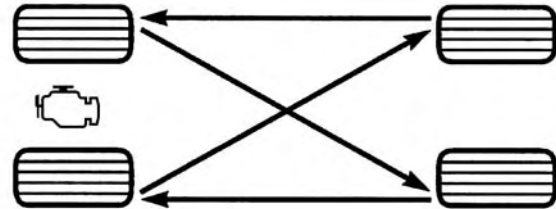
*(Continued)*

## TIRE ROTATION RECOMMENDATIONS

Tires on the front and rear axles of vehicles operate at different loads and perform different steering, driving, and braking functions. For these reasons, they wear at unequal rates.

These effects can be reduced by timely rotation of tires. The benefits of rotation are especially worthwhile with aggressive tread designs such as those on On/Off Road type tires. Rotation will increase tread life, help to maintain mud, snow, and wet traction levels, and contribute to a smooth, quiet ride.

Refer to the “Maintenance Schedule” for the proper maintenance intervals. More frequent rotation is permissible if desired. The reasons for any rapid or unusual wear should be corrected prior to rotation being performed.

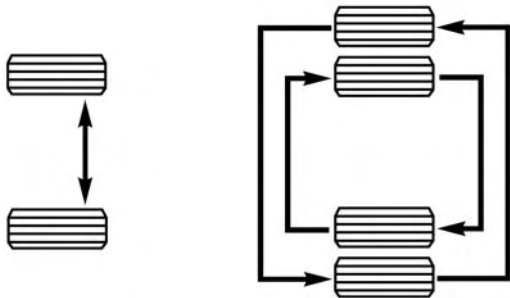


055703771

### Tire Rotation

**NOTE:** On Canadian vehicles only, if your vehicle is equipped with All-Season type tires on the front and On/Off Road type tires mounted on the rear, do not use a front to back rotation pattern. Instead, rotate your tires side to side at the recommended intervals.

## Dual Rear Wheels



055740470

### Tire Rotation

The tires used on dual wheel assemblies should be matched for wear to prevent overloading one tire in a set. To check if tires are even, lay a straight edge across all four tires. The straight edge should touch all the tires.

**NOTE:** If your vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS):

- The Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS) uses unique sensors in the inner rear wheels to help identify them from the outer rear wheels, because of this, the inner and outer wheel locations can't be switched.
- After a tire rotation is completed, as shown below, the system can auto learn the locations of each sensor ID. Auto learning/localization occurs when the vehicle ignition status is changed from Off to On and speeds of greater than 5 mph (8km/h) are obtained and remain over 5mph (8km/h) for at about a 15 minute period. You may need to drive for 20 minutes to account slower speeds and stops.
- If the tires are rotated incorrectly, The Auto localization of the TPIS sensors will fail to locate correctly resulting in incorrect locations for the pressure values displayed in the Instrument Cluster.



**CAUTION!**

**4500/5500 Dual Rear Tires may only have one approved direction of rotation. This is to accommodate the asymmetrical design (tread pattern) of the On/Off road tire.**

- **When replacing a flat, the spare tire may have to be remounted on the rim or installed at a different location to maintain the correct placement of the tire on the wheel relative to the tire/wheel position on the vehicle. For example, if the spare is used to replace an outer rear tire it will have to be remounted on the rim so that the wheel is dished inward. That way the tread design of asymmetrical tires will maintain proper position.**

**TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR SYSTEM (TPMS)**

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) will warn the driver of a low tire pressure based on the vehicle recommended cold placard pressure.

The tire pressure will vary with temperature by about 1 psi (7 kPa) for every 12°F (6.5°C). This means that when the outside temperature decreases, the tire pressure will decrease. Tire pressure should always be set based on cold inflation tire pressure. This is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after a three hour period. The cold tire inflation pressure must not exceed the maximum inflation pressure molded into the tire sidewall. Refer to “Tires – General Information” in “Starting And Operating” for information on how to properly inflate the vehicle’s tires. The tire pressure will

also increase as the vehicle is driven - this is normal and there should be no adjustment for this increased pressure.

The TPMS will warn the driver of a low tire pressure if the tire pressure falls below the low-pressure warning limit for any reason, including low temperature effects and natural pressure loss through the tire.

The TPMS will continue to warn the driver of low tire pressure as long as the condition exists, and will not turn off until the tire pressure is at or above the recommended cold placard pressure. Once the low tire pressure warning (Tire Pressure Monitoring [TPM] Telltale Light) illuminates, you must increase the tire pressure to the recommended cold placard pressure in order for the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" to turn off. The system will automatically update and the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will turn off once the system receives the updated tire pressures. The vehicle may need

to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (25 km/h) in order for the TPMS to receive this information.

For example, your vehicle may have a recommended cold (parked for more than three hours) placard pressure of 30 psi (207 kPa). If the ambient temperature is 68°F (20°C) and the measured tire pressure is 27 psi (186 kPa), a temperature drop to 20°F (-7°C) will decrease the tire pressure to approximately 23 psi (158 kPa). This tire pressure is sufficiently low enough to turn ON the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light." Driving the vehicle may cause the tire pressure to rise to approximately 27 psi (186 kPa), but the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will still be ON. In this situation, the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will turn OFF only after the tires are inflated to the vehicle's recommended cold placard pressure value.

**CAUTION!**

- The TPMS has been optimized for the original equipment tires and wheels. TPMS pressures have been established for the tire size equipped on your vehicle. Undesirable system operation or sensor damage may result when using replacement equipment that is not of the same size, type, and/or style. Aftermarket wheels can cause sensor damage. Using aftermarket tire sealants may cause the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor to become inoperable. After using an aftermarket tire sealant it is recommended that you take your vehicle to an authorized dealership to have your sensor function checked.
- After inspecting or adjusting the tire pressure always reinstall the valve stem cap. This will prevent moisture and dirt from entering the valve stem, which could damage the TPMS sensor.

**NOTE:**

- The TPMS is not intended to replace normal tire care and maintenance or to provide warning of a tire failure or condition.
- The TPMS should not be used as a tire pressure gauge while adjusting your tire pressure.
- Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.
- The TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure using an accurate tire pressure gauge, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light."

- Seasonal temperature changes will affect tire pressure, and the TPMS will monitor the actual tire pressure in the tire.

### **Base System — If Equipped**

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses wireless technology with wheel rim mounted electronic sensors to monitor tire pressure levels. Sensors mounted to each wheel as part of the valve stem transmit tire pressure readings to the receiver module.

**NOTE:** It is particularly important for you to check the tire pressure in all of the tires on your vehicle monthly and to maintain the proper pressure.

The TPMS consists of the following components:

- Receiver module
- Four TPM sensors
- TPM Telltale Light

The matching full size spare wheel and tire assembly (if equipped) has a TPM sensor. The matching full size spare can be used in place of any of the four road tires. The TPMS will only monitor the pressure in the full size spare when it is used in place of a road tire. Otherwise, a spare with a pressure below the low-pressure limit will not cause the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” to illuminate or the chime to sound.

### **Premium System**

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses wireless technology with wheel rim mounted electronic sensors to monitor tire pressure levels. Sensors mounted to each wheel as part of the valve stem transmit tire pressure readings to the receiver module.

**NOTE:** It is particularly important for you to check the tire pressure in all of the tires on your vehicle monthly and to maintain the proper pressure.

The TPMS consists of the following components:

- Receiver module
- Four TPM sensors
- Various TPMS messages, which display in the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID)
- TPM Telltale Light

The matching full size spare wheel and tire assembly (if equipped) has a TPM sensor. The full size spare can be used in place of any of the four road tires. A spare with a pressure below the low-pressure limit will not cause the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” to illuminate or the chime to sound while it is stored in the spare tire location.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring Low Pressure Warnings



The “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will illuminate in the instrument cluster and a chime will sound when tire pressure is low in one or more of the four active road tires. In addition, the EVIC/DID will display a “LOW TIRE” message and a graphic showing the pressure values of each tire with the low tire pressure values in a different color. An “Inflate to XX” message will also be displayed.

**EXAMPLE ONLY**

Low Tire PSI

27		30
27		21
2345		Mi

055900259

**“LOW TIRE PRESSURE” Message**

Should this occur, you should stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires with a low pressure condition (those in a different color in the EVIC/DID graphic) to the vehicle’s recommended cold placard pressure inflation value as shown in the “Inflate to XX” message. Once the system receives the updated tire pressures, the system

will automatically update, the graphic display in the EVIC/DID will return to it’s original color, and the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will turn off. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h) in order for the TPMS to receive this information.

**Service TPMS Warning**

If a system fault is detected, the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid. The system fault will also sound a chime. In addition, the EVIC/DID will display a “SERVICE TPM SYSTEM” message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value to indicate which sensor is not being received.

**EXAMPLE ONLY**

Tire PSI  
 30 33  
 30 ---



055900260

**Tire Pressure Monitor Display**

If the ignition switch is cycled, this sequence will repeat, providing the system fault still exists. If the system fault no longer exists, the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will no longer flash, and the "SERVICE TPM

SYSTEM" message will no longer display, and a pressure value will display in place of the dashes. A system fault can occur due to any of the following:

- Signal interference due to electronic devices or driving next to facilities emitting the same radio frequencies as the TPM sensors.
- Installing aftermarket window tinting that contains materials that may block radio wave signals.
- Accumulation of snow or ice around the wheels or wheel housings.
- Using tire chains on the vehicle.
- Using wheels/tires not equipped with TPM sensors.

### Vehicles With Matching Full Size Spare

- The matching full size spare wheel and tire assembly has a TPM sensor that can be monitored by the TPMS.
- If you install the full size spare in place of a road tire that has a pressure below the low-pressure warning limit, upon the next ignition switch cycle, a chime will sound and the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will turn ON. In addition, the EVIC/DID will display a “LOW TIRE” message and a graphic showing the low tire pressure value in a different color. An “Inflate to XX” message will also be displayed.
- After driving the vehicle for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (25 km/h) the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will turn OFF and the pressure value will be updated and return to its original color, as long as no tire pressure is below the low-pressure warning limit in any of the four active road tires.

### Vehicles With Non Matching Full Size Spare Or Compact Spare

- The non matching full size spare or compact spare tire does not have a TPM sensor. Therefore, the TPMS will not monitor the pressure in the non matching full size spare or compact spare tire.
- If you install the non matching full size spare or compact spare tire in place of a road tire that has a pressure below the low-pressure warning limit, upon the next ignition switch cycle, the TPM Telltale Light and a “LOW TIRE” message will remain ON and a chime will sound. In addition, the graphic in the EVIC/DID will still display a flashing pressure value or a pressure value in a different color.
- After driving the vehicle for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h), the TPM Telltale Light will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid. In addition, the EVIC/DID will display a “SERVICE TPM



SYSTEM" message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value.

- For each subsequent ignition switch cycle, a chime will sound, the TPM Telltale Light will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid, and the EVIC/DID will display a "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value.
- Once you repair or replace the original road tire and reinstall it on the vehicle in place of the non matching full size spare or compact spare, the TPMS will update automatically. In addition, the TPM Telltale Light will turn OFF and the graphic in the EVIC/DID will display a new pressure value instead of dashes (- -), as long as no tire pressure is below the low-pressure warning limit in any of the four active road tires. The

vehicle may need to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h) in order for the TPMS to receive this information.

### **Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS) Chassis Cab — If Equipped**

Your vehicle may be equipped with a Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS).

The Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS) uses wireless technology with wheel rim mounted electronic sensors to transmit tire pressure levels. Sensors mounted to each wheel as part of the valve stem transmit tire pressure readings to the receiver module.

**NOTE:** It is particularly important for you to check the tire pressure in all of the tires on your vehicle monthly and to maintain the proper pressure.

The TPIS consists of the following components:

- Receiver module
- Four TPM sensors (Single Rear Wheel [SRW] applications)
- Six TPM sensors (Dual Rear Wheel [DRW] applications)
- Pressure display in the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID)

The TPIS system will display all four (Single Rear Wheel [SRW] applications) or six (Dual Rear Wheel [DRW] applications) tire pressure values EVIC/DID display.

If a system fault is detected, the EVIC/DID will display a "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value to indicate which sensor is not being received.

If the ignition switch is cycled, this sequence will repeat, providing the system fault still exists. If the system fault no longer exists, the "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message will no longer be displayed, and a pressure value will display in place of the dashes. A system fault can occur due to any of the following:

- Signal interference due to electronic devices or driving next to facilities emitting the same radio frequencies as the TPM sensors.
- Installing aftermarket window tinting that contains materials that may block radio wave signals.
- Accumulation of snow or ice around the wheels or wheel housings.
- Using tire chains on the vehicle.
- Using wheels/tires not equipped with TPM sensors.

## General Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules and RSS 210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The TPM sensors are regulated under one of the following licenses:

United States	GQ4-61T
Canada	1470A-42T

## FUEL REQUIREMENTS

### 5.7L/6.4L Engines



This engine is designed to meet all emissions regulations and provide satisfactory fuel economy and performance when using high quality unleaded gasoline having an octane range of 87 to 89. The manufacturer recommends the use of 89 octane for optimum performance. The use of premium gasoline (Over 89 octane) is not recommended, as it will not provide any benefit over regular gasoline in these engines.

Light spark knock at low engine speeds is not harmful to your engine. However, continued heavy spark knock at high speeds can cause damage and immediate service is required. Poor quality gasoline can cause problems such

as hard starting, stalling, and hesitations. If you experience these symptoms, try another brand of gasoline before considering service for the vehicle.

Over 40 auto manufacturer's world wide have issued and endorsed consistent gasoline specifications (the World-wide Fuel Charter, WWFC) which define fuel properties necessary to deliver enhanced emissions, performance, and durability for your vehicle. The manufacturer recommends the use of gasolines that meet the WWFC specifications, if they are available.

### **Reformulated Gasoline**

Many areas of the country require the use of cleaner burning gasoline referred to as "Reformulated Gasoline". Reformulated gasoline contain oxygenates and are specifically blended to reduce vehicle emissions and improve air quality.

The use of reformulated gasoline is recommended. Properly blended reformulated gasoline will provide improved performance and durability of engine and fuel system components.

### **Gasoline/Oxygenate Blends**

Some fuel suppliers blend unleaded gasoline with oxygenates such as ethanol.

#### **CAUTION!**

**DO NOT** use gasoline containing Methanol or gasoline containing more than 15% Ethanol. Use of these blends may result in starting and drivability problems, damage critical fuel system components, cause emissions to exceed the applicable standard, and/or cause the "Malfunction Indicator Light" to illuminate. Please observe pump labels as they should clearly communicate if a fuel contains greater than 15% ethanol.

Problems that result from using gasoline containing Methanol or gasoline containing more than 10% ethanol are not the responsibility of the manufacturer and may void or not be covered under New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

### **E-85 Usage In Non-Flex Fuel Vehicles**

Non-Flex Fuel Vehicles (FFV) are compatible with gasoline containing up to 10% ethanol (E10). Gasoline with higher ethanol content may void the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

If a Non-FFV vehicle is inadvertently fueled with E-85 fuel, the engine will have some or all of these symptoms:

- Operate in a lean mode.
- OBD II “Malfunction Indicator Light” on.
- Poor engine performance.
- Poor cold start and cold drivability.
- Increased risk for fuel system component corrosion.

### **MMT In Gasoline**

Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl (MMT) is a manganese-containing metallic additive that is blended into some gasoline to increase octane. Gasoline blended with MMT provides no performance advantage beyond gasoline of the same octane number without MMT. Gasoline blended with MMT reduces spark plug life and reduces emissions system performance in some vehicles. The manufacturer recommends that gasoline without MMT be used in your vehicle. The MMT content of gasoline may not be indicated on the gasoline pump, therefore, you should ask your gasoline retailer whether the gasoline contains MMT. MMT is prohibited in Federal and California reformulated gasoline.

## Materials Added To Fuel

All gasoline sold in the United States is required to contain effective detergent additives. Use of additional detergents or other additives is not needed under normal conditions and they would result in additional cost. Therefore, you should not have to add anything to the fuel.

## Fuel System Cautions

### CAUTION!

Follow these guidelines to maintain your vehicle's performance:

- The use of leaded gasoline is prohibited by Federal law. Using leaded gasoline can impair engine performance and damage the emissions control system.

### CAUTION! (Continued)

- An out-of-tune engine or certain fuel or ignition malfunctions can cause the catalytic converter to overheat. If you notice a pungent burning odor or some light smoke, your engine may be out of tune or malfunctioning and may require immediate service. Contact your authorized dealer for service assistance.
- The use of fuel additives, which are now being sold as octane enhancers, is not recommended. Most of these products contain high concentrations of methanol. Fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems resulting from the use of such fuels or additives is not the responsibility of the manufacturer and may void or not be covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

(Continued)

**NOTE:** Intentional tampering with the emissions control system can result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

## Carbon Monoxide Warnings

### WARNING!

Carbon monoxide (CO) in exhaust gases is deadly. Follow the precautions below to prevent carbon monoxide poisoning:

- Do not inhale exhaust gases. They contain carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas, which can kill. Never run the engine in a closed area, such as a garage, and never sit in a parked vehicle with the engine running for an extended period. If the vehicle is stopped in an open area with the engine running for more than a short period, adjust the ventilation system to force fresh, outside air into the vehicle.

*(Continued)*

### WARNING! *(Continued)*

- Guard against carbon monoxide with proper maintenance. Have the exhaust system inspected every time the vehicle is raised. Have any abnormal conditions repaired promptly. Until repaired, drive with all side windows fully open.

## ADDING FUEL

### CAUTION!

- Damage to the fuel system or emissions control system could result from using an improper fuel tank filler tube cap (fuel filler cap). A poorly fitting cap could let impurities into the fuel system. Also, a poorly-fitted aftermarket cap can cause the MIL (Malfunction Indicator Light) to illuminate due to fuel vapors escaping from the system.

*(Continued)*

**CAUTION!** *(Continued)*

- A poorly fitting fuel filler cap may cause the MIL to turn on.
- To avoid fuel spillage and overfilling, do not “top off” the fuel tank after filling.

**NOTE:** When the fuel nozzle “clicks” or shuts off the fuel tank is full.

**WARNING!**

- Never have any smoking materials lit in or near the vehicle when the gas cap is removed or the tank is being filled.
- Never add fuel to the vehicle when the engine is running. This is in violation of most state and federal fire regulations and may cause the MIL to turn on.

**NOTE:** Tighten the gas cap  $\frac{1}{4}$  turn until you hear one click. This is an indication that the cap is properly tightened.

If the gas cap is not tightened properly, the Malfunction Indicator Light will come on. Be sure the gas cap is tightened every time the vehicle is refueled.

**WARNING!**

A fire may result if gasoline is pumped into a portable container that is inside of a vehicle. You could be burned. Always place gas containers on the ground while filling.



## Loose Fuel Filler Cap Message



If the vehicle diagnostic system determines that the fuel filler cap is loose, improperly installed, or damaged, a loose gascap indicator will display in the EVIC/DID telltale display area. Refer to “Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID) in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information. Tighten the fuel filler cap properly and push the SELECT button to turn off the message. If the problem continues, the message will appear the next time the vehicle is started.

## VEHICLE LOADING

### Certification Label

As required by National Highway Traffic Safety Administration regulations, your vehicle has a certification label affixed to the driver’s side door or pillar.

This label contains the month and year of manufacture, Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) front and rear, and Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). A Month-Day-Hour (MDH) number is included on this label and indicates the Month, Day and Hour of manufacture. The bar code that appears on the bottom of the label is your VIN.

### **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)**

The GVWR is the total permissible weight of your vehicle including driver, passengers, vehicle, options and cargo. The label also specifies maximum capacities of front and rear axle systems (GAWR). Total load must be limited so GVWR and front and rear GAWR are not exceeded.

### **Payload**

The payload of a vehicle is defined as the allowable load weight a truck can carry, including the weight of the driver, all passengers, options and cargo.

### **Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)**

The GAWR is the maximum permissible load on the front and rear axles. The load must be distributed in the cargo area so that the GAWR of each axle is not exceeded.

Each axle GAWR is determined by the components in the system with the lowest load carrying capacity (axle, springs, tires or wheels). Heavier axles or suspension

components sometimes specified by purchasers for increased durability does not necessarily increase the vehicle's GVWR.

### **Tire Size**

The tire size on the Vehicle Certification Label represents the actual tire size on your vehicle. Replacement tires must be equal to the load capacity of this tire size.

### **Rim Size**

This is the rim size that is appropriate for the tire size listed.

### **Inflation Pressure**

This is the cold tire inflation pressure for your vehicle for all loading conditions up to full GAWR.

## Curb Weight

The curb weight of a vehicle is defined as the total weight of the vehicle with all fluids, including vehicle fuel, at full capacity conditions, and with no occupants or cargo loaded into the vehicle. The front and rear curb weight values are determined by weighing your vehicle on a commercial scale before any occupants or cargo are added.

## Loading

The actual total weight and the weight of the front and rear of your vehicle at the ground can best be determined by weighing it when it is loaded and ready for operation.

The entire vehicle should first be weighed on a commercial scale to insure that the GVWR has not been exceeded. The weight on the front and rear of the vehicle should then be determined separately to be sure that the load is properly distributed over the front and rear axle. Weighing the vehicle may show that the GAWR of either the

front or rear axles has been exceeded but the total load is within the specified GVWR. If so, weight must be shifted from front to rear or rear to front as appropriate until the specified weight limitations are met. Store the heavier items down low and be sure that the weight is distributed equally. Stow all loose items securely before driving.

Improper weight distributions can have an adverse effect on the way your vehicle steers and handles and the way the brakes operate.

### CAUTION!

**Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the GVWR or the maximum front and rear GAWR. If you do, parts on your vehicle can break, or it can change the way your vehicle handles. This could cause you to lose control. Also overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.**

## TRAILER TOWING

In this section you will find safety tips and information on limits to the type of towing you can reasonably do with your vehicle. Before towing a trailer, carefully review this information to tow your load as efficiently and safely as possible.

To maintain the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage, follow the requirements and recommendations in this manual concerning vehicles used for trailer towing.

### Common Towing Definitions

The following trailer towing related definitions will assist you in understanding the following information:

#### Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

The GVWR is the total allowable weight of your vehicle. This includes driver, passengers, cargo and tongue

weight. The total load must be limited so that you do not exceed the GVWR. Refer to "Vehicle Loading/Vehicle Certification Label" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

#### Gross Trailer Weight (GTW)

The GTW is the weight of the trailer plus the weight of all cargo, consumables and equipment (permanent or temporary) loaded in or on the trailer in its "loaded and ready for operation" condition.

The recommended way to measure GTW is to put your fully loaded trailer on a vehicle scale. The entire weight of the trailer must be supported by the scale.

**WARNING!**

If the gross trailer weight is 5,000 lbs (2 267 kg) or more, it is mandatory to use a weight-distributing hitch to ensure stable handling of your vehicle. If you use a standard weight-carrying hitch, you could lose control of your vehicle and cause a collision.

**Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR)**

The GCWR is the total permissible weight of your vehicle and trailer when weighed in combination.

**Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)**

The GAWR is the maximum capacity of the front and rear axles. Distribute the load over the front and rear axles evenly. Make sure that you do not exceed either front or

rear GAWR. Refer to “Vehicle Loading/Vehicle Certification Label” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

**WARNING!**

It is important that you do not exceed the maximum front or rear GAWR. A dangerous driving condition can result if either rating is exceeded. You could lose control of the vehicle and have an accident.

**Tongue Weight (TW)**

The tongue weight is the downward force exerted on the hitch ball by the trailer. The recommended tongue weight is 10% to 15% of the vehicle’s GTW for a conventional hitch. You must consider this as part of the load on your vehicle.

### **Frontal Area**

The frontal area is the maximum height multiplied by the maximum width of the front of a trailer.

### **Trailer Sway Control**

The trailer sway control is a telescoping link that can be installed between the hitch receiver and the trailer tongue that typically provides adjustable friction associated with the telescoping motion to dampen any unwanted trailer swaying motions while traveling.

### **Weight-Carrying Hitch**

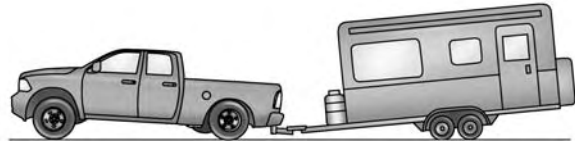
A weight-carrying hitch supports the trailer tongue weight, just as if it were luggage located at a hitch ball or some other connecting point of the truck. These kind of hitches are the most popular on the market today and they are commonly used to tow small- and medium-sized trailers.

### **Weight-Distributing Hitch**

A weight-distributing system works by applying leverage through spring (load) bars. They are typically used for heavier loads to distribute trailer tongue weight to the tow vehicle's front axle and the trailer axle(s). When used in accordance with the manufacturer's directions, it provides for a more level ride, offering more consistent steering and brake control, thereby enhancing towing safety. The addition of a friction/hydraulic sway control also dampens sway caused by traffic and crosswinds and contributes positively to tow vehicle and trailer stability. Trailer sway control and a weight distributing (load equalizing) hitch are recommended for heavier Tongue Weights (TW) and may be required depending on vehicle and trailer configuration/loading to comply with GAWR requirements.

**WARNING!**

- An improperly adjusted weight distributing hitch system may reduce handling, stability and braking performance and could result in a collision.
- Weight distributing systems may not be compatible with surge brake couplers. Consult with your hitch and trailer manufacturer or a reputable Recreational Vehicle dealer for additional information.



5

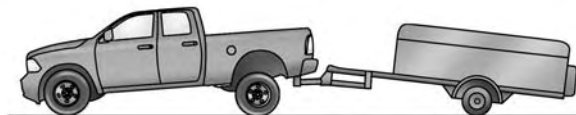
0570049865

Without Weight-Distributing Hitch (Incorrect)



0570049866

With Weight-Distributing Hitch (Correct)



0570049867

Improper Adjustment Of Weight-Distributing Hitch  
(Incorrect)



## Fifth-Wheel Hitch

The fifth-wheel hitch is a special high platform with a coupling that mounts over the rear axle of the tow vehicle in the truck bed. It connects a vehicle and fifth-wheel trailer with a coupling king pin.

## Gooseneck Hitch

The gooseneck hitch employs a pivoted coupling arm which attaches to a ball mounted in the bed of a pickup truck. The coupling arm connects to the hitch mounted over the rear axle in the truck bed.

## Trailer Hitch Classification

The following chart provides the industry standard for the maximum trailer weight a given trailer hitch class can tow and should be used to assist you in selecting the correct trailer hitch for your intended towing condition.

Trailer Hitch Classification Definitions	
Class	Max. Trailer Hitch Industry Standards
Class I - Light Duty	2,000 lbs (907 kg)
Class II - Medium Duty	3,500 lbs (1 587 kg)
Class III - Heavy Duty	5,000 lbs (2 268 kg)
Class IV - Extra Heavy Duty	10,000 lbs (4 540 kg)
Fifth Wheel/Gooseneck	Greater than 10,000 lbs (4 540 kg)
Refer to the "Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings)" for the Maximum Gross Trailer Weight (GTW) towable for your given drive-train.	
All trailer hitches should be professionally installed on your vehicle.	

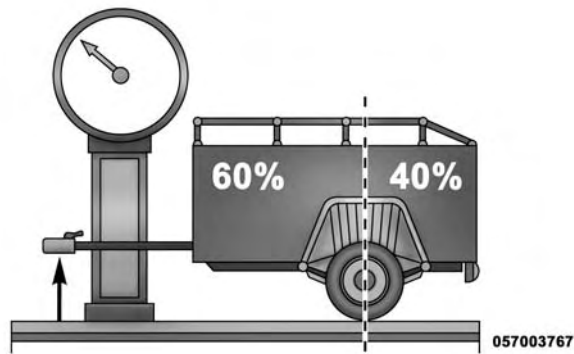
## Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings)

**NOTE:** For additional trailer towing information (maximum trailer weight ratings) refer to the following website addresses:

- [ramtrucks.com/en/towing\\_guide/](http://ramtrucks.com/en/towing_guide/)
- [ramtruck.ca](http://ramtruck.ca) (Canada)
- [rambodybuilder.com](http://rambodybuilder.com)

### Trailer And Tongue Weight

Always load a trailer with 60% of the weight in the front of the trailer. This places 10% of the GTW on the tow hitch of your vehicle. Loads balanced over the wheels or heavier in the rear can cause the trailer to sway **severely** side to side which will cause loss of control of the vehicle and trailer. Failure to load trailers heavier in front is the cause of many trailer collisions. Never exceed the maximum tongue weight stamped on your trailer hitch.



Consider the following items when computing the weight on the rear axle of the vehicle:

- The tongue weight of the trailer
- The weight of any other type of cargo or equipment put in or on your vehicle
- The weight of the driver and all passengers

**NOTE:** Remember that everything put into or on the trailer adds to the load on your vehicle. Also, additional factory-installed options or dealer-installed options must be considered as part of the total load on your vehicle. Refer to “Tire Safety Information/Tire and Loading Information Placard” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

### Towing Requirements

To promote proper break-in of your new vehicle drivetrain components the following guidelines are recommended:

#### CAUTION!

- Do not tow a trailer at all during the first 500 miles (805 km) the new vehicle is driven. The engine, axle or other parts could be damaged.

*(Continued)*

#### CAUTION! *(Continued)*

- Then, during the first 500 miles (805 km) that a trailer is towed, do not drive over 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not make starts at full throttle. This helps the engine and other parts of the vehicle wear in at the heavier loads.

#### WARNING!

**Improper towing can lead to a collision. Follow these guidelines to make your trailer towing as safe as possible:**

- Make certain that the load is secured in the trailer and will not shift during travel. When trailering cargo that is not fully secured, dynamic load shifts can occur that may be difficult for the driver to control. You could lose control of your vehicle and have a collision.
- When hauling cargo or towing a trailer, do not overload your vehicle or trailer. Overloading can

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

cause a loss of control, poor performance or damage to brakes, axle, engine, transmission, steering, suspension, chassis structure or tires.

- Safety chains must always be used between your vehicle and trailer. Always connect the chains to the hook retainers of the vehicle hitch. Cross the chains under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning corners.
- Vehicles with trailers should not be parked on a grade. When parking, apply the parking brake on the tow vehicle. Put the tow vehicle transmission in PARK. For four-wheel drive vehicles, make sure the transfer case is not in NEUTRAL. Always, block or "chock" the trailer wheels.
- GCWR must not be exceeded.
- Total weight must be distributed between the tow

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

vehicle and the trailer such that the following four ratings are not exceeded:

1. GVWR
2. GTW
3. GAWR
4. Tongue weight rating for the trailer hitch utilized.

**Towing Requirements — Tires**

- Do not attempt to tow a trailer while using a compact spare tire.
- Proper tire inflation pressures are essential to the safe and satisfactory operation of your vehicle. Refer to "Tires – General Information" in "Starting And Operating" for proper tire inflation procedures.

- Check the trailer tires for proper tire inflation pressures before trailer usage.
- Check for signs of tire wear or visible tire damage before towing a trailer. Refer to “Tires – General Information” in “Starting And Operating” for the proper inspection procedure.
- When replacing tires, refer to “Tires – General Information” in “Starting And Operating” for proper tire replacement procedures. Replacing tires with a higher load carrying capacity will not increase the vehicle’s GVWR and GAWR limits.

### Towing Requirements — Trailer Brakes

#### **WARNING!**

- Do not connect trailer brakes to your vehicle’s hydraulic brake lines. It can overload your brake

*(Continued)*

#### **WARNING! (Continued)**

- system and cause it to fail. You might not have brakes when you need them and could have an accident.
- Towing any trailer will increase your stopping distance. When towing you should allow for additional space between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you. Failure to do so could result in an accident.

#### **CAUTION!**

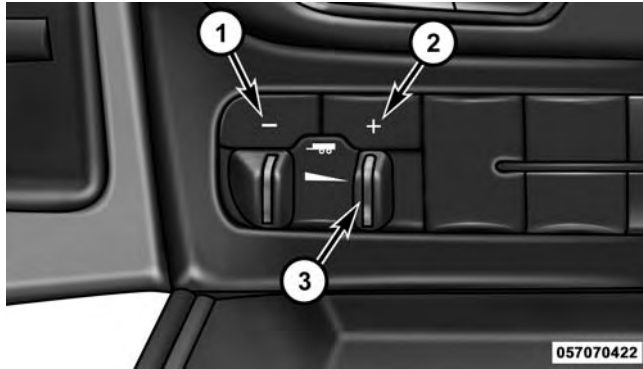
If the trailer weighs more than 1,000 lbs (454 kg) loaded, it should have its own brakes and they should be of adequate capacity. Failure to do this could lead to accelerated brake lining wear, higher brake pedal effort, and longer stopping distances.

- Do **not** interconnect the hydraulic brake system or vacuum system of your vehicle with that of the trailer. This could cause inadequate braking and possible personal injury.
- An electronically actuated trailer brake controller is required when towing a trailer with electronically actuated brakes. When towing a trailer equipped with a hydraulic surge actuated brake system, an electronic brake controller is not required.
- Trailer brakes are recommended for trailers over 1,000 lbs (454 kg) and required for trailers in excess of 1,653 lbs (750 kg).

### **Integrated Trailer Brake Module — If Equipped**

Your vehicle may have an Integrated Trailer Brake Module (ITBM) for Electric and Electric Over Hydraulic (EOH) trailer brakes.

**NOTE:** This module has been designed and verified with electric trailer brakes and new electric over hydraulic systems. Some previous EOH systems may not be compatible with ITBM.



**Integrated Trailer Brake Module (ITBM)**

- 1 — GAIN Adjustment Button
- 2 — GAIN Adjustment Button
- 3 — Manual Brake Control Lever

The user interface consists of the following:

### Manual Brake Control Lever

Slide the manual brake control lever to the right to activate power to the trailer's electric brakes independent of the tow vehicle's brakes. If the manual brake control lever is activated while the brake is also applied, the greater of the two inputs determines the power sent to the trailer brakes.

The trailer and the vehicle's brake lamps will come on when either vehicle braking or manual trailer brakes are applied.

### Trailer Brake Status Indicator Light

This light indicates the trailer electrical connection status.

If no electrical connection is detected after the ignition is turned on, pushing the GAIN adjustment button or sliding the manual brake control lever will display the GAIN setting for 10 seconds and the "Trailer Brake Status Indicator Light" will not be displayed.

If a fault is detected in the trailer wiring or the Integrated Trailer Brake Module (ITBM), the “Trailer Brake Status Indicator Light” will flash.

### **GAIN Adjustment Buttons (+/-)**

Pushing these buttons will adjust the brake control power output to the trailer brakes in 0.5 increments. The GAIN setting can be increased to a maximum of 10 or decreased to a minimum of 0 (no trailer braking).

### **GAIN**

The GAIN setting is used to set the trailer brake control for the specific towing condition and should be changed as towing conditions change. Changes to towing conditions include trailer load, vehicle load, road conditions and weather.

### **Adjusting GAIN**

**NOTE:** This should only be performed in a traffic free environment at speeds of approximately 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h).

1. Make sure the trailer brakes are in good working condition, functioning normally and properly adjusted. See your trailer dealer if necessary.
2. Hook up the trailer and make the electrical connections according to the trailer manufacturer’s instructions.
3. When a trailer with electric/EOH brakes is plugged in, the trailer connected message should appear in the EVIC/DID (if the connection is not recognized by the ITBM, braking functions will not be available), the GAIN setting will illuminate and the correct type of trailer must be selected from the EVIC/DID options.



4. Push the UP or DOWN button on the steering wheel until "TRAILER TOW" appears on the screen.
  5. Push the RIGHT arrow on the steering wheel to enter "TRAILER TOW".
  6. Push the UP or DOWN buttons until Trailer Brake Type appears on the screen.
  7. Push the RIGHT arrow and then push the UP or DOWN buttons until the proper Trailer Brake Type appears on the screen.
  8. In a traffic-free environment, tow the trailer on a dry, level surface at a speed of 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h) and squeeze the manual brake control lever completely.
  9. If the trailer wheels lockup (indicated by squealing tires), reduce the GAIN setting; if the trailer wheels turn freely, increase the GAIN setting.
- Repeat steps 8 and 9 until the GAIN setting is at a point just below trailer wheel lockup. If towing a heavier trailer, trailer wheel lockup may not be attainable even with the maximum GAIN setting of 10.

	Light Electric	Heavy Electric	Light EOH	Heavy EOH
Type of Trailer Brakes	Electric Trailer Brakes	Electric Trailer Brakes	Electric over Hydraulic Trailer Brakes	Electric over Hydraulic Trailer Brakes
Load	*Under 10,000 lbs	*Above 10,000 lbs	*Under 10,000 lbs	*Above 10,000 lbs

\* The suggested selection depends and may change depending on the customer preferences for braking performance. Condition of the trailer brakes, driving and road state may also affect the selection.

### EVIC/DID Display Messages

The trailer brake control interacts with the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID). Display messages, along with a single chime, will be displayed when a malfunction is determined in the trailer connection, trailer brake control, or on the trailer. Refer to “Electronic Vehicle Information

Center/Driver Information Display (DID)” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

### CAUTION!

**Connecting a trailer that is not compatible with the ITBM system may result in reduced or complete loss of trailer braking. There may be an increase in stopping distance or trailer instability which could result in damage to your vehicle, trailer, or other property.**

**WARNING!**

**Connecting a trailer that is not compatible with the ITBM system may result in reduced or complete loss of trailer braking. There may be an increase in stopping distance or trailer instability which could result in personal injury.**

**NOTE:**

- An aftermarket controller may be available for use with trailers with air or electric-over-hydraulic trailer brake systems. To determine the type of brakes on your trailer and the availability of controllers, check with your trailer manufacturer or dealer.
- Removal of the ITBM will cause errors and it may cause damage to the electrical system and electronic modules of the vehicle. See your authorized dealer if an aftermarket module is to be installed.

**Towing Requirements — Trailer Lights And Wiring**

Whenever you pull a trailer, regardless of the trailer size, stop lights and turn signals on the trailer are required for motoring safety.

**NOTE:** Do not cut or splice wiring into the vehicle's wiring harness.

**WARNING!**

**Any work done to the vehicle's electrical system or wiring should be performed by a qualified automotive technician. If done improperly it may cause damage to the electrical system wiring and could result in serious or fatal injury.**

**Towing Tips**

Before setting out on a trip, practice turning, stopping and backing the trailer up in an area away from heavy traffic.

### Automatic Transmission — If Equipped

The DRIVE range can be selected when towing. The transmission controls include a drive strategy to avoid frequent shifting when towing. However, if frequent shifting does occur while in DRIVE, select TOW/HAUL mode or select a lower gear range (using the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control).

**NOTE:** Using TOW/HAUL mode, or selecting a lower gear range (using the ERS shift control) while operating the vehicle under heavy loading conditions will improve performance and extend transmission life by reducing excessive shifting and heat build up. This action will also provide better engine braking.

When towing a loaded trailer up steep grades at low speeds (20 mph [32 km/h] or below), holding your vehicle in first gear (using the ERS shift control) can help to avoid transmission overheating.

If you regularly tow a trailer for more than 45 minutes of continuous operation, then change the transmission fluid and filter(s) as specified for "police, taxi, fleet, or frequent trailer towing." Refer to the "Maintenance Schedule" for the proper maintenance intervals.

**NOTE:** Check the automatic transmission fluid level before towing.

### Tow/Haul Mode

To reduce potential for automatic transmission overheating, activate TOW/HAUL mode when driving in hilly areas, or select a lower gear range (using the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control) on more severe grades.

### Electronic Speed Control — If Equipped

- Do not use in hilly terrain or with heavy loads.
- When using the speed control, if you experience speed drops greater than 10 mph (16 km/h), disengage until you can get back to cruising speed.
- Use speed control in flat terrain and with light loads to maximize fuel efficiency.

### Cooling System

To reduce potential for engine and transmission overheating, take the following actions:

#### City Driving

When stopped for short periods of time, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL and increase engine idle speed.

#### Highway Driving

Reduce speed.

### Air Conditioning

Turn off temporarily.

### SNOWPLOW

Snowplow Prep Packages are available as a factory installed option. These packages include components necessary to equip your vehicle with a snowplow.

**NOTE:** Before installation of a snowplow it is highly recommended that the owner/installer obtain and follow the recommendations contained within the current Ram Body Builders Guide. See your authorized dealer, installer or snowplow manufacturer for this information. There are unique electrical systems that must be connected to properly assure operator safety and prevent overloading vehicle systems.

**WARNING!**

Attaching a snowplow to this vehicle could adversely affect performance of the airbag system in a collision. Do not expect that the airbag will perform as described earlier in this manual.

**CAUTION!**

The “Lamp Out” indicator could illuminate if exterior lamps are not properly installed.

**Before Plowing**

- Check the hydraulic system for leaks and proper fluid level.
- Check the mounting bolts and nuts for proper tightness.

- Check the runners and cutting edge for excessive wear. The cutting edge should be  $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  in (6 cm to 1.2 cm) above ground in snow plowing position.
- Check that snowplow lighting is connected and functioning properly.

**Snowplow Prep Package Model Availability**

For information about snowplow applications visit [www.ramtrucks.com](http://www.ramtrucks.com) or refer to the current Ram Body Builders Guide.

1. The maximum number of occupants in the truck should not exceed two.
2. The total GVWR or the Front GAWR or the Rear GAWR should never be exceeded.
3. Cargo capacity will be reduced by the addition of options or passengers, etc.

The loaded vehicle weight, including the snowplow system, all aftermarket accessories, driver, passengers, options, and cargo, must not exceed either the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVWR) or Gross Axle Weight (GAWR) ratings. These weights are specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label on the driver's side door opening.

**NOTE:** Detach the snowplow when transporting passengers.

Vehicle front end wheel alignment was set to specifications at the factory without consideration for the weight of the plow. Front end toe-in should be checked and reset if necessary at the beginning and end of the snowplow season. This will help prevent uneven tire wear.

The blade should be lowered whenever the vehicle is parked.

Maintain and operate your vehicle and snowplow equipment following the recommendations provided by the specific snowplow manufacturer.

### **Over The Road Operation With Snowplow Attached**

The blade restricts air flow to the radiator and causes the engine to operate at higher than normal temperatures. Therefore, when transporting the plow, angle the blade completely and position it as low as road or surface conditions permit. Do not exceed 40 mph (64 km/h). The operator should always maintain a safe stopping distance and allow adequate passing clearance.

### **Operating Tips**

Under ideal snow plowing conditions, 20 mph (32 km/h) should be maximum operating speed. The operator should be familiar with the area and surface to be cleaned. Reduce speed and use extreme caution when plowing unfamiliar areas or under poor visibility.

## General Maintenance

Snowplows should be maintained in accordance with the plow manufacturer's instructions.

Keep all snowplow electrical connections and battery terminals clean and free of corrosion.

When plowing snow, to avoid transmission and drivetrain damage, the following precautions should be observed.

- Operate with transfer case in 4L when plowing small or congested areas where speeds are not likely to exceed 15 mph (24 km/h). At higher speeds operate in 4H.
- Vehicles with automatic transmissions should use 4L range when plowing deep or heavy snow for extended periods of time to avoid transmission overheating.
- Do not shift the transmission unless the engine has returned to idle and wheels have stopped. Make a practice of stepping on the brake pedal while shifting the transmission.



**RECREATIONAL TOWING (BEHIND MOTORHOME, ETC.)****Towing This Vehicle Behind Another Vehicle**

<b>Towing Condition</b>	<b>Wheels OFF The Ground</b>	<b>Two-Wheel Drive Models</b>	<b>Four-Wheel Drive Models</b>
Flat Tow	NONE	<b>NOT AL- LOWED</b>	<i>See Instructions</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Automatic transmission in PARK</li> <li>• Manual transmission in gear (NOT in NEUTRAL)</li> <li>• Transfer case in NEUTRAL (N)</li> <li>• Tow in forward direction</li> </ul>
Dolly Tow	Front	<b>NOT AL- LOWED</b>	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>
	Rear	OK	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>
On Trailer	ALL	OK	OK

**Recreational Towing — Two-Wheel Drive Models**

**DO NOT flat tow this vehicle. Damage to the drivetrain will result.**

Recreational towing (for two-wheel drive models) is allowed **ONLY** if the rear wheels are **OFF** the ground. This may be accomplished using a tow dolly or vehicle trailer. If using a tow dolly, follow this procedure:

1. Properly secure the dolly to the tow vehicle, following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.

**NOTE:** If vehicle is equipped with air suspension, ensure the vehicle is set to Normal Ride Height.

2. Drive the rear wheels onto the tow dolly.
3. Firmly apply the parking brake. Place automatic transmission in PARK, manual transmission in gear (not in NEUTRAL).

4. Properly secure the rear wheels to the dolly, following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
5. Turn the ignition switch to the OFF position and remove the Key Fob.
6. Install a suitable clamping device, designed for towing, to secure the front wheels in the straight position.

**CAUTION!**

- Towing with the rear wheels on the ground will cause severe transmission damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Do not disconnect the driveshaft because fluid may leak from the transmission, causing damage to internal parts.

## Recreational Towing — Four-Wheel Drive Models

**NOTE:** Both the manual shift and electronic shift transfer cases must be shifted into NEUTRAL (N) for recreational towing. Automatic transmissions must be shifted into PARK for recreational towing. Manual transmissions must be placed in gear (NOT in NEUTRAL) for recreational towing. Refer to the following for the proper transfer case NEUTRAL (N) shifting procedure for your vehicle.

### CAUTION!

- **DO NOT dolly tow any 4WD vehicle. Towing with only one set of wheels on the ground (front or rear) will cause severe transmission and/or transfer case damage. Tow with all four wheels either ON the ground, or OFF the ground (using a vehicle trailer).**
- **Tow only in the forward direction. Towing this vehicle backwards can cause severe damage to the transfer case.**

*(Continued)*

### CAUTION! *(Continued)*

- **Automatic transmissions must be placed in PARK for recreational towing.**
- **Manual transmissions must be placed in gear (not in Neutral) for recreational towing.**
- **Before recreational towing, perform the procedure outlined under “Shifting Into NEUTRAL (N)” to be certain that the transfer case is fully in NEUTRAL (N). Otherwise, internal damage will result.**
- **Towing this vehicle in violation of the above requirements can cause severe transmission and/or transfer case damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.**
- **Do not disconnect the rear driveshaft because fluid will leak from the transfer case, causing damage to internal parts.**

*(Continued)*

**CAUTION!** *(Continued)*

- Do not use a bumper-mounted clamp-on tow bar on your vehicle. The bumper face bar will be damaged.

**Shifting Into NEUTRAL (N)**

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for recreational towing.

**WARNING!**

You or others could be injured or killed if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL (N) position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL (N) position disengages both the front and rear drive-shafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle

*(Continued)*

**WARNING!** *(Continued)*

to roll, even if the transmission is in PARK. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

**CAUTION!**

It is necessary to follow these steps to be certain that the transfer case is fully in NEUTRAL (N) before recreational towing to prevent damage to internal parts.

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop, with the engine running. Firmly apply the parking brake.
2. Shift the transmission to NEUTRAL.
3. Press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Depress the clutch pedal on a manual transmission.

5. With manual shift transfer case, shift the transfer case lever into NEUTRAL (N).

With electronic shift transfer case, push and hold the transfer case NEUTRAL (N) button. Some models have a small, recessed "N" button (at the center of the transfer case switches) that must be pressed using a ballpoint pen or similar object. Other models have a rectangular NEUTRAL switch, below the rotary transfer case control knob. The NEUTRAL (N) indicator light will blink while the shift is in progress. The light will stop blinking (stay on solid) when the shift to NEUTRAL (N) is complete. After the shift is completed and the NEUTRAL (N) light stays on, release the NEUTRAL (N) button.

6. Release the parking brake.

7. Shift the transmission into REVERSE.

8. Release the brake pedal (and clutch pedal on manual transmissions) for five seconds and ensure that there is no vehicle movement.

9. Repeat steps 7 and 8 with automatic transmission in DRIVE or manual transmission in first gear.

10. Shift the transmission to NEUTRAL. Firmly apply the parking brake. Turn OFF the engine. For vehicles with Keyless Enter-N-Go™, push and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button until the engine shuts off.

11. Shift the transmission into PARK or place manual transmission in gear (NOT in NEUTRAL).

12. Turn the ignition switch to the OFF position, and remove the Key Fob.

13. Attach the vehicle to the tow vehicle using a suitable tow bar.

14. Release the parking brake.

**NOTE:** With electronic shift transfer case:

- Steps 2 through 5 are requirements that must be met before pushing the NEUTRAL (N) button, and must

continue to be met until the shift has been completed. If any of these requirements are not met before pushing the NEUTRAL (N) button or are no longer met during the shift, the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light will flash continuously until all requirements are met or until the NEUTRAL (N) button is released.

- The ignition switch must be in the ON/RUN position for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the ignition switch is not in the ON/RUN position, the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.
- A flashing NEUTRAL (N) position indicator light indicates that shift requirements have not been met.

### Shifting Out Of NEUTRAL (N)

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for normal usage.

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop, leaving it connected to the tow vehicle.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake.
3. Turn the ignition switch to the ON/RUN position, but do not start the engine.
4. Press and hold the brake pedal.
5. Shift the transmission into NEUTRAL.
  - With manual shift transfer case, shift the transfer case lever to the desired position.
  - With electronic shift transfer case, press and hold the transfer case NEUTRAL (N) button until the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light turns off. After the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light turns off, release the NEUTRAL (N) button. After the NEUTRAL (N) button has been released, the transfer case will shift to the position indicated by the selector switch.

**NOTE:** When shifting the transfer case out of NEUTRAL (N), the engine should remain OFF to avoid gear clash.

6. Shift automatic transmission into PARK.
7. Release the brake pedal (and clutch pedal on a manual transmission).
8. Disconnect vehicle from the tow vehicle.
9. Start the engine.
10. Press and hold the brake pedal.
11. Release the parking brake.
12. Shift the transmission into gear, release the brake pedal (and clutch pedal on manual transmissions), and check that the vehicle operates normally.

**NOTE:** With electronic shift transfer case:

- Steps 3 through 5 are requirements that must be met before pressing the NEUTRAL (N) button, and must

continue to be met until the shift has been completed. If any of these requirements are not met before pushing the NEUTRAL (N) button or are no longer met during the shift, the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light will flash continuously until all requirements are met or until the NEUTRAL (N) button is released.

- The ignition switch must be in the ON/RUN position for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the ignition switch is not in the ON/RUN position, the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.
- A flashing NEUTRAL (N) position indicator light indicates that shift requirements have not been met.





# WHAT TO DO IN EMERGENCIES

## CONTENTS

---

■ HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS . . . . .	.464	■ JUMP-STARTING PROCEDURES . . . . .	.476
■ IF YOUR ENGINE OVERHEATS . . . . .	.464	□ Preparations For Jump-Start . . . . .	.477
■ WHEEL AND TIRE TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS . . . . .	.465	□ Jump-Starting Procedure . . . . .	.479
□ Torque Specifications . . . . .	.466	■ FREEING A STUCK VEHICLE . . . . .	.481
■ JACKING AND TIRE CHANGING . . . . .	.468	■ EMERGENCY TOW HOOKS — IF EQUIPPED .	.483
□ 4500/5500 Models . . . . .	.469	■ SHIFT LEVER OVERRIDE . . . . .	.484
□ Preparations For Jacking. . . . .	.469	■ TOWING A DISABLED VEHICLE . . . . .	.485
□ Jacking Instructions . . . . .	.470	□ Two-Wheel Drive Models . . . . .	.486
■ HOISTING . . . . .	.476	□ Four-Wheel Drive Models. . . . .	.487

## HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

The Hazard Warning flasher switch is located on the upper switch bank just below the radio.



Push the switch to turn on the Hazard Warning flasher. When the switch is activated, all directional turn signals will flash on and off to warn oncoming traffic of an emergency. Push the switch a second time to turn off the Hazard Warning flashers.

This is an emergency warning system and it should not be used when the vehicle is in motion. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and it is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

When you must leave the vehicle to seek assistance, the Hazard Warning flashers will continue to operate even though the ignition is placed in the OFF position.

**NOTE:** With extended use the Hazard Warning flashers may wear down your battery.

## IF YOUR ENGINE OVERHEATS

In any of the following situations, you can reduce the potential for overheating by taking the appropriate action.

- On the highways — slow down.
- In city traffic — while stopped, place the transmission in NEUTRAL, but do not increase the engine idle speed.

**NOTE:** There are steps that you can take to slow down an impending overheating condition:

- If your air conditioner (A/C) is on, turn it off. The A/C system adds heat to the engine cooling system and turning the A/C off can help remove this heat.

- You can also turn the temperature control to maximum heat, the mode control to floor and the blower control to high. This allows the heater core to act as a supplement to the radiator and aids in removing heat from the engine cooling system.

### CAUTION!

Driving with a hot cooling system could damage your vehicle. If the temperature gauge reads HOT (H), pull over and stop the vehicle. Idle the vehicle with the air conditioner turned off until the pointer drops back into the normal range. If the pointer remains on HOT (H), and you hear continuous chimes, turn the engine off immediately and call for service.

### WARNING!

You or others can be badly burned by hot engine coolant (antifreeze) or steam from your radiator. If you see or hear steam coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the radiator has had time to cool. Never try to open a cooling system pressure cap when the radiator or coolant bottle is hot.

## WHEEL AND TIRE TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

Proper lug nut/bolt torque is very important to ensure that the wheel is properly mounted to the vehicle. Any time a wheel has been removed and reinstalled on the vehicle the lug nuts/bolts should be torqued using a properly calibrated torque wrench.

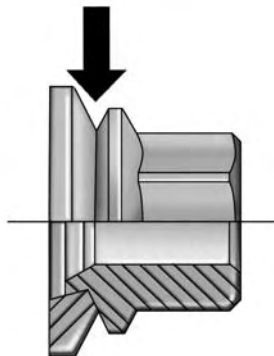
## Torque Specifications

Lug Nut/Bolt Torque	Lug Nut/Bolt Type	**Lug Nut/Bolt Size	Lug Nut/Bolt Socket Size
120-150 Ft-Lbs (160-200 N·m)	Cone	M14 x 1.50	22 mm
130-160 Ft-Lbs (190-220 N·m)	Flanged		

\*\*Use only your Authorized Dealer recommended lug nuts/bolts and clean or remove any dirt or oil before tightening.

Inspect the wheel mounting surface prior to mounting the tire and remove any corrosion or loose particles.

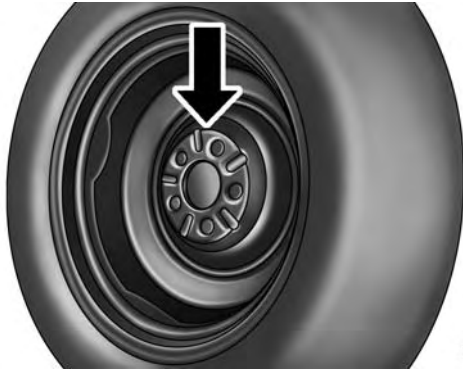
**NOTE:** Dual wheels are flat mounted, center piloted. The lug nuts are a two-piece assembly. When the tires are being rotated or replaced, clean these lug nuts and add two drops of oil at the interface between the hex and the washer.



060505399

Do not oil wheel studs. For chrome wheels, do not substitute with chrome plated wheel nuts.

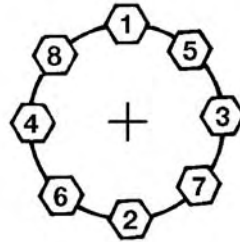
After 25 miles (40 km) check the lug nut/bolt torque to be sure that all the lug nuts/bolts are properly seated against the wheel.



0605005441

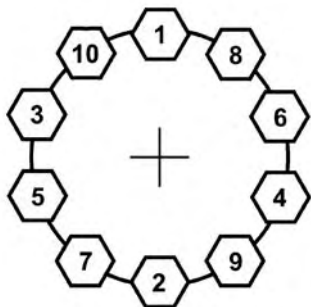
### Wheel Mounting Surface

Tighten the lug nuts/bolts in a star pattern until each nut/bolt has been tightened twice.



060505400

### 8 Lug Nuts/Bolts Torque Pattern



060505669

10 Lug Nuts/Bolts Torque Pattern

**WARNING!**

To avoid the risk of forcing the vehicle off the jack, do not tighten the lug nuts fully until the vehicle has been lowered. Failure to follow this warning may result in personal injury.

**JACKING AND TIRE CHANGING****WARNING!**

- Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic, pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.
- Being under a jacked-up vehicle is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and fall on you. You could be crushed. Never put any part of your body under a vehicle that is on a jack.
- Never start or run the engine while the vehicle is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to a service center where it can be raised on a lift.
- The jack is designed to use as a tool for changing tires only. The jack should not be used to lift the

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

vehicle for service purposes. The vehicle should be jacked on a firm level surface only. Avoid ice or slippery areas.

**4500/5500 Models**

These vehicles do not come equipped with a jack.

**NOTE:** Jacking and tire changing on 4500/5500 models should be performed by an authorized dealer, or knowledgeable service personnel with the appropriate heavy duty equipment, like a tire service company.

**Preparations For Jacking**

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level surface. Avoid ice or slippery areas.

**WARNING!**

Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic, pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

2. Turn on the Hazard Warning flasher.
3. Set the parking brake.
4. Place the shift lever into PARK (automatic transmission) or REVERSE (manual transmission). On 4-Wheel drive vehicles, shift the transfer case to the "4L" position.
5. Turn OFF the ignition.

6. Block both the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite of the jacking position. For example, if changing the right front tire, block the left rear wheel.



**NOTE:** Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.

## Jacking Instructions

### Instructions

#### **WARNING!**

Carefully follow these tire changing warnings to help prevent personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Always park on a firm, level surface as far from the edge of the roadway as possible before raising the vehicle.

*(Continued)*

#### **WARNING! (Continued)**

- Turn on the Hazard Warning flasher.
- Block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be raised.
- Set the parking brake firmly and set an automatic transmission in **PARK**; a manual transmission in **REVERSE**.
- Never start or run the engine with the vehicle on a jack.
- Do not let anyone sit in the vehicle when it is on a jack.
- Do not get under the vehicle when it is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to a service center where it can be raised on a lift.
- Only use the jack in the positions indicated and for lifting this vehicle during a tire change.
- If working on or near a roadway, be extremely careful of motor traffic.

*(Continued)*



**WARNING!** *(Continued)*

- To assure that spare tires, flat or inflated, are securely stowed, spares must be stowed with the valve stem facing the ground.

**CAUTION!**

Do not attempt to raise the vehicle by jacking on locations other than those indicated in the Jacking Instructions for this vehicle.

1. If equipped, remove the spare wheel, jack, and tools from storage.
2. Using the wheel wrench, loosen, but do not remove, the wheel nuts by turning them counterclockwise one turn while the wheel is still on the ground.
3. When changing the front wheel, assemble the jack drive tube to the jack and connect the drive tube to the extension tube. Place the jack under the axle as close to the tire as possible with the drive tubes extending to the front. Connect the jack tube extension and wheel wrench.



060600714

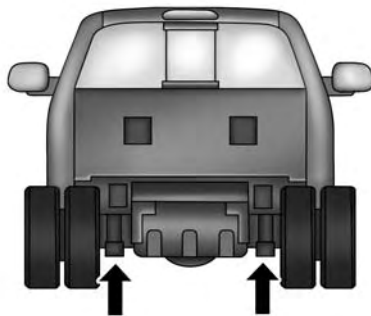
Jack Warning Label



060609050

### Front Jacking Locations

When changing a rear wheel, assemble the jack drive tube to the jack and connect the drive tube to the extension tube. Securely place the jack under the sway bar bracket (unless both tires are flat on one side, then place jack under shock bracket) facing forward in vehicle. Connect the jack tube extension and lug wrench.



060505668

### Rear Jacking Location

**Before raising the wheel off the ground, make sure that the jack will not damage surrounding truck parts and adjust the jack position as required.**

**NOTE:** If the jack will not lower by turning the dial (thumbwheel) by hand, it may be necessary to use the jack drive tube in order to lower the jack.

4. By rotating the wheel wrench clockwise, raise the vehicle until the wheel just clears the surface.
6. Using the wheel wrench, finish tightening the nuts using a crisscross pattern. For the proper lug nut torque specifications refer to “Wheel and Tire Torque Specifications” in this section. If in doubt about the correct tightness, have them checked with a torque wrench by your authorized dealer or at a service station.

**WARNING!**

**Raising the vehicle higher than necessary can make the vehicle unstable and cause a collision. It could slip off the jack and hurt someone near it. Raise the vehicle only enough to remove the tire.**

5. Remove the wheel nuts and pull the wheel off. Install the spare wheel and wheel nuts with the cone shaped end of the nuts toward the wheel on single rear wheel (SRW) models. On dual rear wheel models (DRW) the lug nuts are a two-piece assembly with a flat face. Lightly tighten the nuts. To avoid risk of forcing the vehicle off the jack, do not fully tighten the nuts until the vehicle has been lowered.
7. Install wheel center cap (if equipped) and remove wheel blocks. Do not install chrome or aluminum wheel center caps on the spare wheel. This may result in cap damage.

**WARNING!**

**A loose tire or jack thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could injure someone in the vehicle. Always stow the jack parts and the extra tire and wheel in the places provided.**

- Lower the jack to its fully closed position. If the jack will not lower by turning the dial (thumbwheel) by hand, it may be necessary to use the jack drive tube in order to lower the jack. Stow the replaced tire, jack, and tools as previously described.
- Adjust the tire pressure when possible.

### Hub Caps/Wheel Covers — If Equipped

The hub caps must be removed before raising the vehicle off the ground.

#### **CAUTION!**

Use extreme caution when removing the front and rear center caps. Damage can occur to the center cap and/or the wheel if screwdriver type tools are used. A pulling motion, not a pry off motion, is recommended to remove the caps.

For single rear wheel (SRW) models, use the flat blade on the end of the lug wrench to pull the hub cap off. Insert the blade end into the pull off notch and carefully pull the hub cap off with a back and forth motion.

On 3500 models with dual rear wheels (DRW), you must first remove the hub caps. The jack handle driver has a hook at one end that will fit in the pull off notch of the rear hub caps. Position the hook and pull straight out on the ratchet firmly. The hub cap should pop off. The wheel skins can now be removed. For the front hub cap, use the flat blade on the end of the lug wrench to pull the caps off. The wheel skin can now be removed.

#### **CAUTION!**

- Use a pulling motion to remove the hub cap. Do not use a twisting motion when removing the hub cap, damage to the hub cap; finish may occur.

*(Continued)*

**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- **The rear hub caps on the dual rear wheel has two pull off notches. Make sure that the hook of the jack handle driver is located squarely in the cap notch before attempting to pull off.**

You must use the flat end of the lug wrench to pull off the wheel skins. Locate the hub cap pull notches (2 notches on each cap). Insert the flat tip completely and using a back and forth motion, loosen the wheel skin. Repeat this procedure around the tire until the skin pops off.

Replace the wheel skins first using a rubber mallet. When replacing the hub caps, tilt the cap retainer over the lug nut bolt circle and strike the high side down with a rubber mallet. Be sure that the hub caps and wheel skins are firmly seated around the wheel.

**Dual Rear Wheels**

Slots in the wheels will assist in properly orienting the inner and outer wheels. Align these slots when assembling the wheels for best access to the tire valve on the inner wheel. The tires of both dual wheels must be completely off the ground when tightening to insure wheel centering and maximum wheel clamping.

Dual wheel models require a special heavy-duty lug nut tightening adapter (included with the vehicle) to correctly tighten the lug nuts. Also, when it is necessary to remove and install dual rear wheels, use a proper vehicle lifting device.

**NOTE:** When installing a spare tire (if equipped) as part of a dual rear wheel end combination, the tire diameter of the two individual tires must be compared. If there is a significant difference, the larger tire should be installed in a front location. The correct direction of rotation for dual tire installations must also be observed.

It is recommended that wheel stud nuts be kept torqued to specifications at all times. Torque wheel stud nuts to specifications at each lubrication interval.

- Retighten the wheel nuts in the same sequence to the torques listed in the table. Go through the sequence a second time to verify that specific torque has been achieved. Retighten to specifications at 100 miles (160 km) and after 500 miles (800 km).

### **To Stow The Flat Or Spare — If Equipped**

Refer to Upfitters Body Builders Guide for information on stowing your spare tire (if equipped).

### **HOISTING**

A conventional floor jack may be used at the jacking locations. Refer to the graphics that show jacking locations. However, a floor jack or frame hoist must never be used on any other parts of the underbody.

### **CAUTION!**

**Never use a floor jack directly under the differential housing of a loaded truck or damage to your vehicle may result.**

### **JUMP-STARTING PROCEDURES**

If your vehicle has a discharged battery it can be jump-started using a set of jumper cables and a battery in another vehicle or by using a portable battery booster pack. Jump-starting can be dangerous if done improperly so please follow the procedures in this section carefully.

**NOTE:** When using a portable battery booster pack follow the manufacturer's operating instructions and precautions.

**CAUTION!**

Do not use a portable battery booster pack or any other booster source with a system voltage greater than 12 Volts or damage to the battery, starter motor, alternator or electrical system may occur.

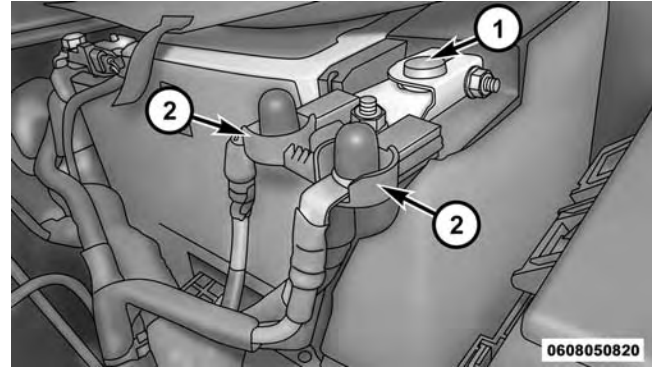
**WARNING!**

Do not attempt jump-starting if the battery is frozen. It could rupture or explode and cause personal injury.

**Preparations For Jump-Start**

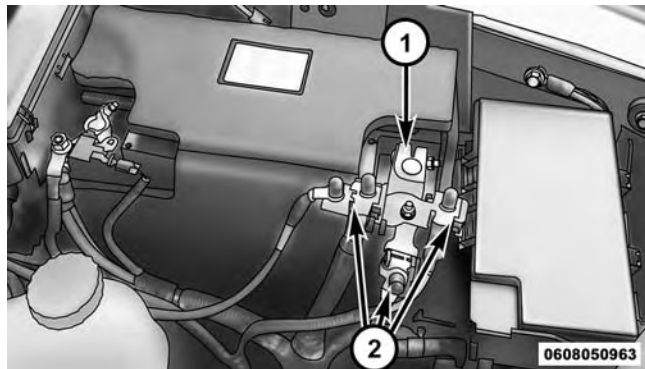
The battery in your vehicle is located in the front of the engine compartment, behind the left headlight assembly.

**NOTE:** The positive battery post is covered with a protective cap. Lift up on the cap to gain access to the positive battery post. Do not jump off fuses. Only jump directly off positive post.



Battery (Gas Model Shown)

- 1 — Positive Battery Post
- 2 — Fuses



Battery (Diesel Model Shown)

1 — Positive Battery Post

2 — Fuses

### WARNING!

- Take care to avoid the radiator cooling fan whenever the hood is raised. It can start anytime the ignition switch is ON. You can be injured by moving fan blades.
- Remove any metal jewelry such as rings, watch bands and bracelets that could make an inadvertent electrical contact. You could be seriously injured.
- Batteries contain sulfuric acid that can burn your skin or eyes and generate hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Keep open flames or sparks away from the battery.

1. Set the parking brake, shift the automatic transmission into PARK and turn the ignition to LOCK.
2. Turn off the heater, radio, and all unnecessary electrical accessories.



3. If using another vehicle to jump-start the battery, park the vehicle within the jumper cables reach, set the parking brake and make sure the ignition is OFF.

### WARNING!

Do not allow vehicles to touch each other as this could establish a ground connection and personal injury could result.

### Jump-Starting Procedure

### WARNING!

Failure to follow this jump-starting procedure could result in personal injury or property damage due to battery explosion.

### CAUTION!

Failure to follow these procedures could result in damage to the charging system of the booster vehicle or the discharged vehicle.

### Connecting The Jumper Cables

1. Connect the positive (+) end of the jumper cable to the positive (+) post of the discharged vehicle.

**NOTE: Do not jump off fuses. Only jump directly off positive post.**

2. Connect the opposite end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) post of the booster battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) end of the jumper cable to the negative (-) post of the booster battery.

4. Connect the opposite end of the negative (-) jumper cable to a good engine ground (exposed metal part of the discharged vehicle's engine) away from the battery and the fuel injection system.

**WARNING!**

**Do not connect the jumper cable to the negative (-) post of the discharged battery. The resulting electrical spark could cause the battery to explode and could result in personal injury. Only use the specific ground point, do not use any other exposed metal parts.**

5. Start the engine in the vehicle that has the booster battery, let the engine idle a few minutes, and then start the engine in the vehicle with the discharged battery.

**CAUTION!**

**Do not connect jumper cable to any of the fuses on the positive battery terminal. The resulting electrical current will blow the fuse.**

6. Once the engine is started, remove the jumper cables in the reverse sequence:

**Disconnecting The Jumper Cables**

1. Disconnect the negative (-) end of the jumper cable from the engine ground of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
2. Disconnect the opposite end of the negative (-) jumper cable from the negative (-) post of the booster battery.
3. Disconnect the positive (+) end of the jumper cable from the positive (+) post of the booster battery.

4. Disconnect the opposite end of the positive (+) jumper cable from the positive (+) post of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

If frequent jump-starting is required to start your vehicle you should have the battery and charging system inspected at your authorized dealer.

### CAUTION!

Accessories plugged into the vehicle power outlets draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e., cellular phones, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough without engine operation, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent the engine from starting.

### FREEING A STUCK VEHICLE

If your vehicle becomes stuck in mud, sand, or snow, it can often be moved using a rocking motion. Turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around the front wheels. Then shift back and forth between DRIVE and REVERSE (with automatic transmission) or 2nd gear and REVERSE (with manual transmission), while gently pushing the accelerator. Use the least amount of accelerator pedal pressure that will maintain the rocking motion, without spinning the wheels or racing the engine.

**CAUTION!**

Racing the engine or spinning the wheels may lead to transmission overheating and failure. Allow the engine to idle with the transmission in NEUTRAL for at least one minute after every five rocking-motion cycles. This will minimize overheating and reduce the risk of clutch or transmission failure during prolonged efforts to free a stuck vehicle.

**NOTE:** Push the "ESC Off" switch, to place the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system in "Partial Off" mode, before rocking the vehicle. Refer to "Electronic Brake Control" in "Starting And Operating" for further information. Once the vehicle has been freed, push the "ESC Off" switch again to restore "ESC On" mode.

**CAUTION!**

- When "rocking" a stuck vehicle by shifting between DRIVE/2nd gear and REVERSE, do not spin the wheels faster than 15 mph (24 km/h), or drivetrain damage may result.
- Revving the engine or spinning the wheels too fast may lead to transmission overheating and failure. It can also damage the tires. Do not spin the wheels above 30 mph (48 km/h) while in gear (no transmission shifting occurring).

**WARNING!**

Fast spinning tires can be dangerous. Forces generated by excessive wheel speeds may cause damage, or even failure, of the axle and tires. A tire could explode and injure someone. Do not spin your vehicle's wheels faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) or for longer than 30 seconds continuously without stopping when you are stuck and do not let anyone near a spinning wheel, no matter what the speed.

**EMERGENCY TOW HOOKS — IF EQUIPPED**

Your vehicle may be equipped with emergency tow hooks.

**NOTE:** For off-road recovery, it is recommended to use both of the front tow hooks to minimize the risk of damage to the vehicle.

**WARNING!**

- Do not use a chain for freeing a stuck vehicle. Chains may break, causing serious injury or death.
- Stand clear of vehicles when pulling with tow hooks. Tow straps may become disengaged, causing serious injury.

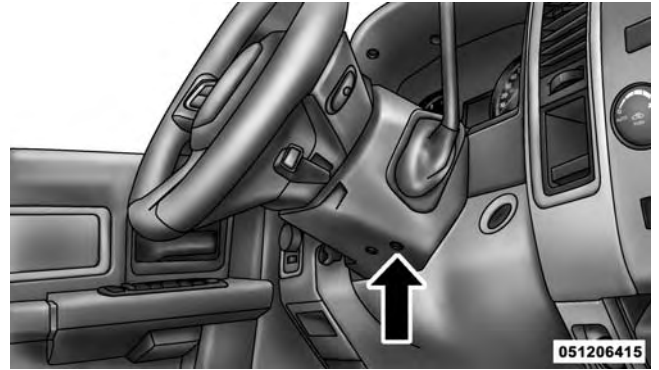
**CAUTION!**

Tow hooks are for emergency use only to rescue a vehicle stranded off-road. Do not use tow hooks for tow truck hookup or highway towing. You could damage your vehicle.

## SHIFT LEVER OVERRIDE

If a malfunction occurs and the shift lever cannot be moved out of the PARK position, you can use the following procedure to temporarily move the shift lever:

1. Turn the engine OFF.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake.
3. Tilt the steering wheel to the full up position.
4. Push and maintain firm pressure on the brake pedal.
5. Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the access port (ringed circle) on the bottom of the steering column, and push and hold the override release lever up.



**Shift Lever Override Access Port**

6. Move the shift lever to the NEUTRAL position.
7. The vehicle may then be started in NEUTRAL.

## TOWING A DISABLED VEHICLE

This section describes procedures for towing a disabled vehicle using a commercial towing service. If the transmission and drivetrain are operable, disabled vehicles

may also be towed as described under “Recreational Towing” in the “Starting and Operating” section.

Towing Condition	Wheels OFF the Ground	2WD Models	4WD Models
Flat Tow	NONE	<b>If transmission is operable:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Transmission in <b>NEUTRAL</b></li> <li>• 30 mph (48 km/h) <b>max speed</b></li> <li>• 15 miles (24 km) <b>max distance</b></li> </ul>	<b>See instructions in “Recreational Towing” under “Starting and Operating”</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto Transmission in <b>PARK</b></li> <li>• Manual Transmission in gear ( <b>NOT NEUTRAL</b>)</li> <li>• Transfer Case in <b>NEUTRAL</b></li> <li>• Tow in <b>forward</b> direction</li> </ul>
Wheel Lift or Dolly Tow	Front		<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>
	Rear	OK	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>
Flatbed	<b>ALL</b>	<b>BEST METHOD</b>	<b>BEST METHOD</b>

Proper towing or lifting equipment is required to prevent damage to your vehicle. Use only tow bars and other equipment designed for this purpose, following equipment manufacturer's instructions. Use of safety chains is mandatory. Attach a tow bar or other towing device to main structural members of the vehicle, not to bumpers or associated brackets. State and local laws regarding vehicles under tow must be observed.

If you must use the accessories (wipers, defrosters, etc.) while being towed, the ignition must be in the ON/RUN position, not the ACC position.

If the Key Fob is unavailable or the vehicle's battery is discharged, refer to "Shift Lever Override" in this section for instructions on shifting the automatic transmission out of PARK for towing.

### CAUTION!

- **Do not use sling type equipment when towing. Vehicle damage may occur.**
- **When securing the vehicle to a flat bed truck, do not attach to front or rear suspension components. Damage to your vehicle may result from improper towing.**

### Two-Wheel Drive Models

The manufacturer recommends towing your vehicle with all four wheels **OFF** the ground using a flatbed.

If flatbed equipment is not available, and the transmission is operable, the vehicle may be towed (with the rear wheels on the ground) under the following conditions:

- The transmission must be in NEUTRAL.
- The towing speed must not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h).



- The towing distance must not exceed 15 miles (24 km).

If the transmission is not operable, or the vehicle must be towed faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) or farther than 15 miles (24 km), tow with the rear wheels **OFF** the ground. Acceptable methods are to tow the vehicle on a flatbed, or with the front wheels raised and the rear wheels on a towing dolly, or (when using a suitable steering wheel stabilizer to hold the front wheels in the straight position) with rear wheels raised and the front wheels on the ground.

### **CAUTION!**

**Towing this vehicle in violation of the above requirements can cause severe engine and/or transmission damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.**

### **Four-Wheel Drive Models**

The manufacturer recommends towing with all wheels **OFF** the ground. Acceptable methods are to tow the vehicle on a flatbed or with one end of vehicle raised and the opposite end on a towing dolly.

If flatbed equipment is not available, and the transfer case is operable, the vehicle may be towed (in the forward direction, with **ALL** wheels on the ground), **IF** the transfer case is in **NEUTRAL (N)** and the transmission is in **PARK** (for automatic transmissions) or in gear (**NOT** in **NEUTRAL**, for manual transmissions). Refer to “Recreational Towing” in “Starting And Operating” for further information and detailed instructions.

**CAUTION!**

- Front or rear wheel lifts must not be used. Internal damage to the transmission or transfer case will occur if a front or rear wheel lift is used when towing.
- Towing this vehicle in violation of the above requirements can cause severe transmission and/or transfer case damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

# MAINTAINING YOUR VEHICLE

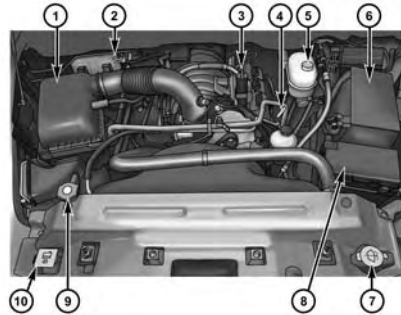
## CONTENTS

---

■ ENGINE COMPARTMENT — 5.7L . . . . .	.491	□ Engine Oil Filter . . . . .	.500
■ ENGINE COMPARTMENT — 6.4L . . . . .	.492	□ Engine Air Cleaner Filter . . . . .	.501
■ ONBOARD DIAGNOSTIC SYSTEM (OBD II) . .	.493	□ Accessory Drive Belt Inspection . . . . .	.504
□ Loose Fuel Filler Cap Message . . . . .	.493	□ Maintenance-Free Battery . . . . .	.506
■ EMISSIONS INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE PROGRAMS . . . . .	.494	□ Air Conditioner Maintenance . . . . .	.507
■ REPLACEMENT PARTS . . . . .	.495	□ Front Prop Shaft Lubrication — Four-Wheel Drive Models . . . . .	.508
■ DEALER SERVICE . . . . .	.496	□ Body Lubrication . . . . .	.509
■ MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES . . . . .	.496	□ Windshield Wiper Blades . . . . .	.509
□ Engine Oil . . . . .	.497	□ Adding Washer Fluid . . . . .	.512

- Exhaust System . . . . .513
- Cooling System . . . . .516
- Brake System . . . . .523
- Rear Axle And 4x4 Front Driving Axle Fluid Level . . . . .525
- Transfer Case . . . . .527
- Automatic Transmission — If Equipped . . . .527
- Appearance Care And Protection From Corrosion . . . . .531
- FUSES . . . . .538
  - Power Distribution Center . . . . .539
- VEHICLE STORAGE . . . . .549
- REPLACEMENT BULBS . . . . .549
  - BULB REPLACEMENT . . . . .550
    - Base Quad / Premium Bi-Halogen: Low Beam Headlamp, High Beam Headlamp, Front Park And Turn — If Equipped . . . . .551
    - Fog Lamps — If Equipped . . . . .553
    - Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) With Cargo Lamp . . . . .554
    - Cab Top Clearance Lamps — If Equipped . . .556
  - FLUID CAPACITIES . . . . .558
  - FLUIDS, LUBRICANTS, AND GENUINE PARTS . . . . .559
    - Engine . . . . .559
    - Chassis . . . . .562

## ENGINE COMPARTMENT — 5.7L

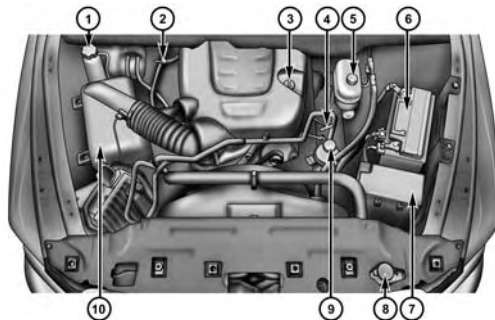


0714002445

- 1 — Air Cleaner Filter
- 2 — Automatic Transmission Dipstick
- 3 — Engine Oil Fill
- 4 — Engine Oil Dipstick
- 5 — Brake Fluid Reservoir

- 6 — Battery
- 7 — Washer Fluid Reservoir
- 8 — Power Distribution Center (Fuses)
- 9 — Coolant Pressure Cap
- 10 — Engine Coolant Reservoir

## ENGINE COMPARTMENT — 6.4L



0745005289

- 1 — Coolant Pressure Bottle
- 2 — Transmission Dipstick
- 3 — Engine Oil Fill
- 4 — Engine Oil Dipstick
- 5 — Brake Fluid Reservoir

- 6 — Battery
- 7 — Power Distribution Center (Fuses)
- 8 — Washer Solvent
- 9 — Power Steering Fluid Reservoir
- 10 — Air Cleaner Filter

## ONBOARD DIAGNOSTIC SYSTEM (OBD II)

Your vehicle is equipped with a sophisticated onboard diagnostic system called OBD II. This system monitors the performance of the emissions, engine, and automatic transmission control systems. When these systems are operating properly, your vehicle will provide excellent performance and fuel economy, as well as engine emissions well within current government regulations.

If any of these systems require service, the OBD II system will turn on the “Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL).” It will also store diagnostic codes and other information to assist your service technician in making repairs. Although your vehicle will usually be drivable and not need towing, see your authorized dealer for service as soon as possible.

### CAUTION!

- **Prolonged driving with the MIL on could cause further damage to the emission control system. It could also affect fuel economy and driveability. The vehicle must be serviced before any emissions tests can be performed.**
- **If the MIL is flashing, while the engine is running, severe catalytic converter damage and power loss will soon occur. Immediate service is required.**

### Loose Fuel Filler Cap Message



If the vehicle diagnostic system determines that the fuel filler cap is loose, improperly installed, or damaged, a loose gascap indicator will display in the EVIC/DID telltale display area. Refer to “Electronic Vehicle Information Center

(EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information. Tighten the fuel filler cap properly and push the SELECT button to turn off the message. If the problem continues, the message will appear the next time the vehicle is started.

A loose, improperly installed, or damaged fuel filler cap may also turn on the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL).

## EMISSIONS INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE PROGRAMS

In some localities, it may be a legal requirement to pass an inspection of your vehicle's emissions control system. Failure to pass could prevent vehicle registration.



For states that require an Inspection and Maintenance (I/M), this check verifies the "Malfunction

Indicator Light (MIL)" is functioning and is not on when the engine is running, and that the OBD II system is ready for testing.

Normally, the OBD II system will be ready. The OBD II system may **not** be ready if your vehicle was recently serviced, recently had a dead battery or a battery replacement. If the OBD II system should be determined not ready for the I/M test, your vehicle may fail the test.

Your vehicle has a simple ignition actuated test, which you can use prior to going to the test station. To check if your vehicle's OBD II system is ready, you must do the following:

1. Cycle the ignition switch to the ON position, but do not crank or start the engine.

**NOTE:** If you crank or start the engine, you will have to start this test over.



2. As soon as you cycle the ignition switch to the ON position, you will see the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) symbol come on as part of a normal bulb check.
3. Approximately 15 seconds later, one of two things will happen:
  - The MIL will flash for about 10 seconds and then return to being fully illuminated until you turn OFF the ignition or start the engine. This means that your vehicle's OBD II system is **not ready** and you should **not** proceed to the I/M station.
  - The MIL will not flash at all and will remain fully illuminated until you place the ignition in the off position or start the engine. This means that your vehicle's OBD II system is **ready** and you can proceed to the I/M station.

If your OBD II system is **not ready**, you should see your authorized dealer or repair facility. If your vehicle was

recently serviced or had a battery failure or replacement, you may need to do nothing more than drive your vehicle as you normally would in order for your OBD II system to update. A recheck with the above test routine may then indicate that the system is **now ready**.

Regardless of whether your vehicle's OBD II system is ready or not, if the MIL is illuminated during normal vehicle operation you should have your vehicle serviced before going to the I/M station. The I/M station can fail your vehicle because the MIL is on with the engine running.

## REPLACEMENT PARTS

Use of genuine MOPAR® parts for normal/scheduled maintenance and repairs is highly recommended to ensure the designed performance. Damage or failures caused by the use of non-MOPAR® parts for maintenance and repairs will not be covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

## DEALER SERVICE

Your authorized dealer has the qualified service personnel, special tools, and equipment to perform all service operations in an expert manner. Service Manuals are available which include detailed service information for your vehicle. Refer to these Service Manuals before attempting any procedure yourself.

**NOTE:** Intentional tampering with emissions control systems may void your warranty and could result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

### WARNING!

You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Only do service work for which you have the knowledge and the proper equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a

### WARNING! *(Continued)*

service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.

## MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

The pages that follow contain the **required** maintenance services determined by the engineers who designed your vehicle.

Besides those maintenance items specified in the fixed "Maintenance Schedule", there are other components which may require servicing or replacement in the future.

### CAUTION!

- Failure to properly maintain your vehicle or perform repairs and service when necessary could

*(Continued)*

**CAUTION!** *(Continued)*

result in more costly repairs, damage to other components or negatively impact vehicle performance. Immediately have potential malfunctions examined by an authorized dealer or qualified repair center.

- **Your vehicle has been built with improved fluids that protect the performance and durability of your vehicle and also allow extended maintenance intervals. Do not use chemical flushes in these components as the chemicals can damage your engine, transmission, power steering or air conditioning. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. If a flush is needed because of component malfunction, use only the specified fluid for the flushing procedure.**

**Engine Oil****Checking Oil Level**

To assure proper lubrication of your vehicle's engine, the engine oil must be maintained at the correct level. Check the oil level at regular intervals, such as every fuel stop. The best time to check the engine oil level is about five minutes after a fully warmed up engine is shut off.

Checking the oil while the vehicle is on level ground will improve the accuracy of the oil level readings. Always maintain the oil level within the SAFE zone on the dipstick. Adding one quart of oil when the reading is at the bottom of the SAFE zone will result in a reading at the top of the safe zone on these engines.

**CAUTION!**

**Overfilling or underfilling the crankcase will cause oil aeration or loss of oil pressure. This could damage your engine.**

**Change Engine Oil**

The oil change indicator system will remind you that it is time to take your vehicle in for scheduled maintenance. Refer to the “Maintenance Schedule” for further information.

**NOTE:** Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 8,000 miles (13,000 km) or twelve months, whichever occurs first.

**Engine Oil Selection — 5.7L Engine**

For best performance and maximum protection under all types of operating conditions, the manufacturer only recommends engine oils that are API Certified and meet the requirements of Chrysler Material Standard MS-6395.

**Engine Oil Selection — 6.4L Engine**

For best performance and maximum protection under all types of operating conditions, the manufacturer only recommends engine oils that are API Certified and meet the requirements of Chrysler Material Standard MS-12633.

## American Petroleum Institute (API) Engine Oil Identification Symbol



This symbol means that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API). The manufacturer only recommends API Certified engine oils.

This symbol certifies 0W-20, 5W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30 and 10W-30 engine oils.

### CAUTION!

**Do not use chemical flushes in your engine oil as the chemicals can damage your engine. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.**

## Engine Oil Viscosity — 5.7L Engine

MOPAR® SAE 5W-20 engine oil or equivalent Pennzoil® or Shell Helix® is recommended for all operating temperatures. This engine oil improves low temperature starting and vehicle fuel economy.

For information on engine oil filler cap location, refer to “Engine Compartment” in “Maintaining Your Vehicle” for further information.

Lubricants which do not have both the engine oil certification mark and the correct SAE viscosity grade number should not be used.

**NOTE:** For trucks with a 5.7L engine operating under a gross combined weight rating of 14,000 lbs (6 350 kg) or greater, MOPAR® SAE 5W-30 engine oil or equivalent Pennzoil® or Shell Helix® is recommended for all operating temperatures.

### **Engine Oil Viscosity — 6.4L Engine**

Use Pennzoil Ultra™ 0W-40 engine or equivalent MOPAR® oil meeting the Chrysler Material Standard MS-12633 for use in all operating temperatures.

The engine oil filler cap also shows the recommended engine oil viscosity for your engine. For information on engine oil filler cap location, refer to the “Engine Compartment” in this section.

### **Synthetic Engine Oils**

You may use synthetic engine oils provided the recommended oil quality requirements are met, and the recommended maintenance intervals for oil and filter changes are followed.

### **Disposing Of Used Engine Oil And Oil Filters**

Care should be taken in disposing of used engine oil and oil filters from your vehicle. Used oil and oil filters, indiscriminately discarded, can present a problem to the

environment. Contact your authorized dealer, service station or governmental agency for advice on how and where used oil and oil filters can be safely discarded in your area.

### **Engine Oil Filter**

The engine oil filter should be replaced with a new filter at every engine oil change.

### **Engine Oil Filter Selection**

The manufacturer’s engines have a full-flow type oil filter. Use a filter of this type for replacement. The quality of replacement filters varies considerably. Only high-quality filters should be used to assure most efficient service. MOPAR® engine oil filters are a high-quality oil filter and are recommended.

## Engine Air Cleaner Filter

Refer to the “Maintenance Schedule” for the proper maintenance intervals.

### **WARNING!**

The air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc.) can provide a measure of protection in the case of engine backfire. Do not remove the air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc.) unless such removal is necessary for repair or maintenance. Make sure that no one is near the engine compartment before starting the vehicle with the air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc.) removed. Failure to do so can result in serious personal injury.

## Engine Air Cleaner Filter Selection

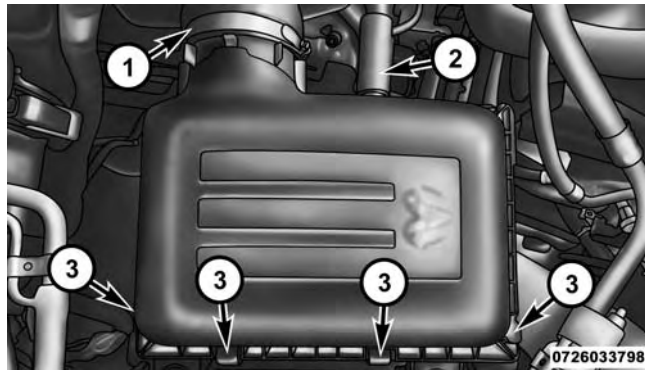
The quality of replacement engine air cleaner filters varies considerably. Only high quality filters should be used to assure most efficient service. MOPAR® engine air cleaner filters are a high quality filter and are recommended.

## Engine Air Cleaner Filter Inspection and Replacement

Inspect engine air cleaner filter for dirt and or debris, if you find evidence of either dirt or debris you should change your air cleaner filter.

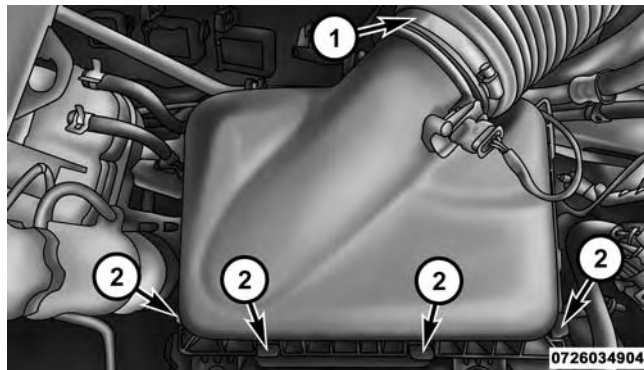
## Engine Air Cleaner Filter Removal

1. Release the spring clips from the air cleaner cover.



5.7L Air Cleaner Filter Cover

- 1 — Clean Air Hose Clamp
  - 2 — Air Hose
  - 3 — Spring Clips
- 

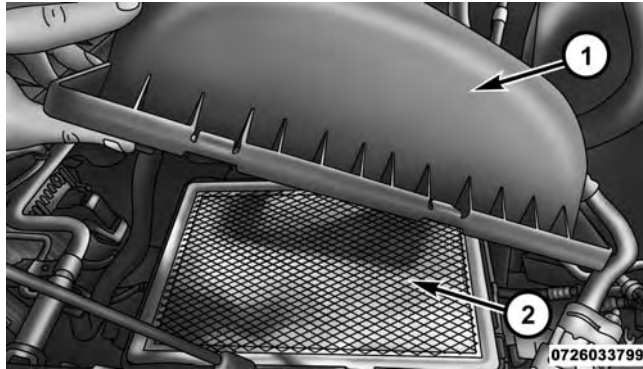


6.4L Air Cleaner Filter Cover

- 1 — Clean Air Hose Clamp
  - 2 — Spring Clips
-

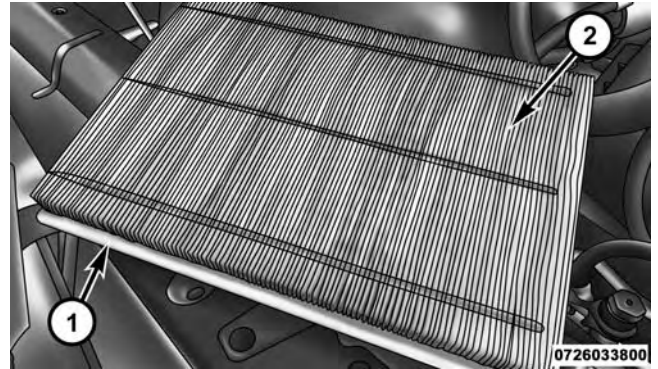


2. Lift the air cleaner cover to access the air cleaner filter.
3. Remove the air cleaner filter element from the housing assembly.



**Open Air Cleaner Filter Assembly**

- 1 — Air Cleaner Cover
- 2 — Air Cleaner Filter



**Air Cleaner Filter**

- 1 — Air Cleaner Filter
- 2 — Air Cleaner Filter Inspection Surface

### Engine Air Cleaner Filter Installation

**NOTE:** Inspect and clean the housing if dirt or debris is present before replacing the air filter element.

1. Install the air cleaner filter element into the housing assembly with the air cleaner filter inspection surface facing downward.
2. Install the air cleaner cover onto the housing assembly locating tabs.
3. Latch the spring clips and lock the air cleaner cover to the housing assembly.

### Accessory Drive Belt Inspection

#### **WARNING!**

- **Do not attempt to inspect an accessory drive belt with vehicle running.**

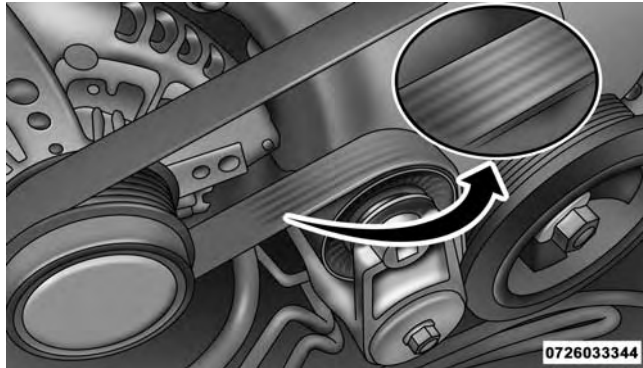
#### **WARNING! (Continued)**

- **When working near the radiator cooling fan, disconnect the fan motor lead. The fan is temperature controlled and can start at any time regardless of ignition switch position. You could be injured by the moving fan blades.**
- **You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Only do service work for which you have the knowledge and the proper equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.**

When inspecting accessory drive belts, small cracks that run across ribbed surface of belt from rib to rib, are considered normal. These are not a reason to replace belt. However, cracks running along a rib (not across) are not

*(Continued)*

normal. Any belt with cracks running along a rib must be replaced. Also have the belt replaced if it has excessive wear, frayed cords or severe glazing.



#### Accessory Belt (Serpentine Belt)

Conditions that would require replacement:

- Rib chunking (one or more ribs has separated from belt body)
- Rib or belt wear
- Longitudinal belt cracking (cracks between two ribs)
- Belt slips
- “Groove jumping” (belt does not maintain correct position on pulley)
- Belt broken (note: identify and correct problem before new belt is installed)
- Noise (objectionable squeal, squeak, or rumble is heard or felt while drive belt is in operation)

Some conditions can be caused by a faulty component such as a belt pulley. Belt pulleys should be carefully inspected for damage and proper alignment.

Belt replacement on some models requires the use of special tools, we recommend having your vehicle serviced at an authorized dealer.

## Maintenance-Free Battery

Your vehicle is equipped with a maintenance-free battery. You will never have to add water, nor is periodic maintenance required.

### WARNING!

- Battery fluid is a corrosive acid solution and can burn or even blind you. Do not allow battery fluid to contact your eyes, skin, or clothing. Do not lean over a battery when attaching clamps. If acid splashes in eyes or on skin, flush the area immediately with large amounts of water. Refer to "Jump-Starting Procedures" in "What To Do In Emergencies" for further information.
- Battery gas is flammable and explosive. Keep flame or sparks away from the battery. Do not use a booster battery or any other booster source with

*(Continued)*

### WARNING! *(Continued)*

- an output greater than 12 Volts. Do not allow cable clamps to touch each other.
- Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

### CAUTION!

- It is essential when replacing the cables on the battery that the positive cable is attached to the positive post and the negative cable is attached to the negative post. Battery posts are marked positive (+) and negative (-) and are identified on the battery case. Cable clamps should be tight on the terminal posts and free of corrosion.

*(Continued)*

**CAUTION!** *(Continued)*

- If a “fast charger” is used while the battery is in the vehicle, disconnect both vehicle battery cables before connecting the charger to the battery. Do not use a “fast charger” to provide starting voltage.

**Air Conditioner Maintenance**

For best possible performance, your air conditioner should be checked and serviced by an authorized dealer at the start of each warm season. This service should include cleaning of the condenser fins and a performance test. Drive belt tension should also be checked at this time.

**WARNING!**

- Use only refrigerants and compressor lubricants approved by the manufacturer for your air conditioning system. Some unapproved refrigerants are flammable and can explode, injuring you. Other unapproved refrigerants or lubricants can cause the system to fail, requiring costly repairs. Refer to Warranty Information Book, located on the DVD, for further warranty information.
- The air conditioning system contains refrigerant under high pressure. To avoid risk of personal injury or damage to the system, adding refrigerant or any repair requiring lines to be disconnected should be done by an experienced technician.

**CAUTION!**

Do not use chemical flushes in your air conditioning system as the chemicals can damage your air conditioning components. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

**Refrigerant Recovery And Recycling R134a — If Equipped**

R-134a Air Conditioning Refrigerant is a hydrofluorocarbon (HFC) that is endorsed by the Environmental Protection Agency and is an ozone-saving product. However, the manufacturer recommends that air conditioning service be performed by authorized dealer or other service facilities using recovery and recycling equipment.

**NOTE:** Use only manufacturer approved A/C system PAG compressor oil and refrigerants.

**Refrigerant Recovery And Recycling HFO 1234yf — If Equipped**

HFO 1234yf Air Conditioning Refrigerant is a hydrofluorocarbon (HFC) that is endorsed by the Environmental Protection Agency and is an ozone-saving product with a low GWP (Global Warming Potential). However, the manufacturer recommends that air conditioning service be performed by authorized dealer or other service facilities using recovery and recycling equipment.

**NOTE:** Use only manufacturer approved A/C system PAG compressor oil and refrigerants.

**Front Prop Shaft Lubrication — Four-Wheel Drive Models**

Lubricate the front driveshaft grease fitting at each oil change. The grease fitting is located at the rear of the front driveshaft, near the centering mechanism of double cardan joint. Refer to the “Maintenance Schedule” for the

proper maintenance intervals. Use MOPAR® Type MS-6560 (lithium-based grease), or equivalent.

### **Body Lubrication**

Locks and all body pivot points, including such items as seat tracks, door hinge pivot points and rollers, liftgate, tailgate, decklid, sliding doors and hood hinges, should be lubricated periodically with a lithium based grease, such as MOPAR® Spray White Lube to assure quiet, easy operation and to protect against rust and wear. Prior to the application of any lubricant, the parts concerned should be wiped clean to remove dust and grit; after lubricating excess oil and grease should be removed. Particular attention should also be given to hood latching components to ensure proper function. When performing other underhood services, the hood latch, release mechanism and safety catch should be cleaned and lubricated.

The external lock cylinders should be lubricated twice a year, preferably in the Fall and Spring. Apply a small amount of a high quality lubricant, such as MOPAR® Lock Cylinder Lubricant directly into the lock cylinder.

### **Windshield Wiper Blades**

Clean the rubber edges of the wiper blades and the windshield periodically with a sponge or soft cloth and a mild nonabrasive cleaner. This will remove accumulations of salt or road film.

Operation of the wipers on dry glass for long periods may cause deterioration of the wiper blades. Always use washer fluid when using the wipers to remove salt or dirt from a dry windshield.

Avoid using the wiper blades to remove frost or ice from the windshield. Keep the blade rubber out of contact with petroleum products such as engine oil, gasoline, etc.

**NOTE:** Life expectancy of wiper blades varies depending on geographical area and frequency of use. Poor performance of blades may be present with chattering, marks, water lines or wet spots. If any of these conditions are present, clean the wiper blades or replace as necessary.

The wiper blades and wiper arms should be inspected periodically, not just when wiper performance problems are experienced. This inspection should include the following points:

- Wear Or Uneven Edges
- Foreign Material
- Hardening Or Cracking
- Deformation Or Fatigue

If a wiper blade or wiper arm is damaged, replace the affected wiper arm or blade with a new unit. Do not attempt to repair a wiper arm or blade that is damaged.

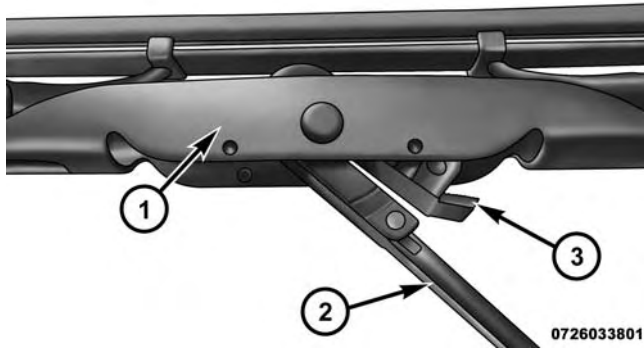
### Wiper Blade Removal/Installation

#### CAUTION!

**Do not allow the wiper arm to spring back against the glass without the wiper blade in place or the glass may be damaged.**

1. Lift the wiper arm to raise the wiper blade off of the glass, until the wiper arm is in the full up position.



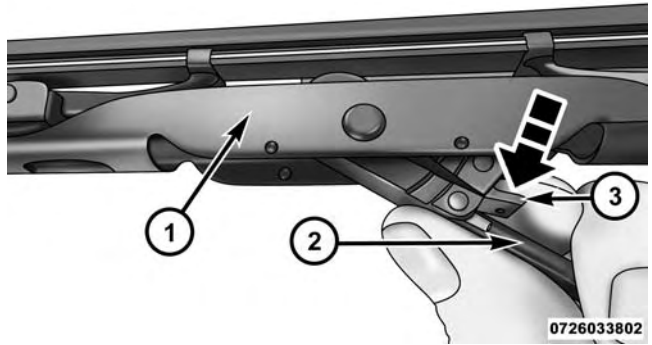


**Wiper Blade With Release Tab In Locked Position**

- 1 — Wiper Blade
- 2 — Wiper Arm
- 3 — Release Tab

2. To disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm, press the release tab on the wiper blade and while

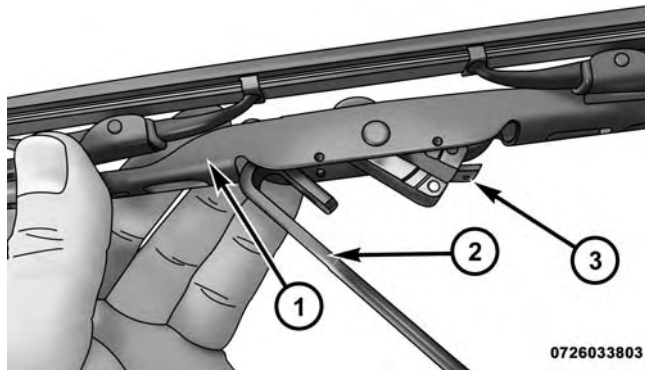
holding the wiper arm with one hand, slide the wiper blade down towards the base of the wiper arm.



**Wiper Blade With Release Tab In Unlocked Position**

- 1 — Wiper Blade
- 2 — Wiper Arm
- 3 — Release Tab

3. With the wiper blade disengaged, remove the wiper blade from the wiper arm.



**Wiper Blade Removed From Wiper Arm**

- 1 — Wiper Blade
- 2 — Wiper Arm
- 3 — Release Tab

4. Gently lower the wiper arm onto the glass.

### Installing The Front Wipers

1. Lift the wiper arm off of the glass, until the wiper arm is in the full up position.
2. Position the wiper blade near the hook on the tip of the wiper arm.
3. Insert the hook on the tip of the arm through the opening in the wiper blade.
4. Slide the wiper blade up into the hook on the wiper arm, latch engagement will be accompanied by an audible click.
5. Gently lower the wiper blade onto the glass.

### Adding Washer Fluid

The fluid reservoir is located under the hood and should be checked for fluid level at regular intervals. Fill the

reservoir with windshield washer solvent only (not radiator antifreeze). When refilling the washer fluid reservoir, take some washer fluid and apply it to a cloth or towel and wipe the wiper blades clean. This will help blade performance.

To prevent freeze-up of your windshield washer system in cold weather, select a solution or mixture that meets or exceeds the temperature range of your climate. This rating information can be found on most washer fluid containers.

### **WARNING!**

**Commercially available windshield washer solvents are flammable. They could ignite and burn you. Care must be exercised when filling or working around the washer solution.**

After the engine has warmed up, operate the defroster for a few minutes to reduce the possibility of smearing or freezing the fluid on the cold windshield. Windshield washer solution used with water as directed on the container, aids cleaning action, reduces the freezing point to avoid line clogging, and is not harmful to paint or trim.

### **Exhaust System**

The best protection against carbon monoxide entry into the vehicle body is a properly maintained engine exhaust system.

If you notice a change in the sound of the exhaust system; or if the exhaust fumes can be detected inside the vehicle; or when the underside or rear of the vehicle is damaged; have an authorized technician inspect the complete exhaust system and adjacent body areas for broken, damaged, deteriorated, or mispositioned parts. Open seams or loose connections could permit exhaust fumes to seep into the passenger compartment. In addition, have the exhaust system inspected each time the vehicle is raised for lubrication or oil change. Replace as required.

**WARNING!**

- Exhaust gases can injure or kill. They contain carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Breathing it can make you unconscious and can eventually poison you. To avoid breathing CO, refer to "Safety Tips/Exhaust Gas" in "Things To Know Before Starting Your Vehicle" for further information.
- A hot exhaust system can start a fire if you park over materials that can burn. Such materials might be grass or leaves coming into contact with your exhaust system. Do not park or operate your vehicle in areas where your exhaust system can contact anything that can burn.

**CAUTION!**

- The catalytic converter requires the use of unleaded fuel only. Leaded gasoline will destroy the effectiveness of the catalyst as an emissions control device and may seriously reduce engine performance and cause serious damage to the engine.
- Damage to the catalytic converter can result if your vehicle is not kept in proper operating condition. In the event of engine malfunction, particularly involving engine misfire or other apparent loss of performance, have your vehicle serviced promptly. Continued operation of your vehicle with a severe malfunction could cause the converter to overheat, resulting in possible damage to the converter and vehicle.

Under normal operating conditions, the catalytic converter will not require maintenance. However, it is important to keep the engine properly tuned to assure proper catalyst operation and prevent possible catalyst damage.

**NOTE:** Intentional tampering with emissions control systems can result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

In unusual situations involving grossly malfunctioning engine operation, a scorching odor may suggest severe and abnormal catalyst overheating. If this occurs, stop the vehicle, turn off the engine and allow it to cool. Service, including a tune-up to manufacturer's specifications, should be obtained immediately.

To minimize the possibility of catalytic converter damage:

- Do not shut off the engine or interrupt the ignition, when the transmission is in gear and the vehicle is in motion.
- Do not try to start the engine by pushing or towing the vehicle.
- Do not idle the engine with any spark plug wires disconnected or removed, such as when diagnostic testing, or for prolonged periods during very rough idle or malfunctioning operating conditions.

## Cooling System

### WARNING!

**You or others can be badly burned by hot engine coolant (antifreeze) or steam from your radiator. If you see or hear steam coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the radiator has had time to cool. Never try to open a cooling system pressure cap when the radiator is hot.**

### Engine Coolant Checks

Check the engine coolant (antifreeze) protection every 12 months (before the onset of freezing weather, where applicable). If the engine coolant (antifreeze) is dirty or rusty in appearance, the system should be drained, flushed and refilled with fresh coolant. Check the front of the A/C condenser (if equipped) or radiator for any accumulation of bugs, leaves, etc. If dirty, clean by gently

spraying water from a garden hose vertically down the face of the A/C condenser (if equipped) or the back of the radiator core.

Check the engine cooling system hoses for brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts and tightness of the connection at the coolant recovery bottle and radiator. Inspect the entire system for leaks.

With the engine at normal operating temperature (but not running), check the cooling system pressure cap for proper vacuum sealing by draining a small amount of engine coolant (antifreeze) from the radiator drain cock. The radiator drain cock is located in the lower radiator tank. If the cap is sealing properly, the engine coolant (antifreeze) will begin to drain from the coolant expansion bottle. **DO NOT REMOVE THE COOLANT PRESSURE CAP WHEN THE COOLING SYSTEM IS HOT.**

### Cooling System — Drain Flush And Refill

If the engine coolant (antifreeze) is dirty or contains a considerable amount of sediment, clean and flush with a reliable cooling system cleaner. Follow with a thorough rinsing to remove all deposits and chemicals. Properly dispose of old engine coolant (antifreeze).

Refer to the “Maintenance Schedule” for the proper maintenance intervals.

### Selection Of Coolant

Refer to “Fluids, Lubricants, And Genuine Parts” in “Maintaining Your Vehicle” for further information.

#### CAUTION!

- Mixing of engine coolant (antifreeze) other than specified Organic Additive Technology (OAT) engine coolant (antifreeze), may result in engine

*(Continued)*

#### CAUTION! *(Continued)*

damage and may decrease corrosion protection. Organic Additive Technology (OAT) engine coolant is different and should not be mixed with Hybrid Organic Additive Technology (HOAT) engine coolant (antifreeze) or any “globally compatible” coolant (antifreeze). If a non-OAT engine coolant (antifreeze) is introduced into the cooling system in an emergency, the cooling system will need to be drained, flushed, and refilled with fresh OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032), by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

- Do not use water alone or alcohol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) products. Do not use additional rust inhibitors or antirust products, as they may not be compatible with the radiator engine coolant and may plug the radiator.

*(Continued)*

**CAUTION!** *(Continued)*

- **This vehicle has not been designed for use with propylene glycol-based engine coolant (antifreeze). Use of propylene glycol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) is not recommended.**

**Adding Coolant**

Your vehicle has been built with an improved engine coolant (OAT coolant conforming to MS.90032) that allows extended maintenance intervals. This engine coolant (antifreeze) can be used up to ten years or 150,000 miles (240,000 km) before replacement. To prevent reducing this extended maintenance period, it is important that you use the same engine coolant (OAT coolant conforming to MS.90032) throughout the life of your vehicle.

Please review these recommendations for using Organic Additive Technology (OAT) engine coolant (antifreeze)

that meets the requirements of Chrysler Material Standard MS.90032. When adding engine coolant (antifreeze):

- We recommend using MOPAR® Antifreeze/Coolant 10 Year/150,000 Mile Formula OAT (Organic Additive Technology) that meets the requirements of Chrysler Material Standard MS.90032.
- Mix a minimum solution of 50% OAT engine coolant that meets the requirements of Chrysler Material Standard MS.90032 and distilled water. Use higher concentrations (not to exceed 70%) if temperatures below  $-34^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-37^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) are anticipated.
- Use only high purity water such as distilled or deionized water when mixing the water/engine coolant (antifreeze) solution. The use of lower quality water will reduce the amount of corrosion protection in the engine cooling system.



Please note that it is the owner's responsibility to maintain the proper level of protection against freezing according to the temperatures occurring in the area where the vehicle is operated.

**NOTE:**

- Some vehicles require special tools to add coolant properly. Failure to fill these systems properly could lead to severe internal engine damage. If any coolant is needed to be added to the system please contact your local authorized dealer.
- Mixing engine coolant (antifreeze) types is not recommended and can result in cooling system damage. If HOAT and OAT coolant are mixed in an emergency, have a authorized dealer drain, flush, and refill with OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032) as soon as possible.

### Cooling System Pressure Cap

The cap must be fully tightened to prevent loss of engine coolant (antifreeze), and to ensure that the engine coolant (antifreeze) will return to the radiator from the coolant expansion bottle.

The cap should be inspected and cleaned if there is any accumulation of foreign material on the sealing surfaces.

#### **WARNING!**

- **Do not open hot engine cooling system. Never add engine coolant (antifreeze) when the engine is overheated. Do not loosen or remove the cap to cool an overheated engine. Heat causes pressure to build up in the cooling system. To prevent scalding or injury, do not remove the pressure cap while the system is hot or under pressure.**

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- **Do not use a pressure cap other than the one specified for your vehicle. Personal injury or engine damage may result.**

**Disposal Of Used Engine Coolant**

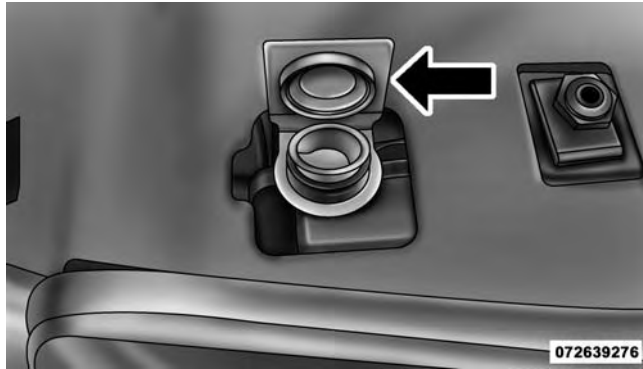
Used ethylene glycol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) is a regulated substance requiring proper disposal. Check with your local authorities to determine the disposal rules for your community. To prevent ingestion by animals or children, do not store ethylene glycol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) in open containers or allow it to remain in puddles on the ground. If ingested by a child or pet, seek emergency assistance immediately. Clean up any ground spills immediately.

**Checking Coolant Level — 5.7L Engine**

With the engine OFF and cold, the level of the engine coolant should be between the MIN and MAX range on the dipstick.

To check the coolant level:

1. Open the coolant reservoir.



### Opening The Coolant Reservoir

2. Lift and remove the plastic dipstick from the reservoir neck.



### Coolant Reservoir Dipstick

3. Check the coolant level on the dipstick.

The radiator normally remains completely full, so there is no need to remove the radiator cap unless checking for engine coolant (antifreeze) freeze point or replacing engine coolant (antifreeze). Advise your service attendant of this. As long as the engine operating temperature is satisfactory, the coolant bottle need only be checked once a month.

When additional engine coolant (antifreeze) is needed to maintain the proper level, it should be added to the coolant bottle. Do not overfill.

### Checking Coolant Level — 6.4L Engine

The level of the coolant in the pressurized coolant bottle should be between the “MIN” and “MAX” range on the bottle when the engine is cold.

The radiator normally remains completely full, so there is no need to remove the cap unless checking for coolant

freeze point or replacing engine coolant (antifreeze). Advise your service attendant of this. As long as the engine operating temperature is satisfactory, the coolant bottle need only be checked once a month. When additional engine coolant (antifreeze) is needed to maintain the proper level, it should be added to the coolant bottle. Do not overfill.

### Points To Remember

**NOTE:** When the vehicle is stopped after a few miles/kilometers of operation, you may observe vapor coming from the front of the engine compartment. This is normally a result of moisture from rain, snow, or high humidity accumulating on the radiator and being vaporized when the thermostat opens, allowing hot engine coolant (antifreeze) to enter the radiator.

If an examination of your engine compartment shows no evidence of radiator or hose leaks, the vehicle may be safely driven. The vapor will soon dissipate.

- Do not overfill the coolant expansion bottle.
- Check the coolant freeze point in the radiator and in the coolant expansion bottle. If engine coolant (antifreeze) needs to be added, the contents of the coolant expansion bottle must also be protected against freezing.
- If frequent engine coolant (antifreeze) additions are required, the cooling system should be pressure tested for leaks.
- Maintain engine coolant (antifreeze) concentration at a minimum of 50% OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032) and distilled water for proper corrosion protection of your engine which contains aluminum components.

- Make sure that the coolant expansion bottle overflow hoses are not kinked or obstructed.
- Keep the front of the radiator clean. If your vehicle is equipped with air conditioning, keep the front of the condenser clean.
- Do not change the thermostat for Summer or Winter operation. If replacement is ever necessary, install ONLY the correct type thermostat. Other designs may result in unsatisfactory engine coolant (antifreeze) performance, poor gas mileage, and increased emissions.

### **Brake System**

In order to assure brake system performance, all brake system components should be inspected periodically. Refer to the "Maintenance Schedule" for the proper maintenance intervals.

**WARNING!**

**Riding the brakes can lead to brake failure and possibly a collision. Driving with your foot resting or riding on the brake pedal can result in abnormally high brake temperatures, excessive lining wear, and possible brake damage. You would not have your full braking capacity in an emergency.**

**Brake Fluid Level Check**

The fluid level of the master cylinder should be checked when performing under the hood service or immediately if the brake system warning lamp indicates system failure.

The brake master cylinder has a translucent plastic reservoir. On the outboard side of the reservoir, there is a "MAX" dot and an "MIN" dot. The fluid level must be kept within these two dots. Do not add fluid above the MAX mark because leakage may occur at the cap.

With disc brakes the fluid level can be expected to fall as the brake linings wear. However, an unexpected drop in fluid level may be caused by a leak and a system check should be conducted.

Use only the manufacturer's recommended brake fluid. Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, And Genuine Parts" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information.

**WARNING!**

- **Use only manufacturer's recommended brake fluid. Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, And Genuine Parts" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information. Using the wrong type of brake fluid can severely damage your brake system and/or impair its performance. The proper type of brake fluid for your vehicle is also identified on the original factory installed hydraulic master cylinder reservoir.**

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- To avoid contamination from foreign matter or moisture, use only new brake fluid or fluid that has been in a tightly closed container. Keep the master cylinder reservoir cap secured at all times. Brake fluid in an open container absorbs moisture from the air resulting in a lower boiling point. This may cause it to boil unexpectedly during hard or prolonged braking, resulting in sudden brake failure. This could result in a collision.
- Overfilling the brake fluid reservoir can result in spilling brake fluid on hot engine parts, causing the brake fluid to catch fire. Brake fluid can also damage painted and vinyl surfaces, care should be taken to avoid its contact with these surfaces.
- Do not allow petroleum based fluid to contaminate the brake fluid. Brake seal components could be damaged, causing partial or complete brake failure. This could result in a collision.

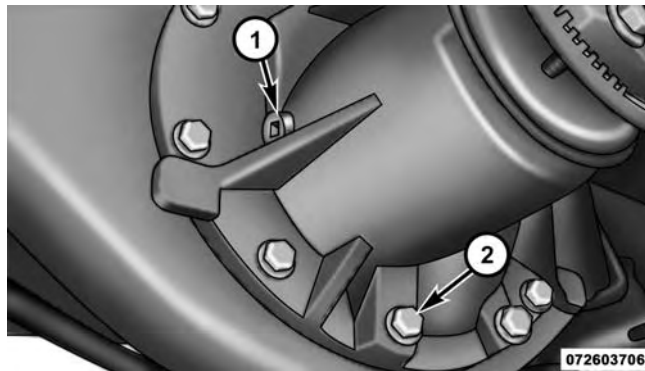
**Rear Axle And 4x4 Front Driving Axle Fluid Level**

For models with 9.25 in Front Axles and 11.5 in Rear Axles, refer to “Fluids, Lubricants, And Genuine Parts” in “Maintaining Your Vehicle” for further information. For normal service, periodic fluid level checks are not required. When the vehicle is serviced for other reasons, the exterior surfaces of the axle assembly should be inspected.

When checking the fluid level (4500/5500 only), the vehicle should be in a level position. The fluid level should be  $\frac{1}{4}$  in  $\pm$   $\frac{1}{4}$  in (6.4 mm  $\pm$  6.4 mm) below the fill hole on the front axle. The fluid level should be level with the bottom of the fill hole on the rear axle.

## Drain And Refill

On 4500/5500 vehicles, remove the lower bolt to drain the axle fluid.



- 1 — 4500/5500 Rear Axle Fluid Fill Plug  
2 — 4500/5500 Rear Axle Fluid Drain Plug

Refer to the “Maintenance Schedule” for the proper maintenance intervals.

## Lubricant Selection

Refer to “Fluids, Lubricants, And Genuine Parts” in “Maintaining Your Vehicle” for further information.

**NOTE:** The presence of water in the gear lubricant will result in corrosion and possible failure of differential components. Operation of the vehicle in water, as may be encountered in some off-highway types of service, will require draining and refilling the axle to avoid damage.

**Limited-Slip Differentials DO NOT REQUIRE** any limited slip oil additive (friction modifiers).

**NOTE:** Slight noise and mild shuddering may be evident while turning a vehicle with limited slip differential on concrete or dry pavement. These conditions should be considered normal operation of the limited slip differential.



## Transfer Case

### Drain And Refill

Refer to the “Maintenance Schedule” for the proper maintenance intervals.

### Lubricant Selection

Refer to “Fluids, Lubricants, And Genuine Parts” in “Maintaining Your Vehicle” for further information.

### Fluid Level Check

This fluid level can be checked by removing the filler plug. The fluid level should be to the bottom edge of the filler plug hole with the vehicle in a level position.

## Automatic Transmission — If Equipped

### Selection Of Lubricant

It is important to use the proper transmission fluid to ensure optimum transmission performance and life. Use

only the manufacturer’s specified transmission fluid. Refer to “Fluids, Lubricants, And Genuine Parts” in this section for fluid specifications. It is important to maintain the transmission fluid at the correct level using the recommended fluid. No chemical flushes should be used in any transmission; only the approved lubricant should be used.

### CAUTION!

**Using a transmission fluid other than the manufacturer’s recommended fluid may cause deterioration in transmission shift quality and/or torque converter shudder, and will require more frequent fluid and filter changes. Refer to “Fluids, Lubricants, And Genuine Parts” in this section for fluid specifications.**

## Special Additives

The manufacturer strongly recommends against using any special additives in the transmission. Automatic Transmission Fluid (ATF) is an engineered product and its performance may be impaired by supplemental additives. Therefore, do not add any fluid additives to the transmission. The only exception to this policy is the use of special dyes for diagnosing fluid leaks. Avoid using transmission sealers as they may adversely affect seals.

### **CAUTION!**

**Do not use chemical flushes in your transmission as the chemicals can damage your transmission components. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.**

## Fluid Level Check

Check the fluid level when the engine is fully warmed up and the transmission fluid is at normal operating temperature. Driving with an improper fluid level will greatly reduce the life of the transmission and of the fluid. Check the fluid level whenever the vehicle is serviced.

### **Fluid Level Check — Procedure**

It is best to check the fluid level when the transmission is at normal operating temperature (170-180°F / 77-82°C for 66RFE transmission, or 158-176°F / 70-80°C for AS66RC transmission). This normally occurs after at least 15 miles (25 km) of driving. At normal operating temperature the fluid cannot be held comfortably between the fingertips. You can read the transmission sump temperature in the

EVIC/DID display (refer to “Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID)” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information).

Use the following procedure to check the transmission fluid level properly:

1. Monitor the transmission temperature using the EVIC/DID display, and operate the vehicle as required to reach the normal operating temperature. If the transmission is not functioning properly, or the vehicle cannot be driven, see the NOTE and CAUTION below about checking the fluid level at colder temperatures.
2. Park the vehicle on level ground.
3. Run the engine at normal idle speed for at least 60 seconds, and leave the engine running for the rest of this procedure.
4. Fully apply the parking brake and press the brake.
5. Place the shift lever momentarily into each gear position (allowing time for the transmission to fully engage in each position), ending with the transmission in PARK.
6. Wipe the area around the dipstick clean to prevent dirt from entering the transmission.
7. Remove the dipstick, wipe it clean and reinsert it until seated.
8. Remove the dipstick again and note the fluid level on both sides. The fluid level reading is only valid if there is a solid coating of oil on both sides of the dipstick. Note that the holes in the dipstick will be full of fluid if the actual level is at or above the hole. The fluid level should be between the “HOT” (upper) reference holes on the dipstick at normal operating temperature. If the fluid level is low, add fluid through the dipstick tube

to bring it to the proper level. **Do not overfill.** Use **ONLY** the specified fluid (see "Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts" for fluid specifications). After adding any quantity of oil through the dipstick tube, wait a minimum of two minutes for the oil to fully drain into the transmission before rechecking the fluid level.

**NOTE:** If it is necessary to check the transmission **below** the operating temperature, the fluid level should be between the two "COLD" (lower) holes on the dipstick with the fluid at 60-70°F / 16-21°C for 66RFE transmission, or 68-86°F / 20-30°C for AS66RC transmission. Only use the COLD region of the dipstick as a rough reference when setting the fluid level after a transmission service or fluid change. Re-check the fluid level, and adjust as required, once the transmission reaches normal operating temperature.

### CAUTION!

**If the fluid temperature is below 50°F (10°C) it may not register on the dipstick. Do not add fluid until the temperature is elevated enough to produce an accurate reading. Run the engine at idle, in PARK, to warm the fluid.**

9. Reinsert the dipstick. Check for leaks. Release the parking brake.

**NOTE:** To prevent dirt and water from entering the transmission after checking or replenishing fluid, make sure that the dipstick cap is properly resealed. It is normal for the dipstick cap to spring back slightly from its fully seated position, as long as its seal remains engaged in the dipstick tube.

## Fluid And Filter Changes

Refer to the “Maintenance Schedule” for the proper maintenance intervals.

In addition, change the fluid and filters if the fluid becomes contaminated (with water, etc.), or if the transmission is disassembled for any reason.

## Appearance Care And Protection From Corrosion

### Protection Of Body And Paint From Corrosion

Vehicle body care requirements vary according to geographic locations and usage. Chemicals that make roads passable in snow and ice, and chemicals that are sprayed on trees and road surfaces during other seasons, are highly corrosive to the metal in your vehicle. Outside parking, which exposes your vehicle to airborne contaminants, road surfaces on which the vehicle is operated,

extreme hot or cold weather and other extreme conditions will have an adverse effect on paint, metal trim, and underbody protection.

The following maintenance recommendations will enable you to obtain maximum benefit from the corrosion resistance built into your vehicle.

### What Causes Corrosion?

Corrosion is the result of deterioration or removal of paint and protective coatings from your vehicle.

The most common causes are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture accumulation.
- Stone and gravel impact.
- Insects, tree sap and tar.
- Salt in the air near seacoast localities.
- Atmospheric fallout/industrial pollutants.

## Washing

- Wash your vehicle regularly. Always wash your vehicle in the shade using MOPAR® Car Wash, or a mild car wash soap, and rinse the panels completely with clear water.
- If insects, tar, or other similar deposits have accumulated on your vehicle, use MOPAR® Super Kleen Bug and Tar Remover to remove.
- Use a high quality cleaner wax, such as MOPAR® Cleaner Wax to remove road film, stains and to protect your paint finish. Take care never to scratch the paint.
- Avoid using abrasive compounds and power buffing that may diminish the gloss or thin out the paint finish.

### CAUTION!

- **Do not use abrasive or strong cleaning materials such as steel wool or scouring powder that will scratch metal and painted surfaces.**
- **Use of power washers exceeding 1,200 psi (8 274 kPa) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.**

## Special Care

- If you drive on salted or dusty roads or if you drive near the ocean, hose off the undercarriage at least once a month.
- It is important that the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors, rocker panels, and trunk be kept clear and open.

- If you detect any stone chips or scratches in the paint, touch them up immediately. The cost of such repairs is considered the responsibility of the owner.
- If your vehicle is damaged due to a collision or similar cause that destroys the paint and protective coating, have your vehicle repaired as soon as possible. The cost of such repairs is considered the responsibility of the owner.
- If you carry special cargo such as chemicals, fertilizers, de-icer salt, etc., be sure that such materials are well packaged and sealed.
- If a lot of driving is done on gravel roads, consider mud or stone shields behind each wheel.
- Use MOPAR® Touch Up Paint on scratches as soon as possible. Your authorized dealer has touch up paint to match the color of your vehicle.

### Wheel And Wheel Trim Care

All wheels and wheel trim, especially aluminum and chrome plated wheels, should be cleaned regularly using mild (neutral Ph) soap and water to maintain their luster and to prevent corrosion. Wash wheels with the same soap solution recommended for the body of the vehicle.

Your wheels are susceptible to deterioration caused by salt, sodium chloride, magnesium chloride, calcium chloride, etc., and other road chemicals used to melt ice or control dust on dirt roads. Use a soft cloth or sponge and mild soap to wipe away promptly. Do not use harsh chemicals or a stiff brush. They can damage the wheel's protective coating that helps keep them from corroding and tarnishing.

**NOTE:** Many aftermarket wheel cleaners contain strong acids or strong alkaline additives that can harm the wheel surface.

**CAUTION!**

Avoid products or automatic car washes that use acidic solutions or strong alkaline additives or harsh brushes. These products and automatic car washes may damage the wheel's protective finish. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Only car wash soap, MOPAR Wheel Cleaner or equivalent is recommended.

When cleaning extremely dirty wheels including excessive brake dust, care must be taken in the selection of tire and wheel cleaning chemicals and equipment to prevent damage to the wheels. Mopar Wheel Treatment or Mopar Chrome Cleaner or their equivalent is recommended or select a non-abrasive, non-acidic cleaner for aluminum or chrome wheels. Do not use any products on Dark Vapor or Black Satin Chrome Wheels. They will permanently

damage this finish and such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

**CAUTION!**

Do not use scouring pads, steel wool, a bristle brush, metal polishes or oven cleaner. These products may damage the wheel's protective finish. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Only car wash soap, MOPAR Wheel Cleaner or equivalent is recommended.

**NOTE:** If you intend parking or storing your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. Driving the vehicle and applying the brakes when stopping will reduce the risk of brake rotor corrosion.



## Dark Vapor Or Black Satin Chrome Wheels

### CAUTION!

If your vehicle is equipped with Dark Vapor or Black Satin Chrome wheels **DO NOT USE** wheel cleaners, abrasives or polishing compounds. They will permanently damage this finish and such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. **USE ONLY MILD SOAP AND WATER WITH A SOFT CLOTH.** Used on a regular basis; this is all that is required to maintain this finish.

### Stain Repel Fabric Cleaning Procedure — If Equipped

Stain Repel seats may be cleaned in the following manner:

- Remove as much of the stain as possible by blotting with a clean, dry towel.

- Blot any remaining stain with a clean, damp towel.
- For tough stains, apply MOPAR® Total Clean, or a mild soap solution to a clean, damp cloth and remove stain. Use a fresh, damp towel to remove soap residue.
- For grease stains, apply MOPAR® Multi-Purpose Cleaner to a clean, damp cloth and remove stain. Use a fresh, damp towel to remove soap residue.
- Do not use any harsh solvents or any other form of protectants on Stain Repel products.

### Interior Care

Use MOPAR® Total Clean to clean fabric upholstery and carpeting.

Use MOPAR® Total Clean to clean vinyl upholstery.

MOPAR® Total Clean is specifically recommended for leather upholstery.

Your leather upholstery can be best preserved by regular cleaning with a damp soft cloth. Small particles of dirt can act as an abrasive and damage the leather upholstery and should be removed promptly with a damp cloth. Stubborn soils can be removed easily with a soft cloth and MOPAR® Total Clean. Care should be taken to avoid soaking your leather upholstery with any liquid. Please do not use polishes, oils, cleaning fluids, solvents, detergents, or ammonia-based cleaners to clean your leather upholstery. Application of a leather conditioner is not required to maintain the original condition.

**WARNING!**

Do not use volatile solvents for cleaning purposes. Many are potentially flammable, and if used in closed areas they may cause respiratory harm.

**CAUTION!**

Direct contact of air fresheners, insect repellents, suntan lotions, or hand sanitizers to the plastic, painted, or decorated surfaces of the interior may cause permanent damage. Wipe away immediately.

**CAUTION!**

Damage caused by these type of products may not be covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

**CAUTION!**

Do not use Alcohol and Alcohol-based and/or Keton based cleaning products to clean leather seats, as damage to the seat may result.

## Cleaning Headlights

Your vehicle is equipped with plastic headlights and fog lights that are lighter and less susceptible to stone breakage than glass headlights.

Plastic is not as scratch resistant as glass and therefore different lens cleaning procedures must be followed.

To minimize the possibility of scratching the lenses and reducing light output, avoid wiping with a dry cloth. To remove road dirt, wash with a mild soap solution followed by rinsing.

Do not use abrasive cleaning components, solvents, steel wool or other aggressive material to clean the lenses.

## Glass Surfaces

All glass surfaces should be cleaned on a regular basis with MOPAR® Glass Cleaner, or any commercial household-type glass cleaner. Never use an abrasive type

cleaner. Use caution when cleaning the inside rear window equipped with electric defrosters or windows equipped with radio antennas. Do not use scrapers or other sharp instrument that may scratch the elements.

When cleaning the rear view mirror, spray cleaner on the towel or rag that you are using. Do not spray cleaner directly on the mirror.

## Cleaning Plastic Instrument Cluster Lenses

The lenses in front of the instruments in this vehicle are molded in clear plastic. When cleaning the lenses, care must be taken to avoid scratching the plastic.

1. Clean with a wet soft rag. A mild soap solution may be used, but do not use high alcohol content or abrasive cleaners. If soap is used, wipe clean with a clean damp rag.
2. Dry with a soft cloth.

## Seat Belt Maintenance

Do not bleach, dye or clean the belts with chemical solvents or abrasive cleaners. This will weaken the fabric. Sun damage can also weaken the fabric.

If the belts need cleaning, use a mild soap solution or lukewarm water. Do not remove the belts from the car to wash them. Dry with a soft cloth.

Replace the belts if they appear frayed or worn or if the buckles do not work properly.

### **WARNING!**

A frayed or torn belt could rip apart in a collision and leave you with no protection. Inspect the belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, or loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the system. Seat belt

*(Continued)*

### **WARNING! (Continued)**

assemblies must be replaced after a collision if they have been damaged (i.e., bent retractor, torn webbing, etc.).

## FUSES

### **WARNING!**

- When replacing a blown fuse, always use an appropriate replacement fuse with the same amp rating as the original fuse. Never replace a fuse with another fuse of higher amp rating. Never replace a blown fuse with metal wires or any other material. Failure to use proper fuses may result in serious personal injury, fire and/or property damage.

*(Continued)*

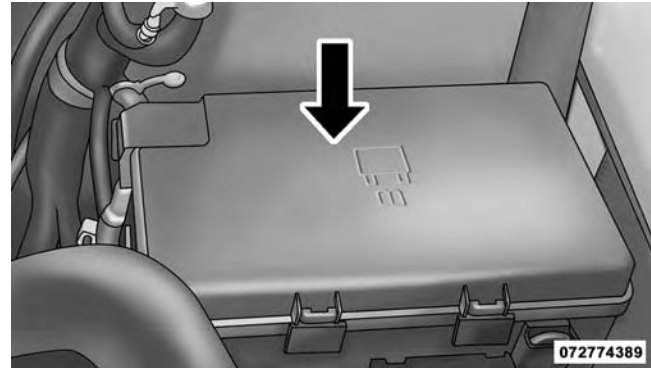
**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Before replacing a fuse, make sure that the ignition is off and that all the other services are switched off and/or disengaged.
- If the replaced fuse blows again, contact an authorized dealer.
- If a general protection fuse for safety systems (air bag system, braking system), power unit systems (engine system, gearbox system) or steering system blows, contact an authorized dealer.

**Power Distribution Center**

The Power Distribution Center is located in the engine compartment near the battery. This center contains cartridge fuses, micro fuses, relays, and circuit breakers. A description of each fuse and component may be stamped

on the inside cover, otherwise the cavity number of each fuse is stamped on the inside cover that corresponds to the following chart.



**Power Distribution Center Location**

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Micro Fuse	Description
F01	80 Amp Black		Rad Fan Control Module – If equipped
F03	60 Amp Yellow		Rad Fan – If Equipped
F05	40 Amp Green		Compressor for Air Suspension – If Equipped
F06	40 Amp Green		Antilock Brakes/Electronic Stability Control Pump
F07	40 Amp Green		Starter Solenoid
F08	20 Amp Blue (1500 LD/Cummins Diesel)		Emissions Diesel – If Equipped
F09	40 Amp Green (Special Services Vehicle & Cummins Diesel) 30 Amp Pink (1500 LD Diesel)		Diesel Fuel Heater – If Equipped

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Micro Fuse	Description
F10	40 Amp Green		Body Controller / Exterior Lighting #2
F10	50 Amp Red		Body Controller / Exterior Lighting #2 – If Equipped with Stop/Start
F11	30 Amp Pink		Integrated Trailer Brake Module – If Equipped
F12	40 Amp Green		Body Controller #3 / Interior Lights
F13	40 Amp Green		Blower Motor
F14	40 Amp Green		Body Controller #4 / Power Locks
F16	30 Amp Pink		Smart Bar – If Equipped
F19	20 Amp Blue (1500 LD Diesel) 30 Amp Pink (Cummins Diesel)		SCR – If Equipped
F20	30 Amp Pink		Passenger Door Module
F21	30 Amp Pink		Drive Train Control Module

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Micro Fuse	Description
F22	20 Amp Blue 30 Amp Pink (Cummins Diesel)		Engine Control Module
F23	30 Amp Pink		Body Controller #1
F24	30 Amp Pink		Driver Door Module
F25	30 Amp Pink		Front Wiper
F26	30 Amp Pink		Antilock Brakes/Stability Control Module/Valves
F28	20 Amp Blue		Trailer Tow Backup Lights – If Equipped
F29	20 Amp Blue		Trailer Tow Parking Lights – If Equipped
F30	30 Amp Pink		Trailer Tow Receptacle
F31	30 Amp Pink (1500 LD Diesel)		Urea Heater Control – If Equipped
F32	30 Amp Pink		Drive Train Control Module – If Equipped
F33	20 Amp Blue		Special Services Vehicle Only



Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Micro Fuse	Description
F34	30 Amp Pink		Vehicle System Interface Module #2 – If Equipped
F35	30 Amp Pink		Sunroof – If Equipped
F36	30 Amp Pink		Rear Defroster– If Equipped
F37	30 Amp Pink		Cummins Diesel Fuel Heater #2 If Equipped
F38	30 Amp Pink		Power Inverter 115V AC– If Equipped
F39	30 Amp Pink		Vehicle System Interface Module #1– If Equipped
F41		10 Amp Red	Active Grill Shutter — If Equipped
F42		20 Amp Yellow	Horn
F44		10 Amp Red	Diagnostic Port
F46		10 Amp Red	Tire Pressure Monitor
F49		10 Amp Red	Instrument Panel Cluster

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Micro Fuse	Description
F50		20 Amp Yellow	Air Suspension Control Module – If Equipped
F51		10 Amp Red	Ignition Node Module / Keyless Ignition
F52		5 Amp Tan	Battery Sensor
F53		20 Amp Yellow	Trailer Tow – Left Turn/Stop Lights
F54		20 Amp Yellow	Adjustable Pedals
F56		15 Amp Blue	Additional Diesel Content – If Equipped
F57		20 Amp Yellow	Transmission
F58		20 Amp Yellow	Spare Fuse
F59		10 Amp Red	SCR Relay – If Equipped
F60		15 Amp Blue	Underhood Lamp
F61		10 Amp Red (1500 LD Diesel & Cummins Diesel)	PM Sensor – If Equipped
F62		10 Amp Red	Air Conditioning Clutch

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Micro Fuse	Description
F63		20 Amp Yellow	Ignition Coils (Gas), Urea Heater (Cummins Diesel)
F64		25 Amp Clear	Fuel Injectors / Powertrain
F65		10 Amp Red	USB interface
F66		10 Amp Red	Sunroof / Passenger Window Switches / Rain Sensor
F67		10 Amp Red	CD / DVD / Bluetooth Hands-free Module – If Equipped
F69		15 Amp Blue	Mod SCR 12V (Cummins Diesel) – If Equipped
F70		30 Amp Green	Fuel Pump Motor
F71		25 Amp Clear	Amplifier
F72		10 Amp Red	Voltage Stabilizer Modules – If Equipped
F73		20 Amp Yellow	Fuel Transfer Pump (HD Only) – If Equipped

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Micro Fuse	Description
F74		20 Amp Yellow (Gas Engine & 1500 LD Diesel) 10 Amp Red (Cum- mins Diesel Engine)	Brake Vacuum Pump Gas/Diesel – If Equipped
F75		10 Amp Red	Coolant Temperature Valve Actuator
F76		10 Amp Red	Antilock Brakes/Electronic Stability Con- trol
F77		10 Amp Red	Drivetrain Control Module/Front Axle Disconnect Module
F78		10 Amp Red	Engine Control Module / Electric Power Steering
F79		15 Amp Blue	Clearance Lights
F80		10 Amp Red	Universal Garage Door Opener / Compass
F81		20 Amp Yellow	Trailer Tow Right Turn/Stop Lights

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Micro Fuse	Description
F82		10 Amp Red	Steering Column Control Module/ Cruise Control
F84		15 Amp Blue	Switch Bank/Instrument Cluster
F85		10 Amp Red	Airbag Module
F86		10 Amp Red	Airbag Module
F87		10 Amp Red	Air Suspension-If Equipped / Trailer Tow / Steering Column Control Module
F88		15 Amp Blue	Instrument Panel Cluster
F90/F91		20 Amp Yellow	Power Outlet (Rear seats) Customer Selectable
F93		20 Amp Yellow	Cigar Lighter
F94		10 Amp Red	Shifter / Transfer Case Module
F95		10 Amp Red	Rear Camera / Park Assist
F96		10 Amp Red	Rear Seat Heater Switch

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Micro Fuse	Description
F97		25 Amp Clear	Rear Heated Seats & Heated Steering Wheel – If Equipped
F98		25 Amp Clear	Front Heated Seats – If Equipped
F99		10 Amp Red	Climate Control
F100		10 Amp Red	Upfitters – If Equipped
F101		15 Amp Blue	Electrochromatic Mirror / Smart High Beams – If Equipped
F104		20 Amp Yellow	Power Outlets (Instrument Panel/Center Console)

**CAUTION!**

- When installing the power distribution center cover, it is important to ensure the cover is properly positioned and fully latched. Failure to do so may allow water to get into the power distribution

**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- center and possibly result in an electrical system failure.
- When replacing a blown fuse, it is important to use only a fuse having the correct amperage rating. The

*(Continued)**(Continued)*

**CAUTION! (Continued)**

use of a fuse with a rating other than indicated may result in a dangerous electrical system overload. If a properly rated fuse continues to blow, it indicates a problem in the circuit that must be corrected.

**VEHICLE STORAGE**

If you are storing your vehicle for more than 21 days, we recommend that you take the following steps to minimize the drain on your vehicle's battery:

- Disconnect the negative cable from battery.
- Any time you store your vehicle or keep it out of service (i.e., vacation) for two weeks or more, run the air conditioning system at idle for about five minutes in the fresh air and high blower setting. This will

ensure adequate system lubrication to minimize the possibility of compressor damage when the system is started again.

**REPLACEMENT BULBS**

All of the inside bulbs are brass or glass-wedge base. Aluminum base bulbs are not approved.

**LIGHT BULBS — Interior**

	Bulb Number
Overhead Console Lamps	TS 212-2
Dome Lamp	7679
For lighted switches, see your authorized dealer for replacement instructions.	

**LIGHT BULBS — Exterior**

	<b>Bulb Number</b>
Quad Headlamp – Low Beam	H11
Quad Headlamp – High Beam	9005
Quad Headlamp – Front Turn Signal Lamp	3157NA
Premium Headlamp – Low Beam	HIR2
Premium Headlamp – High Beam	9005
Premium Headlamp – Front Turn Signal Lamp	LED (See authorized dealer for service)
Horizontal Fog Lamp	9145
Vertical Fog Lamp	9006
Cab Roof Marker Lamps	194NA

	<b>Bulb Number</b>
Center High Mounted Stop Lamp	921
Rear Cargo Lamp	921
Box Off Tail Lamps – Stop/Turn/Tail/License Plate	1157
Box Off Tail Lamps – Back Up	1156

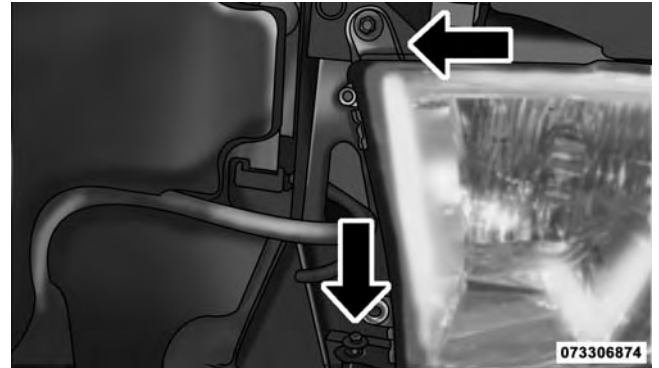
**BULB REPLACEMENT**

**NOTE:** Lens fogging can occur under certain atmospheric conditions. This will usually clear as atmospheric conditions change to allow the condensation to change back into a vapor. Turning the lamps on will usually accelerate the clearing process.



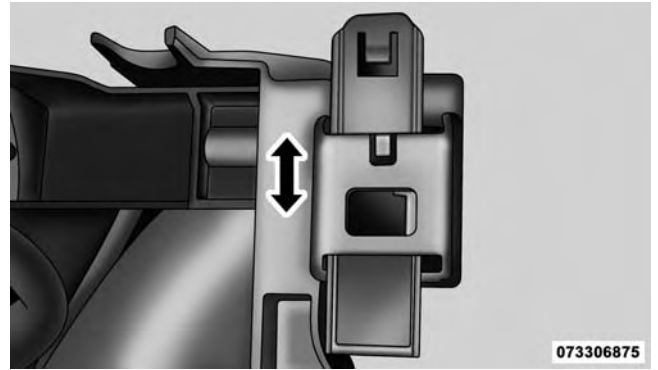
### Base Quad / Premium Bi-Halogen: Low Beam Headlamp, High Beam Headlamp, Front Park And Turn — If Equipped

1. Open the hood.
2. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the six plastic push-in fasteners that secure the upper radiator seal to the grille support and both fender ledges.
4. Remove the two plastic push-in rivets that secure the upper radiator seal to the radiator.
5. Remove the upper radiator seal from the vehicle.
6. Remove the two headlamp assembly attachment screws.



Headlamp Assembly Attachment Screw Locations

7. Reach into the front wheel house ahead of the front wheel, remove the fastener, and lift the cover over the access hole in the front of the wheel house splash shield. Access to the rear of the lamp can be gained through this access hole.
8. Reach through the access hole of the wheel house splash shield and lift the slide lock upward far enough to disengage it from the lock post on the back of the front lamp unit housing.



Slide Lock

9. Remove the headlamp assembly. Grasp the outboard edge of the lamp and pull it straight forward to disengage the ball stud from the plastic grommet.

10. Disconnect the wiring harness connectors from the bulb socket.
11. Replace bulb(s) as necessary.

### CAUTION!

- Do not contaminate the bulb glass by touching it with your fingers or by allowing it to contact other oily surfaces. Shortened bulb life will result.
- Always use the correct bulb size and type for replacement. An incorrect bulb size or type may overheat and cause damage to the lamp, the bulb socket, or the lamp wiring.

**NOTE:** There are access covers over both headlamp bulb access holes in the quad front lamp unit housing (if equipped). These covers **MUST** be reinstalled after the bulb has been replaced.

### Fog Lamps — If Equipped

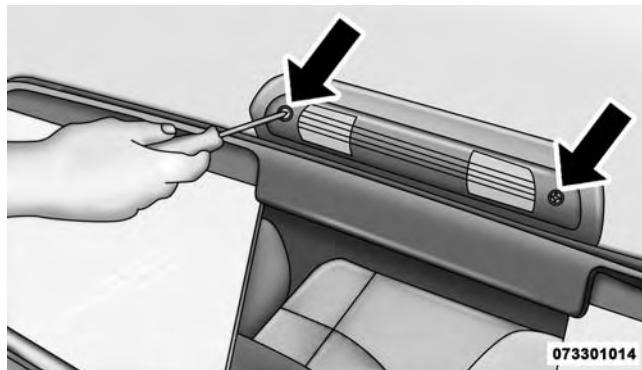
1. Reach under and behind the front bumper to access the back of the front fog lamp housing.
2. Disconnect the fog lamp wiring harness connector from the fog lamp bulb.
3. Rotate the bulb counterclockwise  $\frac{1}{4}$  turn to unlock the bulb from the housing.
4. Pull the bulb straight out from the housing.

**CAUTION!**

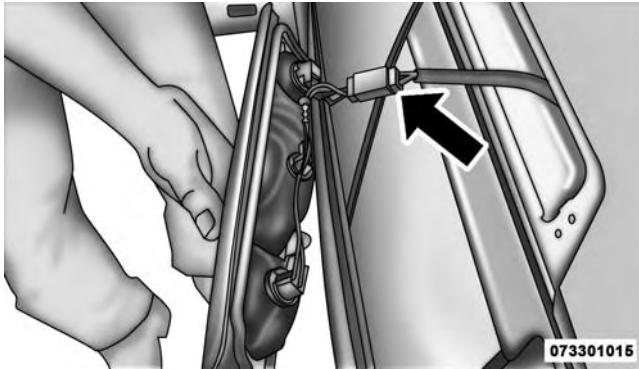
Do not contaminate the bulb glass by touching it with your fingers or by allowing it to contact other oily surfaces. Shortened bulb life will result.

**Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) With Cargo Lamp**

1. Remove the two screws holding the housing/lens to the body as shown.

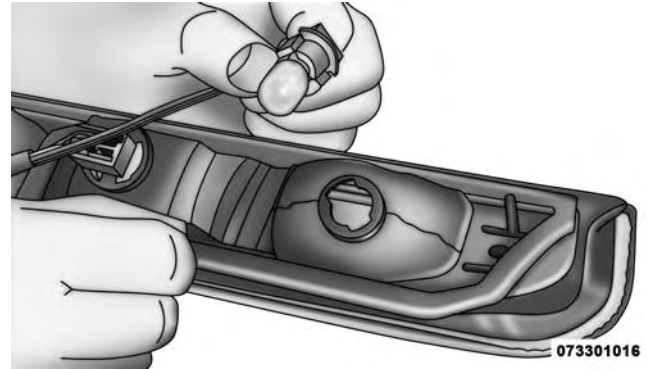
**CHMSL Mounting Screw Locations**

2. Separate the connector holding the housing and wiring harness to the body.



**CHMSL Connector Location**

3. Turn the desired bulb socket  $\frac{1}{4}$  turn and remove the socket and bulb from housing.
4. Pull the desired bulb straight from the socket.



**CHMSL Bulb And Socket**

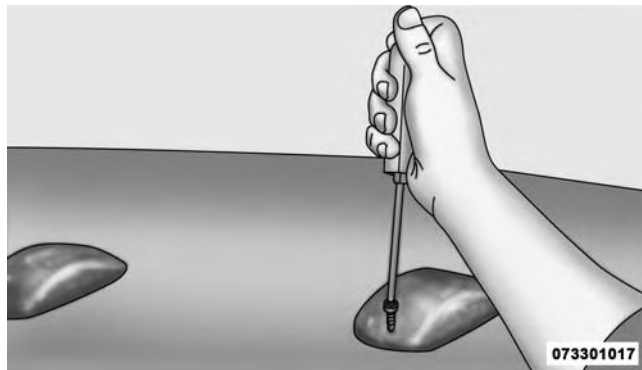
**CAUTION!**

Do not contaminate the bulb glass by touching it with your fingers or by allowing it to contact other oily surfaces. Shortened bulb life will result.

- Outside Bulbs: Cargo Lamps
  - Inside Bulb: Center High-Mounted Stop Lamp
5. Reverse the procedure for installation of bulbs and housing.

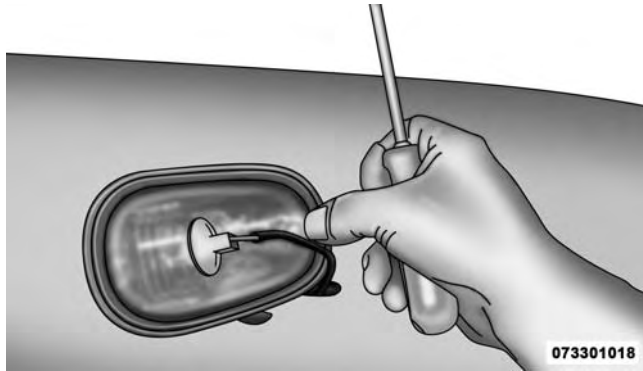
**Cab Top Clearance Lamps — If Equipped**

1. Remove the two screws from the top of the lamp.

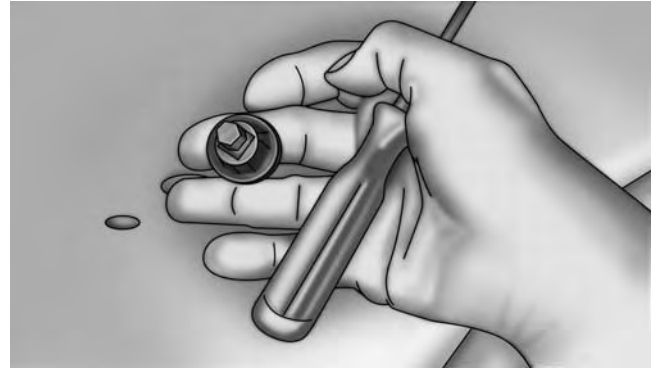


Removing Rear Screw From Clearance Lamp

2. Rotate the bulb socket  $\frac{1}{4}$  turn and pull it from the lamp assembly.
3. Pull the bulb straight from it's socket and replace.



Removing Bulb Socket From Clearance Lamp



Removing The Bulb From The Bulb Socket

## FLUID CAPACITIES

	U.S.	Metric
<b>Fuel (Approximate)</b>		
Standard Rear Tank	52 Gallons	197 Liters
Optional Midship Tank	22 Gallons	83 Liters
<b>Engine Oil With Filter</b>		
5.7L Engine (We recommend you use SAE 5W-20, API Certified)	7 Quarts	6.6 Liters
5.7L Engine (We recommend you use SAE 5W-30, API Certified) for 3500/4500/5500 trucks operating under a gross combined weight rating greater than 14,000 lbs (6,350 kg).	7 Quarts	6.6 Liters
6.4L Engine (We recommend you use SAE 0W-40, Synthetic API Certified)	7 Quarts	6.6 Liters
<b>Cooling System</b>		
5.7L Engine (We recommend you use MOPAR® Antifreeze/Coolant 10 Year/150,000 Mile Formula).	18.3 Quarts	17.3 Liters
6.4L Engine (We recommend you use MOPAR® Antifreeze/Coolant 10 Year/150,000 Mile Formula).	16.6 Quarts	15.7 Liters



## FLUIDS, LUBRICANTS, AND GENUINE PARTS

### Engine

Component	Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part
Engine Coolant	We recommend you use MOPAR® Antifreeze/Coolant 10-Year/150,000 Mile Formula OAT (Organic Additive Technology).
Engine Oil – 5.7L Engine	We recommend you use API Certified SAE 5W-20 Engine Oil, meeting the requirements of Chrysler Material Standard MS-6395 such as MOPAR®, Pennzoil®, and Shell Helix®. Refer to your engine oil filler cap for correct SAE grade.
Engine Oil – 5.7L Engine For trucks operating under a gross combined weight rating greater than 14,000 lbs/(6,350 kg.)	We recommend you use API Certified SAE 5W-30 Engine Oil, meeting the requirements of Chrysler Material Standard MS-6395 such as MOPAR®, Pennzoil®, and Shell Helix®. Refer to your engine oil filler cap for correct SAE grade.

<b>Component</b>	<b>Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part</b>
Engine Oil – 6.4L Engine	For best performance and maximum protection under all types of operating conditions, the manufacturer only recommends full synthetic engine oils that meet the American Petroleum Institute (API) categories of SN. The manufacturer recommends the use of Pennzoil Ultra™ 0W-40 or equivalent MOPAR® engine oil meeting the requirements of Chrysler Material Standard MS-12633 for use in all operating temperatures.
Engine Oil Filter – 5.7L/6.4L Engine	We recommend you use MOPAR® Engine Oil Filters.
Spark Plugs – 5.7L/6.4L Engine	We recommend you use MOPAR® Spark Plugs.
Fuel Selection – 5.7L/6.4L Engine	87 Octane Acceptable - 89 Octane Recommended.

**CAUTION!**

- Mixing of engine coolant (antifreeze) other than specified Organic Additive Technology (OAT) engine coolant (antifreeze), may result in engine damage and may decrease corrosion protection. Organic Additive Technology (OAT) engine coolant is different and should not be mixed with Hybrid Organic Additive Technology (HOAT) engine coolant (antifreeze) or any “globally compatible” coolant (antifreeze). If a non-OAT engine coolant (antifreeze) is introduced into the cooling system in an emergency, the cooling system will

*(Continued)*

**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- need to be drained, flushed, and refilled with fresh OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032), by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
- Do not use water alone or alcohol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) products. Do not use additional rust inhibitors or antirust products, as they may not be compatible with the radiator engine coolant and may plug the radiator.
- This vehicle has not been designed for use with propylene glycol-based engine coolant (antifreeze). Use of propylene glycol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) is not recommended.

## Chassis

Component	Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part
Automatic Transmission (5.7L, and 6.4L Engine with 66RFE Transmission) (For Diesel Engine see Diesel Supplement)	Use only ATF+4® Automatic Transmission Fluid. Failure to use ATF+4® fluid may affect the function or performance of your transmission. We recommend MOPAR® ATF+4® fluid.
Automatic Transmission (6.4L Engine with AS66RC Transmission)	Use only MOPAR® ASRC Automatic Transmission Fluid or equivalent. Failure to use the proper fluid may affect the function or performance of your transmission.
Transfer Case	We recommend you use MOPAR® BW44-44 Transfer Case Fluid.
Front and Rear Axle Fluid (4500/5500)	We recommend you use GL-5 SAE 75W-90 Synthetic (MS-9763).
Brake Master Cylinder	We recommend you use MOPAR® DOT 3 and SAE J1703. If DOT 3 brake fluid is not available, then DOT 4 is acceptable.
Power Steering Reservoir	We recommend you use MOPAR® Power Steering Fluid +4, MOPAR® ATF+4® Automatic Transmission Fluid.

---

# MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES

## CONTENTS

---

■ MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE . . . . .	.564	□ Maintenance Chart . . . . .	.565
----------------------------------	------	-------------------------------	------

## MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

Your vehicle is equipped with an automatic oil change indicator system. The oil change indicator system will remind you that it is time to take your vehicle in for scheduled maintenance.

Based on engine operation conditions, the oil change indicator message will illuminate. This means that service is required for your vehicle. Operating conditions such as frequent short-trips, trailer tow, extremely hot or cold ambient temperatures, and E85 fuel usage will influence when the “Oil Change Required” message is displayed. Severe Operating Conditions can cause the change oil message to illuminate as early as 3,500 miles (5,600 km) since last reset. Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible, within the next 500 miles (805 km).

Your authorized dealer will reset the oil change indicator message after completing the scheduled oil change. If a scheduled oil change is performed by someone other

than your authorized dealer, the message can be reset by referring to the steps described under “Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID)” in “Understanding Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

### Gasoline Engines:

Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 8,000 miles (13,000 km), twelve months or 350 hours of engine run time, whichever comes first. The 350 hours of engine run or idle time is generally only a concern for fleet customers.

### Severe Duty:

Change Engine Oil at 4,000 miles (6,500 km) if the vehicle is operated in a dusty and off road environment or is operated predominately at idle or very low engine RPM's. This type of vehicle use is considered Severe Duty

**Once A Month Or Before A Long Trip:**

- Check engine oil level
- Check windshield washer fluid level
- Check the tire inflation pressures and look for unusual wear or damage
- Check the fluid levels of the coolant reservoir, brake master cylinder, power steering and automatic transmission and fill as needed.
- Check function of all interior and exterior lights

**Maintenance Chart**

**Required Maintenance**

Refer to the Maintenance Schedules on the following pages for required maintenance.

<b>At Every Oil Change Interval As Indicated By Oil Change Indicator System:</b>
• Change oil and filter.
• Rotate the tires. <b>Rotate at the first sign of irregular wear, even if it occurs before the oil indicator system turns on.</b>
• Inspect battery and clean and tighten terminals as required.
• Inspect automatic transmission fluid if equipped with dipstick.
• Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, hoses and park brake.
• Inspect engine cooling system protection and hoses.
• Inspect exhaust system.
• Inspect engine air cleaner if using in dusty or off-road conditions.
• Lube the front drive shaft fitting.





Mileage or time passed (whichever comes first)	20,000	30,000	40,000	50,000	60,000	70,000	80,000	90,000	100,000	110,000	120,000	130,000	140,000	150,000
Or Years:	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
Or Kilometers:	32,000	48,000	64,000	80,000	96,000	112,000	128,000	144,000	160,000	176,000	192,000	208,000	224,000	240,000
<b>Additional Maintenance</b>														
Replace engine air filter.		X			X			X			X			X
Replace spark plugs. **									X					
Flush and replace the engine coolant at 10 years or 150,000 miles (240,000 km) whichever comes first.									X					X
Change the automatic transmission fluid (AS66RC Transmission Only).		X						X						X
Change the automatic transmission fluid and sump filter (AS66RC Transmission Only).					X						X			

## 568 MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES

Mileage or time passed (whichever comes first)	20,000	30,000	40,000	50,000	60,000	70,000	80,000	90,000	100,000	110,000	120,000	130,000	140,000	150,000
Or Years:	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
Or Kilometers:	32,000	48,000	64,000	80,000	96,000	112,000	128,000	144,000	160,000	176,000	192,000	208,000	224,000	240,000
Change the automatic transmission fluid and filter(s) (66RFE Transmission Only), if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, or frequent trailer towing.					X						X			
Change the automatic transmission fluid and filter(s) (66RFE transmission).											X			
Inspect the transfer case fluid, change for any of the following: police, taxi, fleet, or frequent trailer towing.		X			X			X			X			X
Change the transfer case fluid.											X			

Mileage or time passed (whichever comes first)	20,000	30,000	40,000	50,000	60,000	70,000	80,000	90,000	100,000	110,000	120,000	130,000	140,000	150,000
Or Years:	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
Or Kilometers:	32,000	48,000	64,000	80,000	96,000	112,000	128,000	144,000	160,000	176,000	192,000	208,000	224,000	240,000
Inspect and replace PCV valve if necessary.									X					

\*\* The spark plug change interval is mileage based only, yearly intervals do not apply.

### WARNING!

- You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Do only service work for which you have the knowledge and the right equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a

*(Continued)*

### WARNING! *(Continued)*

- service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.
- Failure to properly inspect and maintain your vehicle could result in a component malfunction and effect vehicle handling and performance. This could cause an accident.

*(Continued)*



# IF YOU NEED CONSUMER ASSISTANCE

## CONTENTS

---

■ SUGGESTIONS FOR OBTAINING SERVICE FOR YOUR VEHICLE . . . . .	.573	□ Customer Assistance For The Hearing Or Speech Impaired (TDD/TTY). . . . .	.575
□ Prepare For The Appointment. . . . .	.573	□ Service Contract . . . . .	.575
□ Prepare A List . . . . .	.573	■ WARRANTY INFORMATION . . . . .	.576
□ Be Reasonable With Requests . . . . .	.573	■ MOPAR® PARTS . . . . .	.577
■ IF YOU NEED ASSISTANCE . . . . .	.573	■ REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS . . . . .	.577
□ FCA USA LLC Customer Center . . . . .	.574	□ In The 50 United States And Washington, D.C. .577	
□ FCA Canada Inc. Customer Center . . . . .	.574	□ In Canada. . . . .	.577
□ In Mexico Contact . . . . .	.575	■ PUBLICATION ORDER FORMS . . . . .	.578

572 IF YOU NEED CONSUMER ASSISTANCE

■ DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM  
TIRE QUALITY GRADES . . . . .579

□ Treadwear. . . . .579

□ Traction Grades . . . . .580

□ Temperature Grades. . . . .580

## **SUGGESTIONS FOR OBTAINING SERVICE FOR YOUR VEHICLE**

### **Prepare For The Appointment**

If you are having warranty work done, be sure to have the right papers with you. Take your warranty folder. All work to be performed may not be covered by the warranty. Discuss additional charges with the service manager. Keep a maintenance log of your vehicle's service history. This can often provide a clue to the current problem.

### **Prepare A List**

Make a written list of your vehicle's problems or the specific work you want done. If you've had an accident or work done that is not on your maintenance log, let the service advisor know.

### **Be Reasonable With Requests**

If you list a number of items and you must have your vehicle by the end of the day, discuss the situation with the service advisor and list the items in order of priority. At many authorized dealers, you may obtain a rental vehicle at a minimal daily charge. If you need a rental, it is advisable to make these arrangements when you call for an appointment.

### **IF YOU NEED ASSISTANCE**

The manufacturer and its authorized dealer are vitally interested in your satisfaction. We want you to be happy with our products and services.

Warranty service must be done by an authorized dealer. We strongly recommend that you take the vehicle to an authorized dealer. They know your vehicle the best, and are most concerned that you get prompt and high quality service. The manufacturer's authorized dealer have the facilities, factory-trained technicians, special tools, and the latest information to ensure the vehicle is fixed correctly and in a timely manner.

This is why you should always talk to an authorized dealer service manager first. Most matters can be resolved with this process.

- If for some reason you are still not satisfied, talk to the general manager or owner of the authorized dealer. They want to know if you need assistance.
- If an authorized dealer is unable to resolve the concern, you may contact the manufacturer's customer center.

Any communication to the manufacturer's customer center should include the following information:

- Owner's name and address
- Owner's telephone number (home and office)
- Authorized dealer name
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Vehicle delivery date and mileage

**FCA USA LLC Customer Center**

P.O. Box 21-8004

Auburn Hills, MI 48321-8004

Phone: (866) 726-4636

**FCA Canada Inc. Customer Center**

P.O. Box 1621

Windsor, Ontario N9A 4H6

Phone: (800) 465-2001 English / (800) 387-9983 French



**In Mexico Contact**

Av. Prolongacion Paseo de la Reforma, 1240

Sante Fe C.P. 05109

Mexico, D. F.

In Mexico City: 5081-7568

Outside Mexico City: 1-800-505-1300

**Customer Assistance For The Hearing Or Speech Impaired (TDD/TTY)**

To assist customers who have hearing difficulties, the manufacturer has installed special TDD (Telecommunication Devices for the Deaf) equipment at its customer center. Any hearing or speech impaired customer, who has access to a TDD or a conventional teletypewriter (TTY) in the United States, can communicate with the manufacturer by dialing 1-800-380-CHRY.

Canadian residents with hearing difficulties that require assistance can use the special needs relay service offered by Bell Canada. For TTY teletypewriter users, dial 711 and for Voice callers, dial 1-800-855-0511 to connect with a Bell Relay Service operator.

**Service Contract**

You may have purchased a service contract for a vehicle to help protect you from the high cost of unexpected repairs after the manufacturer's New Vehicle Limited Warranty expires. The manufacturer stands behind only the manufacturer's service contracts. If you purchased a manufacturer's service contract, you will receive Plan Provisions and an Owner Identification Card in the mail within three weeks of the vehicle delivery date. If you have any questions about the service contract, call the manufacturer's Service Contract National Customer Hotline at 1-800-521-9922 (Canadian residents, call (800) 465-2001 English / (800) 387-9983 French).

The manufacturer will not stand behind any service contract that is not the manufacturer's service contract. It is not responsible for any service contract other than the manufacturer's service contract. If you purchased a service contract that is not a manufacturer's service contract, and you require service after the manufacturer's New Vehicle Limited Warranty expires, please refer to the contract documents, and contact the person listed in those documents.

We appreciate that you have made a major investment when you purchased the vehicle. An authorized dealer has also made a major investment in facilities, tools, and training to assure that you are absolutely delighted with the ownership experience. You will be pleased with their sincere efforts to resolve any warranty issues or related concerns.

**WARNING!**

**Engine exhaust (internal combustion engines only), some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain, or emit, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects, or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain, or emit, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects, or other reproductive harm.**

**WARRANTY INFORMATION**

See the Warranty Information Booklet, located on the DVD, for the terms and provisions of FCA US LLC warranties applicable to this vehicle and market.

## **MOPAR® PARTS**

MOPAR® fluids, lubricants, parts, and accessories are available from an authorized dealer. They are recommended for your vehicle in order to help keep the vehicle operating at its best.

## **REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS**

### **In The 50 United States And Washington, D.C.**

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash or cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying the manufacturer.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy

campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your authorized dealer, and the manufacturer.

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153), or go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., West Building, Washington, D.C. 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

### **In Canada**

If you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, you should contact the Customer Service Department immediately. Canadian customers who wish to report a safety defect to the Canadian government should contact Transport Canada, Motor Vehicle Defect Investigations and Recalls at 1-800-333-0510 or go to <http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety/>

## PUBLICATION ORDER FORMS

To order the following manuals, you may use either the website or the phone numbers listed below. Visa, Mastercard, American Express, and Discover orders are accepted. If you prefer mailing your payment, please call for an order form.

**NOTE:** A street address is required when ordering manuals (no P.O. Boxes).

### Service Manuals

These comprehensive Service Manuals provide the information that students and professional technicians need in diagnosing/troubleshooting, problem solving, maintaining, servicing, and repairing FCA US LLC vehicles. A complete working knowledge of the vehicle, system, and/or components is written in straightforward language with illustrations, diagrams, and charts.

### Diagnostic Procedure Manuals

Diagnostic Procedure Manuals are filled with diagrams, charts and detailed illustrations. These practical manuals make it easy for students and technicians to find and fix problems on computer-controlled vehicle systems and features. They show exactly how to find and correct problems the first time, using step-by-step troubleshooting and drivability procedures, proven diagnostic tests and a complete list of all tools and equipment.

### Owner's Manuals

These Owner's Manuals have been prepared with the assistance of service and engineering specialists to acquaint you with specific FCA US LLC vehicles. Included are starting, operating, emergency and maintenance procedures as well as specifications, capabilities and safety tips.

Call toll free at:

- 1-800-890-4038 (U.S.)
- 1-800-387-1143 (Canada)

Or

Visit us on the Worldwide Web at:

- [www.techauthority.com](http://www.techauthority.com)

## **DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADES**

The following tire grading categories were established by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. The specific grade rating assigned by the tire's manufacturer in each category is shown on the sidewall of the tires on your vehicle.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal safety requirements in addition to these grades.

### **Treadwear**

The Treadwear grade is a comparative rating, based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

## Traction Grades

The Traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. These grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement, as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

### WARNING!

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

## Temperature Grades

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat, when tested under

controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance, which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel, than the minimum required by law.

### WARNING!

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

---

# INDEX

- Adding Engine Coolant (Antifreeze) . . . . . 518
- Adding Fuel . . . . . 429
- Additives, Fuel . . . . . 428
- Adjustable Pedals . . . . . 167
- Air Bag . . . . . 65, 66
- Advance Front Air Bag . . . . . 66
- Air Bag Operation . . . . . 68
- Air Bag Warning Light . . . . . 71
- Enhanced Accident Response . . . . . 71
- Event Data Recorder (EDR) . . . . . 74
- Front Air Bag . . . . . 65, 66
- If A Deployment Occurs . . . . . 69
- Knee Impact Bolsters . . . . . 69
- Maintaining Your Air Bag System . . . . . 73
- Air Bag Deployment . . . . . 65
- Air Bag Light . . . . . 71, 110, 203
- Air Bag Maintenance . . . . . 73
- Air Cleaner, Engine (Engine Air Cleaner Filter) . . . . 501
- Air Conditioner Maintenance . . . . . 507
- Air Conditioning . . . . . 290, 295
- Air Conditioning Controls . . . . . 290, 295
- Air Conditioning, Operating Tips . . . . . 309, 312
- Air Conditioning Refrigerant . . . . . 507, 508
- Air Conditioning System . . . . . 290, 295, 308, 507
- Air Pressure, Tires . . . . . 399, 411
- Alarm Light . . . . . 203
- Alarm, Panic . . . . . 28
- Alarm (Security Alarm) . . . . . 21
- Alarm System (Security Alarm) . . . . . 21
- Alterations/Modifications, Vehicle . . . . . 7
- Antifreeze (Engine Coolant) . . . . . 517
- Capacities . . . . . 558
- Disposal . . . . . 520
- Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) . . . . . 376
- Anti-Lock Warning Light . . . . . 203, 377
- Appearance Care . . . . . 531
- Ashtray . . . . . 182
- Auto Down Power Windows . . . . . 45



- Automatic Door Locks . . . . .38
- Automatic Headlights . . . . .151
- Automatic High Beams . . . . .154
- Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) . . . . .308
- Automatic Transmission . . . . .527
  - Adding Fluid . . . . .529
  - Fluid And Filter Changes . . . . .531
  - Fluid Level Check . . . . .528
  - Fluid Type . . . . .527, 562
  - Shifting . . . . .341
  - Special Additives . . . . .528
- Axle Fluid. . . . .525, 526, 562
- Axle Lubrication . . . . .525, 526
  
- Battery. . . . .506
  - Keyless Transmitter Replacement (RKE) . . . . .28
- Belts, Seat. . . . .109
- Body Builders Guide . . . . .6
- Body Mechanism Lubrication. . . . .509
  
- B-Pillar Location . . . . .393
- Brake Control System, Electronic . . . . .376
- Brake Fluid . . . . .524, 562
- Brake System . . . . .375, 523
  - Anti-Lock (ABS) . . . . .376
  - Fluid Check . . . . .524
  - Master Cylinder . . . . .524
  - Parking . . . . .372
  - Warning Light . . . . .203
- Brake/Transmission Interlock. . . . .341
- Bulb Replacement. . . . .550
- Bulbs, Light . . . . .111, 549
  
- Cab Top Clearance Lights . . . . .556
- Capacities, Antifreeze (Engine Coolant). . . . .558
- Capacities, Fluid . . . . .558
- Caps, Filler
  - Oil (Engine) . . . . .499, 500
  - Power Steering . . . . .371

- Radiator (Coolant Pressure) . . . . . 519
- Carbon Monoxide Warning . . . . . 108, 429
- Cargo Light . . . . . 160
- Car Washes . . . . . 532
- Cellular Phone . . . . . 287
- Center High Mounted Stop Light . . . . . 554
- Center Seat Storage Compartment . . . . . 189
- Certification Label . . . . . 431
- Chart, Tire Sizing . . . . . 388
- Check Engine Light (Malfunction Indicator Light) . . . . . 203, 494
- Checking Your Vehicle For Safety . . . . . 108
- Checks, Safety . . . . . 108
- Child Restraint . . . . . 75
- Child Restraints
  - Booster Seats . . . . . 80
  - Child Restraints . . . . . 75
  - Child Seat Installation . . . . . 93, 95
  - How To Stow An Unused ALR Seat Belt . . . . . 91
  - Infants And Child Restraints . . . . . 78
  - Install A LATCH-Compatible Child Restraint . . . . . 90
  - Installing Child Restraints Using The Vehicle Seat Belt . . . . . 92
  - Locating The LATCH Anchorages . . . . . 87
  - Lower Anchors And Tethers For Children . . . . . 82
  - Older Children And Child Restraints . . . . . 78
  - Seating Positions . . . . . 81
- Cigar Lighter . . . . . 182
- Clean Air Gasoline . . . . . 426
- Cleaning
  - Wheels . . . . . 533
- Climate Control . . . . . 290, 300
  - Automatic . . . . . 300
- Cold Weather Operation . . . . . 337
- Compact Disc (CD) Maintenance . . . . . 286
- Compact Spare Tire . . . . . 405
- Console, Overhead . . . . . 175
- Contract, Service . . . . . 575

- Coolant Pressure Cap (Radiator Cap) . . . . . 519
- Cooling System. . . . . 516
  - Adding Coolant (Antifreeze) . . . . . 518
  - Coolant Capacity . . . . . 558
  - Coolant Level . . . . . 516, 520, 522
  - Disposal Of Used Coolant . . . . . 520
  - Drain, Flush, And Refill . . . . . 517
  - Inspection . . . . . 520, 522
  - Points To Remember . . . . . 522
  - Pressure Cap . . . . . 519
  - Radiator Cap . . . . . 519
  - Selection Of Coolant (Antifreeze) . . . . . 517, 559
- Corrosion Protection . . . . . 531
- Cupholders . . . . . 184
- Customer Assistance . . . . . 573
  
- Data Recorder, Event . . . . . 74
- Daytime Running Lights . . . . . 153
- Dealer Service. . . . . 496
  
- Defroster, Rear Window. . . . . 194
- Defroster, Windshield . . . . . 110, 293
- Delay (Intermittent) Wipers . . . . . 163
- Differential, Limited-Slip . . . . . 366
- Dipsticks
  - Automatic Transmission . . . . . 528
  - Power Steering . . . . . 371
- Disabled Vehicle Towing . . . . . 485
- Disposal
  - Antifreeze (Engine Coolant) . . . . . 520
- Door Locks
  - Door Locks . . . . . 35
  - Key Fob . . . . . 35
  - Remote . . . . . 35
  - Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) . . . . . 35
- Door Locks, Automatic . . . . . 38
- Driving
  - Through Flowing, Rising, Or Shallow Standing Water . . . . . 368

- Dual Rear Wheels . . . . . 414, 466, 475
- Electrical Power Outlets . . . . . 177
- Electric Rear Window Defrost . . . . . 194
- Electronically Shifted Transfer Case . . . . . 360
- Electronic Brake Control System . . . . . 376
- Anti-Lock Brake System . . . . . 376
- Traction Control System . . . . . 377
- Electronic Range Select (ERS) . . . . . 349
- Electronic Speed Control (Cruise Control) . . . . . 170
- Electronic Stability Control (ESC) . . . . . 380
- Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) . . . . . 215
- Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) . . . . . 215
- Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) Setup  
    Menu . . . . . 215
- EVIC Messages . . . . . 215
- Selectable Menu Items . . . . . 228
- Emergency Brake . . . . . 372
- Emergency, In Case Of
- Freeing Vehicle When Stuck . . . . . 481
- Hazard Warning Flasher . . . . . 464
- Jump Starting . . . . . 476
- Tow Hooks . . . . . 483
- Emission Control System Maintenance . . . . . 494
- Engine . . . . . 491, 492
- Air Cleaner . . . . . 501
- Break-In Recommendations . . . . . 106, 107
- Compartment Identification . . . . . 491, 492
- Coolant (Antifreeze) . . . . . 559
- Exhaust Gas Caution . . . . . 108, 429
- Flooded, Starting . . . . . 337
- Fuel Requirements . . . . . 425
- Jump Starting . . . . . 476
- Oil . . . . . 497, 559
- Oil Filler Cap . . . . . 499, 500
- Oil Filter . . . . . 500
- Oil Selection . . . . . 498

Oil Synthetic . . . . .	.500	Flat Tire Stowage . . . . .	.476
Overheating . . . . .	.464	Flooded Engine Starting . . . . .	.337
Engine Oil Viscosity . . . . .	.500	Fluid, Brake . . . . .	.562
Enhanced Accident Response Feature . . . . .	.71	Fluid Capacities . . . . .	.558
Entry System, Illuminated . . . . .	.23	Fluid Leaks . . . . .	.112
Ethanol . . . . .	.426	Fluid Level Checks	
Event Data Recorder . . . . .	.74	Automatic Transmission . . . . .	.528
Exhaust Gas Caution . . . . .	.108, 429	Brake . . . . .	.524
Exhaust System . . . . .	.108, 513	Power Steering . . . . .	.371
Exterior Lighting. . . . .	.151	Fluids, Lubricants And Genuine Parts. . . . .	.559
Exterior Lights . . . . .	.111	Fog Lights. . . . .	.156, 203, 553
Filters		Four-Way Hazard Flasher . . . . .	.464
Air Cleaner . . . . .	.501	Four Wheel Drive . . . . .	.356
Engine Fuel . . . . .	.559	Freeing A Stuck Vehicle . . . . .	.481
Engine Oil . . . . .	.500, 559	Front Axle (Differential). . . . .	.525
Engine Oil Disposal . . . . .	.500	Fuel. . . . .	.425
Flashers		Adding . . . . .	.429
Turn Signal . . . . .	.111, 161, 203	Additives . . . . .	.428
		Clean Air . . . . .	.426

Ethanol . . . . .	.426	Gear Select Lever Override . . . . .	.484
Filler Cap (Gas Cap) . . . . .	.431	General Information . . . . .	.425
Filter . . . . .	.559	Glass Cleaning . . . . .	.537
Gasoline . . . . .	.425	Grocery Bag Retainer. . . . .	.193
Materials Added . . . . .	.428	Gross Axle Weight Rating . . . . .	.435
Methanol . . . . .	.426	Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. . . . .	.434
Octane Rating . . . . .	.425	Guide, Body Builders . . . . .	.6
Requirements . . . . .	.425	GVWR. . . . .	.432
Tank Capacity . . . . .	.558		
Fuses . . . . .	.538	Hazard	
		Driving Through Flowing, Rising, Or Shallow Stand-	
Gas Cap (Fuel Filler Cap) . . . . .	.431, 493	ing Water . . . . .	.368
Gasoline, Clean Air . . . . .	.426	Hazard Warning Flasher . . . . .	.464
Gasoline (Fuel) . . . . .	.425	Headlights . . . . .	.551
Gasoline, Reformulated . . . . .	.426	Automatic . . . . .	.151
Gauges		Cleaning . . . . .	.537
Speedometer . . . . .	.203	High Beam . . . . .	.162
Tachometer . . . . .	.203	High Beam/Low Beam Select Switch . . . . .	.162
Gear Ranges. . . . .	.342	Passing . . . . .	.162

Switch . . . . .	.151	Instrument Cluster . . . . .	.203
Head Restraints . . . . .	.140	Instrument Panel And Controls . . . . .	.200
Heated Mirrors . . . . .	.127, 194	Instrument Panel Lens Cleaning . . . . .	.537
Heater. . . . .	.290, 295	Integrated Trailer Brake Controls . . . . .	.444
High Beam/Low Beam Select (Dimmer) Switch . . .	.162	Interior Appearance Care. . . . .	.535
Hitches		Interior Lights . . . . .	.157
Trailer Towing . . . . .	.439	Intermittent Wipers (Delay Wipers). . . . .	.163
Hoisting. . . . .	.476	Introduction . . . . .	.4
Hood Release . . . . .	.148	Inverter Outlet (115V) . . . . .	.183
Hub Caps. . . . .	.474		
		Jack Location . . . . .	.468
Ignition . . . . .	.16	Jump Starting. . . . .	.476
Key . . . . .	.11, 16		
Ignition Key Removal . . . . .	.16	Key Fob	
Illuminated Entry . . . . .	.23	Programming Additional Key Fobs . . . . .	.20
Immobilizer (Sentry Key) . . . . .	.18	Programming Additional Transmitters . . . . .	.20
Inflation Pressure Tires . . . . .	.411	Key-In Reminder . . . . .	.18
Information Center, Vehicle . . . . .	.215, 240	Keyless Enter-N-Go . . . . .	.40
Inside Rearview Mirror. . . . .	.117, 118, 124	Keyless Enter-N-Go™ . . . . .	.40

- Lock The Vehicle's Doors . . . . . 275
- Passive Entry . . . . . 40
- Passive Entry Programming . . . . . 40, 275
- Unlock Liftgate . . . . . 275
- Keyless Entry System . . . . . 24
- Key, Replacement . . . . . 19
- Keys . . . . . 11
- Key, Sentry (Immobilizer) . . . . . 18
  
- Lane Change And Turn Signals . . . . . 161
- Lane Change Assist . . . . . 162
- Lap/Shoulder Belts . . . . . 51
- Latches . . . . . 111
- Lead Free Gasoline . . . . . 425
- Leaks, Fluid . . . . . 112
- Life Of Tires . . . . . 408
- Light Bulbs . . . . . 111
- Lights . . . . . 111, 150
  - Air Bag . . . . . 71, 110, 203
  - Alarm . . . . . 203
  - Anti-Lock . . . . . 203
  - Anti-Lock Warning . . . . . 377
  - Automatic Headlights . . . . . 151
  - Brake Assist Warning . . . . . 385
  - Brake Warning . . . . . 203
  - Bulb Replacement . . . . . 549, 550
  - Cap Top Clearance . . . . . 556
  - Cargo . . . . . 160
  - Center Mounted Stop . . . . . 554
  - Check Engine (Malfunction Indicator) . . . . . 203
  - Courtesy/Reading . . . . . 158, 160, 175
  - Daytime Running . . . . . 153
  - Electronic Stability Program (ESP) Indicator . . . . . 385
  - Exterior . . . . . 111
  - Fog . . . . . 156, 203, 553
  - Four-Wheel Drive Indicator . . . . . 360
  - Hazard Warning Flasher . . . . . 464
  - Headlights . . . . . 151



High Beam . . . . .	.162, 203	Locks . . . . .	.35
High Beam Indicator . . . . .	.203	Automatic Door . . . . .	.38
High Beam/Low Beam Select . . . . .	.162	Child Protection . . . . .	.39
Illuminated Entry . . . . .	.23	Door . . . . .	.35
Instrument Cluster . . . . .	.203	Power Door . . . . .	.37
Interior . . . . .	.157, 158, 160, 175	Low Tire Pressure System . . . . .	.415
Oil Pressure . . . . .	.203	Lubrication, Body . . . . .	.509
Passing . . . . .	.162	Lug Nuts . . . . .	.465, 466, 473, 475
Seat Belt Reminder . . . . .	.203	Maintenance Free Battery . . . . .	.506
Security Alarm . . . . .	.203	Maintenance Procedures . . . . .	.496
Service . . . . .	.549, 550	Maintenance Schedule . . . . .	.564
Tire Pressure Monitoring (TPMS) . . . . .	.203, 415	Malfunction Indicator Light (Check Engine) . . . . .	.494
Traction Control . . . . .	.385	Manual, Service . . . . .	.578
Transfer Case . . . . .	.360	Manual Transmission	
Turn Signal . . . . .	.111, 161, 551	Fluid Level Check . . . . .	.527
Warning (Instrument Cluster Description) . . . . .	.203	Memory Seat . . . . .	.144
Limited-Slip Differential . . . . .	.366, 526	Methanol . . . . .	.426
Loading Vehicle . . . . .	.431	Mirrors . . . . .	.117
Tires . . . . .	.393		

Electric Powered . . . . .	.126	Dipstick . . . . .	.497
Heated . . . . .	.127	Disposal . . . . .	.500
Memory . . . . .	.144	Filter . . . . .	.500, 559
Outside . . . . .	.124	Filter Disposal . . . . .	.500
Rearview . . . . .	.117, 118, 124	Identification Logo . . . . .	.499
Trailer Towing . . . . .	.129	Recommendation . . . . .	.498
Modifications/Alterations, Vehicle . . . . .	.7	Synthetic . . . . .	.500
Monitor, Tire Pressure System . . . . .	.415	Viscosity . . . . .	.499, 500
MOPAR® Parts . . . . .	.495, 577	Oil Filter, Change . . . . .	.500
MTBE/ETBE . . . . .	.426	Onboard Diagnostic System . . . . .	.493
Multi-Function Control Lever . . . . .	.161	Operating Precautions . . . . .	.493
New Vehicle Break-In Period . . . . .	.106, 107	Operator Manual (Owner's Manual) . . . . .	.4
Occupant Restraints . . . . .	.48	Outside Rearview Mirrors . . . . .	.124
Octane Rating, Gasoline (Fuel) . . . . .	.425	Overdrive. . . . .	.350
Oil, Engine . . . . .	.497, 559	Overdrive OFF Switch. . . . .	.350
Capacity . . . . .	.558	Overhead Console. . . . .	.175
Change Interval . . . . .	.498	Overheating, Engine . . . . .	.464
		Owner's Manual (Operator Manual) . . . . .	.4, 578

Paint Care . . . . .	.531	Take-Off Operation . . . . .	.353
Panic Alarm . . . . .	.28	Windows . . . . .	.44
Parking Brake . . . . .	.372	Power Steering Fluid . . . . .	.562
Passing Light . . . . .	.162	Pregnant Women And Seat Belts . . . . .	.61
Passive Entry . . . . .	.40	Programmable Electronic Features . . . . .	.233, 259
Pedals, Adjustable . . . . .	.167	Programming Transmitters (Remote Keyless Entry) . . . . .	.24
Personal Settings . . . . .	.233, 259	PTO (Power Take-Off) . . . . .	.353
Pets . . . . .	.106		
Pets, Transporting . . . . .	.106	Radial Ply Tires . . . . .	.402
Placard, Tire And Loading Information . . . . .	.394	Radiator Cap (Coolant Pressure Cap) . . . . .	.516, 519
Power		Radio Operation . . . . .	.287
Distribution Center (Fuses) . . . . .	.539	Radio (Sound Systems) . . . . .	.284
Door Locks . . . . .	.37	Rain Sensitive Wiper System . . . . .	.165
Mirrors . . . . .	.126	Rear Axle (Differential) . . . . .	.525, 526
Outlet (Auxiliary Electrical Outlet) . . . . .	.177, 183	Rear Window Features . . . . .	.194
Seats . . . . .	.130	Rear Window, Sliding . . . . .	.195
Sliding Rear Window . . . . .	.195	Reclining Rear Seats . . . . .	.139
Steering . . . . .	.370, 371	Recorder, Event Data . . . . .	.74
Take-Off Adapter . . . . .	.353	Recreational Towing . . . . .	.455

Shifting Into Transfer Case Neutral (N) . . . . .	.458	Reporting Safety Defects . . . . .	.577
Shifting Out Of Transfer Case Neutral (N) . . . . .	.460	Restraint, Head . . . . .	.140
Reformulated Gasoline . . . . .	.426	Restraints, Child . . . . .	.75
Refrigerant . . . . .	.508	Restraints, Occupant . . . . .	.48
Reminder, Seat Belt . . . . .	.50	Rotation, Tires . . . . .	.413
Remote Control		Safety Checks Inside Vehicle . . . . .	.109
Starting System . . . . .	.32	Safety Checks Outside Vehicle . . . . .	.111
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) . . . . .	.24	Safety Defects, Reporting . . . . .	.577
FCC General Information . . . . .	.31	Safety, Exhaust Gas . . . . .	.108
Programming Additional Key Fobs . . . . .	.20	Safety Information, Tire . . . . .	.387
Programming Additional Transmitters . . . . .	.20	Safety Tips . . . . .	.108
Remote Sound System (Radio) Controls . . . . .	.285	Schedule, Maintenance . . . . .	.564
Remote Starting		Seat Belt	
Uconnect® Customer Programmable Features . . . . .	.277	Lap/Shoulder Belt Operation . . . . .	.54
Uconnect® Settings . . . . .	.277	Lap/Shoulder Belts . . . . .	.51
Remote Starting System . . . . .	.32	Lap/Shoulder Belt Untwisting . . . . .	.59
Replacement Keys . . . . .	.19	Pregnant Women . . . . .	.61
Replacement Parts . . . . .	.495	Seat Belt Extender . . . . .	.60
Replacement Tires . . . . .	.409		

Seat Belt Reminder . . . . .	.50	Reclining Rear . . . . .	.139
Seat Belt System . . . . .	.48	Security Alarm . . . . .	.21
Seat Belt Maintenance . . . . .	.538	Selection Of Coolant (Antifreeze) . . . . .	.559
Seat Belt Reminder . . . . .	.50	SENTRY KEY®	
Seat Belts . . . . .	.50, 109	FCC General Information . . . . .	.20
Child Restraint . . . . .	.75	Key Programming . . . . .	.20
Extender . . . . .	.60	Sentry Key (Immobilizer) . . . . .	.18
Front Seat . . . . .	.50, 51, 54	Sentry Key Replacement . . . . .	.19
Inspection . . . . .	.109	Service Assistance . . . . .	.573
Operating Instructions . . . . .	.54	Service Contract . . . . .	.575
Pregnant Women . . . . .	.61	Service Manuals . . . . .	.578
Rear Seat . . . . .	.51	Settings, Personal . . . . .	.233, 259
Reminder . . . . .	.203	Shifting . . . . .	.339
Untwisting Procedure . . . . .	.59	Automatic Transmission . . . . .	.341
Seats . . . . .	.130, 139	Transfer Case . . . . .	.359
Adjustment . . . . .	.130	Transfer Case, Shifting Into Transfer Case Neutral (N) . . . . .	.458
Easy Entry . . . . .	.147	Transfer Case, Shifting Out Of Transfer Case Neutral (N) . . . . .	.460
Memory . . . . .	.144		
Power . . . . .	.130		

- Shift Lever Override . . . . .484
- Shoulder Belts . . . . .51
- Signals, Turn . . . . .111, 161, 203
- Sliding Rear Window
  - Power . . . . .195
- Snow Chains (Tire Chains). . . . .411
- Snow Plow. . . . .451
- Snow Tires . . . . .403
- Spare Tire . . . . .405, 406
- Spark Plugs . . . . .559
- Speed Control (Cruise Control). . . . .170
- Speedometer. . . . .203
- Starting. . . . .32, 336
  - Automatic Transmission . . . . .337
  - Cold Weather . . . . .337
  - Engine Fails To Start . . . . .337
  - Remote . . . . .32
- Starting Procedures (Gas Engines) . . . . .336
- Steering
  - Power . . . . .370, 371
  - Wheel, Heated . . . . .169
  - Wheel, Tilt . . . . .166
- Steering Wheel Audio Controls . . . . .285
- Steering Wheel Mounted Sound System Controls. . .285
- Storage Compartment, Center Seat . . . . .189
- Storage, Vehicle . . . . .310, 549
- Storing Your Vehicle . . . . .549
- Supplemental Restraint System - Air Bag. . . . .65, 66
- Supplemental Tire Pressure Information . . . . .411
- Sway Control, Trailer. . . . .386
- Synthetic Engine Oil . . . . .500
- System, Remote Starting . . . . .32
- Tachometer. . . . .203
- Temperature Control, Automatic (ATC). . . . .308
- Tilt Steering Column. . . . .166
- Tip Start. . . . .337

Tire And Loading Information Placard . . . . .	.393, 394, 411	Safety . . . . .	.387, 398
Tire Markings . . . . .	.387	Sizes . . . . .	.388
Tires . . . . .	.111, 398, 579	Snow Tires . . . . .	.403
Aging (Life Of Tires) . . . . .	.408	Spinning . . . . .	.407
Air Pressure . . . . .	.398	Tread Wear Indicators . . . . .	.408
Chains . . . . .	.411	Wheel Nut Torque . . . . .	.473
Compact Spare . . . . .	.405	Tire Safety Information . . . . .	.387
Dual . . . . .	.414, 466, 475	Tongue Weight/Trailer Weight . . . . .	.440
General Information . . . . .	.398	Torque Converter Clutch . . . . .	.352
High Speed . . . . .	.401	Tow Hooks, Emergency . . . . .	.483
Inflation Pressures . . . . .	.399	Towing . . . . .	.434, 485
Life Of Tires . . . . .	.408	Disabled Vehicle . . . . .	.485
Load Capacity . . . . .	.393, 395	Guide . . . . .	.440
Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) . . . . .	.415	Recreational . . . . .	.455
Pressure Warning Light . . . . .	.203	Weight . . . . .	.440
Quality Grading . . . . .	.579	Towing Vehicle Behind A Motorhome . . . . .	.455
Radial . . . . .	.402	Traction . . . . .	.367
Replacement . . . . .	.409	Traction Control . . . . .	.377
Rotation . . . . .	.413	Trailer Sway Control (TSC) . . . . .	.386

- Trailer Towing . . . . . 434  
    Cooling System Tips . . . . . 451  
    Hitches . . . . . 439  
    Minimum Requirements . . . . . 441  
    Mirrors . . . . . 129  
    Trailer And Tongue Weight . . . . . 440  
    Wiring . . . . . 449  
Trailer Towing Guide. . . . . 440  
Trailer Weight. . . . . 440  
Transfer Case . . . . . 527  
    Electronically Shifted . . . . . 360  
    Fluid . . . . . 562  
Transmission . . . . . 527  
    Automatic . . . . . 341, 527  
    Fluid . . . . . 562  
    Shifting . . . . . 339  
Transmitter Battery Service (Remote Keyless Entry) . . 28  
Transmitter Programming (Remote Keyless Entry) . . 24  
Transmitter, Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) . . . . . 24  
Tread Wear Indicators . . . . . 408  
Turn Signals . . . . . 161, 203, 551  
Uconnect®  
    Customer Programmable Features . . . . . 277  
    Operation . . . . . 284  
    Uconnect® Settings . . . . . 264  
    Uconnect® Settings . . . . . 277  
Uconnect® Settings  
    Customer Programmable Features . . . . . 40, 275  
    Passive Entry Programming . . . . . 40, 275  
    Uconnect® Settings . . . . . 275  
Uconnect® Voice Command. . . . . 313  
Uniform Tire Quality Grades . . . . . 579  
Unleaded Gasoline . . . . . 425  
Untwisting Procedure, Seat Belt . . . . . 59  
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) . . . . . 6  
Vehicle Loading . . . . . 395, 431



Vehicle Modifications/Alterations . . . . .	7	Power . . . . .	44
Vehicle Storage. . . . .	310, 549	Rear Sliding . . . . .	195
Viscosity, Engine Oil . . . . .	500	Reset Auto-Up . . . . .	47
Voice Recognition System (VR). . . . .	313	Wind Buffeting . . . . .	48
Warning Lights (Instrument Cluster Description) . . . . .	203	Windshield Defroster. . . . .	110
Warnings And Cautions . . . . .	6	Windshield Washers. . . . .	162, 163, 512
Warranty Information . . . . .	576	Fluid . . . . .	162, 512
Washers, Windshield. . . . .	163, 512	Windshield Wiper Blades. . . . .	509
Washing Vehicle . . . . .	532	Windshield Wipers . . . . .	162
Water		Wiper Blade Replacement . . . . .	509
Driving Through . . . . .	368	Wipers, Intermittent . . . . .	163
Wheel And Wheel Trim. . . . .	533	Wipers, Rain Sensitive . . . . .	165
Wheel And Wheel Trim Care . . . . .	533		
Wheel Cover . . . . .	474		
Wheel Nut Torque. . . . .	473		
Wind Buffeting. . . . .	48		
Window Fogging . . . . .	310		
Windows . . . . .	44		

## **INSTALLATION OF RADIO TRANSMITTING EQUIPMENT**

Special design considerations are incorporated into this vehicle's electronic system to provide immunity to radio frequency signals. Mobile two-way radios and telephone equipment must be installed properly by trained personnel. The following must be observed during installation.

The positive power connection should be made directly to the battery and fused as close to the battery as possible. The negative power connection should be made to body sheet metal adjacent to the negative battery connection. This connection should not be fused.

Antennas for two-way radios should be mounted on the roof or the rear area of the vehicle. Care should be used in mounting antennas with magnet bases. Magnets may affect the accuracy or operation of the compass on vehicles so equipped.

The antenna cable should be as short as practical and routed away from the vehicle wiring when possible. Use only fully shielded coaxial cable.

Carefully match the antenna and cable to the radio to ensure a low Standing Wave Ratio (SWR).

Mobile radio equipment with output power greater than normal may require special precautions.

All installations should be checked for possible interference between the communications equipment and the vehicle's electronic systems.



STICK WITH THE SPECIALISTS®

FCA US LLC  
15DD43-126-AF



SIXTH EDITION

PRINTED IN U.S.A.